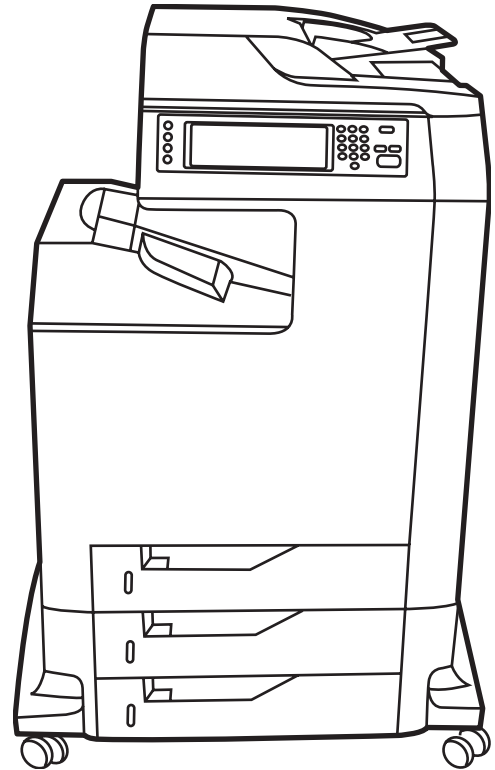


HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP

Software Technical Reference



HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP

Software Technical Reference



Copyright and license

©2006 Copyright Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

Reproduction, adaptation or translation without prior written permission is prohibited, except as allowed under the copyright laws.

The information contained herein is subject to change without notice.

The only warranties for HP products and services are set forth in the express warranty statements accompanying such products and services. Nothing herein should be construed as constituting an additional warranty. HP shall not be liable for technical or editorial errors or omissions contained herein.

Edition 1, 4/2007

Trademark credits

Adobe®, Adobe Photoshop®, Acrobat®, PostScript®, Adobe® PhotoScript® 3™ and the Acrobat logo® are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated.

Corel® is a trademark or registered trademark of Corel Corporation or Corel Corporation Limited.

EnergyStar® and the Energy Star logo® are US registered marks of the United States Environmental Protection Agency.



FireWire® FireWire is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Java™ is a US trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc.

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows NT®, Windows® XP, and Windows® Vista are U.S. registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation.

Intel®, Intel® Core™, Intel® Xeon™, and Pentium® are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

Table of contents

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction	1
Device features	4
Printing-system software	6
System requirements	6
Windows	6
Macintosh	7
Linux	7
UNIX	7
Operating-system support	7
Standalone drivers	8
Print driver support in other operating systems	8
Availability	9
Printing-system software on the Web	9
In-box printing-system software CDs	10
Windows partition	10
CD versions	11
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP documentation	17
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide	18
HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP Printing-System Install Notes	19
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide	20
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide	20
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Send Fax Driver Guide	21
HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax User Guide	21
HP LaserJet MFP Send Fax Driver Install Notes	22
HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide	22
HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide	22

2 Software description

Introduction	23
Windows printing-system software	24
Printing system and installer	24
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD for Windows systems	24
Installer features	28
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers	29
Select the best print driver	30
Complete LaserJet printing system	30
HP PCL 6 driver	30

HP PCL 5 driver	30
PS Emulation driver	30
HP universal print drivers	30
HP print drivers	31
Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems	31
Windows driver configuration	33
Driver autoconfiguration	33
Bidirectional communication	33
Enterprise AutoConfiguration	34
Update Now	34
HP Driver Preconfiguration	34
Lockable features	36
Continuous export	36
HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool	37
International Color Consortium profiles	38
PANTONE color profiles	39
HP Easy Printer Care	40
HP embedded Web server	41
Access to the HP EWS	41
The HP EWS frame	42
Information tab	42
Links to off-product solutions	44
Device Status screen	44
Configuration Page screen	45
Settings tab	47
Configure Device screen	48
Alerts	49
Security	51
Networking tab	51
HP Web Jetadmin	53

3 Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components

Introduction	55
Font support	56
Basic fonts	56
Default fonts	56
Print-driver installation instructions	62
General Windows installation instructions	62
Install from the printing-system CD	62
Install from a network or from downloaded files	62
Detailed instructions for Windows installation	63
Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons	63
Direct-connect installation through a USB port	63
Unsupported operating system dialog box	63
Installation dialog-box sequence	64
Modify a pre-existing installation	87
Install drivers by using Add Printer Wizard	88
Installer Customization Wizard for Windows	89
The Installer Customization Wizard	90
Dialog boxes	90

Distribution	105
Point and Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003	106
Set a default printer	106

4 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for Microsoft Windows

Introduction	107
Access to print drivers in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista	109
Device control panel	109
Software-program print dialog box	109
Print-driver user interface	109
Printing Preferences driver tabs	109
Properties driver tabs	110
Help system	112
What's this? Help	112
Context-sensitive Help	112
Incompatible Print Settings messages	112
Advanced tab features	114
Paper/Output	115
Copy Count	116
Collated	116
Graphic	116
Image Color Management	117
True Type Font	117
Document Options	117
Advanced Printing Features	117
Print Optimizations	118
PostScript Output Options (PS emulation driver only)	118
Printer Features	119
Layout Options	120
Printing Shortcuts tab features	121
Factory Defaults	122
General Everyday Printing	122
Paper source	122
Staple	123
Page size	123
Orientation	123
Print on both sides	124
Paper type	124
Pages per sheet	125
Document preview image	125
Paper/Quality tab features	126
Paper Options	127
Page size:	127
Custom Paper Size	128
Name	128
Paper Size	129
Units	129
Custom width and height control limits	129

Paper source:	129
Paper type:	130
Special pages	131
Covers	131
Print pages on different paper	132
Document preview image	133
HP Digital Imaging	134
Effects tab features	136
Resizing Options	137
Actual size	137
Print document on	137
Scale to fit	137
% of actual size	138
Document preview image	138
Watermarks	138
Current watermarks	139
Watermark Message	140
Message Angle	140
Font Attributes	140
Default watermark settings	141
Finishing tab features	143
Document options	144
Print on both sides	144
Automatically print on both sides	144
Manually print on both sides	145
Flip pages up	146
Booklet layout	147
Book and booklet printing	147
Print a booklet	148
Pages per sheet	148
Print page borders	149
Page order	149
Document preview image	149
Orientation	150
Output tab features	151
Output Options	152
Output Bin Options	152
Document preview image	153
Job Storage tab features	154
Status group box	155
Job Storage Mode	155
Off	156
Proof and Hold	156
Personal Job	156
Quick Copy	157
Stored Job	157
Make Job Private	157
Job Notification Options	157
User Name	158
Job Name	158

Using job-storage features when printing	159
Releasing a job-storage print job	159
Deleting a job-storage print job	159
Color tab features	161
Color Options	162
Automatic	162
Manual	162
General	163
Neutral Grays	164
Halftone	164
Color Themes	164
Default (sRGB)	164
Image Optimization (sRGB)	164
Adobe RGB (1998)	165
None	165
Custom Profile	165
Document preview image	165
Services tab features	166
Internet Services	167
Device services	167
Device Settings tab features	168
Form to Tray Assignment	171
Font Substitution Table	172
External Fonts	172
Installing external fonts	173
Removing external fonts	174
Installable Options	174
Automatic Configuration	174
Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)	175
Allow Manual Duplexing	175
Accessory Output Bin	175
Printer Memory	175
Printer Hard Disk	175
Job Storage	175
Mopier Mode	175
Mopier mode and collation	176
PS Emulation driver Device Settings	177
Available PostScript Memory	177
Output Protocol	178
Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job	178
Send Ctrl-D After Each Job	178
Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray	178
Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray	178
Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts	179
Job Timeout	179
Wait Timeout	179
Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline	179
Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap	179
Postscript Passthrough	179
JPEG Passthrough	180

Installable Options	180
About tab features	181
Status Notification Popup (SNP)	183

5 Macintosh

Introduction	185
Macintosh printing-system software	186
Hardware requirements	186
Operating-system support	186
Availability	186
Printing-system software on the Web	187
Printing-system software	187
Software component availability	187
In-box printing-system software CDs	187
Macintosh partition	187
CD versions	188
Macintosh install and uninstall instructions	190
Macintosh component descriptions	190
HP LaserJet PPDs	190
PDEs	190
HP Embedded Web Server	191
Install notes (Readme file)	191
Online help	191
Install the Macintosh printing system	191
General installation for Macintosh operating systems	191
Detailed Mac OS X installation	192
Main Install dialog sequence	192
Printer setup	196
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 or later)	197
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3	202
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8	206
Troubleshooting the printer setup	208
Uninstall the Macintosh printing system	208
Macintosh HP Printer Utility	209
Access to the HP Printer Utility	209
Supplies Status	214
Device Information	217
HP Support	218
File Upload	220
Update Firmware	222
Duplex mode	222
Trays Configuration	223
Lock Resources	224
Stored Jobs	225
Releasing a job-storage print job	226
Deleting a job-storage print job	227
E-mail Alerts	227
Network Settings	228
Bonjour Settings	230
Additional Settings	230

HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)	231
Access to the HP EWS	231
Information tab	233
Device Status	234
Configuration page	234
Supplies Status page	236
Event Log	237
Usage Page	240
Device Information	242
Control Panel	242
Print	243
Printing a file or updating firmware from the Print screen	244
Settings tab	244
Configure Device	244
Using the menus on the Configure Device screen	245
E-mail Server	245
Configuring outgoing e-mail	246
Configuring the return e-mail address	246
Alerts	246
AutoSend	249
Turn on the AutoSend feature	249
Security	250
Edit Other Links	250
Adding a link	251
Removing a link	251
Device Information	251
Language	252
Date & Time	253
Date/Time Format	254
Clock Drift Correction	254
Wake Time	255
Restrict Colors	255
Networking tab	256
Configuration	257
Security section	258
Diagnostics section	258

6 Engineering Details

Introduction	259
Remote firmware updates	260
Print the configuration page	261
Print a menu map	262
Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site	262
Downloading the new firmware to the MFP	262
Printer messages during the firmware update	263
Remote firmware update by using an executable RFU files	264
Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser	265
Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection	265
Windows operating systems	266
Macintosh operating systems	267

Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port	267
Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista	267
Remote firmware update through a Windows network	268
Remote firmware update through a USB connection	269
Remote firmware update for UNIX systems	270
Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility	270
Remote firmware update by using the LPR command	271
Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin	271
Remote firmware update through the HP Embedded Web Server	272
Printing print-ready documents	274
Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser	274
Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection	274
Windows operating systems	275
Macintosh operating systems	275
Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port	276
Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista	276
Print-ready file printing in a Windows network	277
Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems	277
Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command	277
Status Notification Pop-up (SNP)	278
Configure SNPs	279
HP Driver Preconfiguration	279
Registry settings	280
Media attributes	282
Media sources and destinations	282
Media-source commands	282
Driver-supported media sizes	283
Driver-supported media types	284
Custom paper sizes	285
Media-type commands	286
Uninstall	288
Index	289

List of tables

Table 1-1	Software technical reference overview	1
Table 1-2	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP features	4
Table 1-3	Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP	9
Table 1-4	CD_ROW – Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480-60128) (1 of 4)	12
Table 1-5	CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480–60127) (2 of 4)	13
Table 1-6	CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (CB480-60127) (3 of 4)	14
Table 1-7	CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (CB480-60127) (4 of 4)	14
Table 1-8	CD_AS—Asia Pacific (CB480-60128) (1 of 1)	15
Table 1-9	Documentation availability	17
Table 2-1	Drivers included with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software	31
Table 2-2	Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003	33
Table 3-1	Default fonts	56
Table 3-2	Additional PS emulation fonts	58
Table 4-1	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — PCL 6 custom media sizes	129
Table 4-2	Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks	141
Table 4-3	Page orientation	147
Table 4-4	Driver mopier mode and collation settings	176
Table 5-1	Adding a MFP in Macintosh operating systems	192
Table 6-1	Version Checking	260
Table 6-2	Troubleshooting a firmware update	263
Table 6-3	Update messages	263
Table 6-4	Troubleshooting a firmware update failure	264
Table 6-5	SNP settings	280
Table 6-6	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media sources and destinations	282
Table 6-7	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media-source commands	283
Table 6-8	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Supported media sizes and attributes	283
Table 6-9	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Supported input media types	285
Table 6-10	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — PCL 6 custom media sizes	286
Table 6-11	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media-type commands	286

List of figures

Figure 1-1	Installation software CD documentation screen	17
Figure 2-1	Installation software CD browser	24
Figure 2-2	Documentation screen	26
Figure 2-3	Online Support screen	26
Figure 2-4	Optional Software screen	27
Figure 2-5	HP EWS — Information tab	42
Figure 2-6	HP EWS Information tab – Device Status screen	44
Figure 2-7	HP EWS Information tab – Configuration Page screen	45
Figure 2-8	HP EWS — Settings tab	47
Figure 2-9	HP EWS Settings tab – Configure Device screen	48
Figure 2-10	HP EWS Settings tab – Alerts screen	49
Figure 2-11	HP EWS Settings tab – Security screen	51
Figure 2-12	HP EWS Networking tab – Network Settings screen	51
Figure 3-1	Setup Error – Unsupported Operating System, Windows NT 4.0	63
Figure 3-2	Language Selection dialog box	64
Figure 3-3	Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 Setup Wizard dialog box	65
Figure 3-4	Printer Connection dialog box	65
Figure 3-5	Searching dialog box	67
Figure 3-6	Firewall Detected dialog box	67
Figure 3-7	Printer Not Found dialog box	68
Figure 3-8	Printers Found dialog box	69
Figure 3-9	Printer Found dialog box	70
Figure 3-10	Confirm Network Settings dialog box	71
Figure 3-11	Confirm Changing Settings dialog box	72
Figure 3-12	Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box	73
Figure 3-13	Check Printer Connection dialog box	74
Figure 3-14	Specify Printer dialog box	75
Figure 3-15	Printer Settings dialog box	76
Figure 3-16	Set Port Name dialog box	77
Figure 3-17	Installation Type dialog box	78
Figure 3-18	Feature Selection dialog box	79
Figure 3-19	Details dialog box	80
Figure 3-20	Ready to Install dialog box	81
Figure 3-21	Printer Properties General tab	82
Figure 3-22	Installation Status dialog box	83
Figure 3-23	Finish dialog box	84
Figure 3-24	HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box	85
Figure 3-25	Test Page dialog box	85
Figure 3-26	HP Registration screen	86

Figure 3-27	Setup Maintenance dialog box	87
Figure 3-28	Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Installation Customization Wizard dialog box	90
Figure 3-29	Software License Agreement dialog box	91
Figure 3-30	Language dialog box	91
Figure 3-31	Printer Port dialog box	92
Figure 3-32	Browse for Printer dialog box	93
Figure 3-33	Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box	94
Figure 3-34	Port Creation Options dialog box	95
Figure 3-35	Please enter a Hardware address — Network Setup Error dialog box	95
Figure 3-36	Drivers dialog box	95
Figure 3-37	Driver Details dialog box	96
Figure 3-38	Driver Configuration dialog box	97
Figure 3-39	Driver Configuration — Printing Preferences tab	98
Figure 3-40	Driver Configuration — Device Settings tab	99
Figure 3-41	Invalid Selection dialog box	100
Figure 3-42	Additional Software dialog box	100
Figure 3-43	Additional software Details dialog box	100
Figure 3-44	Custom Installer Location dialog box	101
Figure 3-45	Ready to Create Installer dialog box	102
Figure 3-46	Printer Properties General tab	103
Figure 3-47	Creating dialog box	104
Figure 3-48	Finish dialog box	104
Figure 4-1	An Incompatible Print Settings message	112
Figure 4-2	The default appearance of the Advanced tab	114
Figure 4-3	Printing Shortcuts tab	121
Figure 4-4	Document preview image	125
Figure 4-5	Paper/Quality tab	126
Figure 4-6	Paper Options group box	127
Figure 4-7	Custom Paper Size dialog box	128
Figure 4-8	Covers options — Front, Back, or Both	131
Figure 4-9	Print pages on different paper — First, or Last	132
Figure 4-10	Document preview image	133
Figure 4-11	HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box	134
Figure 4-12	Effects tab	136
Figure 4-13	Preview images – Legal on Letter; Scale to fit off (left) and on (right)	137
Figure 4-14	Document preview image	138
Figure 4-15	Watermark Details dialog box	139
Figure 4-16	Finishing tab	143
Figure 4-17	Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box	146
Figure 4-18	Page-order preview images	149
Figure 4-19	Document preview image	149
Figure 4-20	Output tab—stapler installed	151
Figure 4-21	Output tab—output bin installed	151
Figure 4-22	Document preview image	153
Figure 4-23	Job Storage tab	154
Figure 4-24	Job Notification dialog box — Job Storage Identification	157
Figure 4-25	Color tab	161
Figure 4-26	Color Settings dialog box	162
Figure 4-27	Document preview image	165

Figure 4-28	Services tab	166
Figure 4-29	HP PCL 6 driver Device Settings tab	168
Figure 4-30	PS Emulation driver Device Settings tab, 1 of 2	169
Figure 4-31	PS emulation driver Device Settings tab, 2 of 2	170
Figure 4-32	Font Substitution Table	172
Figure 4-33	HP Font Installer dialog box	173
Figure 4-34	About tab	181
Figure 5-1	Authenticate dialog (sample)	192
Figure 5-2	HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen (sample)	193
Figure 5-3	HP LaserJet Installer Read Me dialog (sample)	193
Figure 5-4	License dialog (sample)	194
Figure 5-5	Agree dialog (sample)	194
Figure 5-6	Easy Install dialog (sample)	195
Figure 5-7	HP LaserJet Installer dialog (custom install; sample)	195
Figure 5-8	Installing dialog (sample)	196
Figure 5-9	Finish Up dialog (sample)	196
Figure 5-10	Printer list screen	198
Figure 5-11	Print & Fax dialog	198
Figure 5-12	Default Browser tab	200
Figure 5-13	Printer Browser – IP Printer tab	201
Figure 5-14	Installable Options screen	202
Figure 5-15	Printer List screen	202
Figure 5-16	Print & Fax screen	203
Figure 5-17	Add printer screen	204
Figure 5-18	Add printer screen	206
Figure 5-19	Select Printer screen – printer not selected	209
Figure 5-20	Connection Type screen	210
Figure 5-21	Select Printer screen – printer selected	211
Figure 5-22	Printer Utility	212
Figure 5-23	Printer Status screen	213
Figure 5-24	Current Supplies Levels screen	214
Figure 5-25	Supplies Information screen	214
Figure 5-26	Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen	215
Figure 5-27	Welcome to HP SureSupply screen	215
Figure 5-28	Online privacy statement screen	216
Figure 5-29	Paper Status screen	216
Figure 5-30	Device Information screen	217
Figure 5-31	HP Online Support screen	218
Figure 5-32	HP Instant Support link	219
Figure 5-33	HP Registration Web page	220
Figure 5-34	File Upload screen	220
Figure 5-35	Update Firmware screen	222
Figure 5-36	Duplex Mode screen	222
Figure 5-37	Trays Configuration screen	223
Figure 5-38	Lock Resources screen	224
Figure 5-39	Enable Job Storing screen	225
Figure 5-40	E-mail Alerts screen	227
Figure 5-41	Networking screen	228
Figure 5-42	Bonjour Settings screen	230
Figure 5-43	Additional Settings screen	231

Figure 5-44	Device Status screen	232
Figure 5-45	HP EWS – Device Status page	234
Figure 5-46	HP EWS – Configuration Page screen	234
Figure 5-47	HP EWS – Supplies Status page	236
Figure 5-48	HP EWS – Event Log screen	238
Figure 5-49	Usage Page screen (1 of 2)	240
Figure 5-50	HP EWS – Device Information screen	242
Figure 5-51	HP EWS – Control Panel Screen	242
Figure 5-52	HP EWS – Print screen	243
Figure 5-53	HP EWS – Configure Device screen	245
Figure 5-54	HP EWS – E-mail Server screen	245
Figure 5-55	HP EWS – Alerts screen	247
Figure 5-56	HP EWS – AutoSend screen	249
Figure 5-57	HP EWS – Security screen	250
Figure 5-58	HP EWS – Edit Other Links screen	250
Figure 5-59	HP EWS – Device Information screen	251
Figure 5-60	HP EWS – Language screen	252
Figure 5-61	HP EWS – Date & Time screen	253
Figure 5-62	HP EWS – Date/Time Format screen	254
Figure 5-63	HP EWS – Date & Time - clock drift correction screen	254
Figure 5-64	HP EWS – Wake Time screen	255
Figure 5-65	HP EWS Settings tab — Restrict Color screen	255
Figure 5-66	HP EWS Networking tab – Network Settings screen	257
Figure 6-1	Status notification pop-up (sample)	278
Figure 6-2	Notification Settings dialog box	279

1 Purpose and scope

Introduction

This software technical reference (STR) provides information about and troubleshooting tips for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software.

This STR is prepared in an electronic format to serve as a quick-reference tool for Customer Care Center (CCC) agents, support engineers, system administrators, management information systems (MIS) personnel, and HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP end users, as appropriate.

The following information is included in this STR:

- Descriptions of drivers and platforms, with system modifications
- Procedures for installing and uninstalling software components
- Descriptions of various topics that are associated with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, including engineering details

The following table describes the structure of this STR.

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview

Chapter	Content
Chapter 1, Purpose and scope	<p>This chapter contains the following information about the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP and its software:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Overview of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP ● Printing-system software overview, including the following topics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ◦ System requirements ◦ Operating-system support ◦ Availability ● HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP software documentation
Chapter 2, Software description	<p>This chapter provides an overview of the printing-system software installer and print drivers.</p> <p>This chapter also contains general information about other software features, including the following topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Driver configuration for Microsoft® Windows® ● HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool ● HP Easy Printer Care

Table 1-1 Software technical reference overview (continued)

Chapter	Content
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● HP Embedded Web Server ● HP Web Jetadmin
Chapter 3, Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components	<p>This chapter provides instructions for installing the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software in MS Windows operating systems by using various installation methods. These methods and additional topics include the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Font support ● Print-driver installation instructions: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ○ Install from the printing-system CD ○ Install from a network or from downloaded files ○ Modify a pre-existing installation ○ Install through a USB port ○ Install using the Add Printer Wizard ○ Install using the Installer Customization Wizard ● Set a default printer
Chapter 4, HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS emulation drivers and UPD for Microsoft Windows	<p>This chapter provides detailed descriptions of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS emulation drivers and UPD for Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.</p>
Chapter 5, Macintosh Software and Utilities	<p>This chapter provides instructions for installing and uninstalling the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software in Macintosh operating systems.</p>
Chapter 6, Engineering Details	<p>This chapter contains information about the following special topics:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Remote firmware updates ● Printing print-ready documents ● Media attributes ● Creating an output file

For information about the location of information within chapters, see the table of contents. An index is provided in this STR.

The published addendum to this STR includes the following information:

- Lists of installed files
- System-modification information, such as changes to the registry and registry keys
- Descriptions of known software issues and solutions

Topics:

- [Device features](#)
- [Printing-system software](#)

- [HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP documentation](#)

Device features

The following table contains descriptions of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP features that are discussed in this STR. Device configurations might vary.

Table 1-2 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP features

Models	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP (part number CB480A) HP Color LaserJet CM4730f MFP (part number CB481A) HP Color LaserJet CM4730fm MFP (part number CB483A) HP Color LaserJet CM4730fsk MFP (part number CB482A)
Memory	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> 384 MB of random-access memory (RAM), expandable to 512 MB by using industry standard 100-pin double data rate dual-inline memory modules (DDR DIMMs) <p>Memory Enhancement technology (MEt) that automatically compresses data to use RAM more efficiently</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> 40 GB (or greater) hard disk drive
User interface	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> HP Easy Select Control Panel An embedded Web server to gain access to support and order supplies (for network-connected products) HP Easy Printer Care software (a Web-based status and troubleshooting tool) Internet-enabled supply-ordering capabilities through HP Easy Printer Care software
Supported printer personalities	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> HP Printer Command Language (PCL) 6 HP PCL 5 PostScript® (PS) 3 emulation Portable-document format (PDF)
Job-storage features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Proof and hold jobs Personal jobs QuickCopy jobs Stored jobs
Environmental features	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Coffee Pot mode wakes up the MFP at a specific, designated time Sleep-mode setting saves energy (meets Energy Star® guidelines, Version 1.0) High content of recyclable components and materials Restrictions of Hazardous Substances (RoHS) Directive compliant Blue Angel

Table 1-2 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP features (continued)

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • WEE • 508 compliance
Accessories	<p>HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP (standard):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 100-sheet multipurpose input tray (tray 1) • Three 500-sheet input trays • Automatic document feeder (ADF) that holds up to 50 pages • HP Jetdirect embedded print server for connecting to a 10/100Base-TX network • Duplexer <p>HP Color LaserJet CM4730f MFP (same as the standard, plus the following):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Analog Fax accessory <p>HP Color LaserJet CM4730fm MFP (same as the standard, plus the following):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Analogy Fax accessory • Output accessory bridge • Stapler/stacker bridge <p>HP Color LaserJet CM4730fsk MFP (contains the same as the standard, plus the following):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Analog fax accessory • Output accessory bridge • 3-bin mailbox accessory (part number Q7523A) • 500-sheet stapler/stacker (part number Q7521A)
Connectivity	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • IEEE 1284C-compliant parallel connection • A Foreign Interface Harness (FIH) connection (AUX) for connecting other devices • Local area network (LAN) connector (RJ-45) for the embedded HP Jetdirect print server • Optional analog fax card (standard on the CM4730f, CM4730fm, CM4730fsk MFP models; part number Q3701A) • Optional HP Digital Sending Software (DSS) (part number T1936AA) • Optional AutoStore software (part number T1943AA) • Optional enhanced input/output (EIO) cards • USB 2.0 • ACC port (accessory port with USB host capabilities) • Accessory port (for connecting third-party devices)

Printing-system software

Topics:

- [System requirements](#)
- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

System requirements

The following operating systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software:

- [Windows](#)
- [Macintosh](#)
- [Linux](#)
- [UNIX](#)

Windows

System requirements for 32-bit operating systems

- Pentium® or compatible processor
- Windows Vista: 800-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM, 15 GB available hard disk space
- Windows XP: 333-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM
- Windows Server 2003: 550-MHz processor with 128 MB RAM (Standard Edition) and 220 MB of available hard-disk space
- Windows 2000: 333-MHz processor with 64 MB RAM
- Minimum 16-color/grayscale display with 640 x 480 pixel resolution (video graphics array [VGA])
- USB port (USB 1.1 or 2.0), or network connection
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

System requirements for 64-bit operating systems

- Pentium or compatible processor (Itanium not supported)
- Windows Vista: 800-MHz processor with 512 MB RAM, 15 GB available hard disk space
- 256 MB RAM or higher
- 1.5 GB of available hard-drive space
- CD-ROM or DVD drive
- Super VGA (800 x 600) or higher-resolution video adapter and monitor

Macintosh

The Macintosh system requirements are as follows.

System requirements for Macintosh operating systems

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5 or Intel® Core™ processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 32 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM or Internet connection
- Mac OS X v10.2.8, v10.3, or v10.4 and later are supported

 **NOTE:** Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X classic are not supported.

See [Macintosh on page 185](#) for more information.

Linux

For information about Linux support for the MFP, see the following HP Linux Web site:

- www.hp.com/go/linuxprinting

UNIX

For information about UNIX® support for the MFP, see the following Web site:

- www.hp.com/go/unixmodelscripts

Operating-system support

Microsoft Windows operating systems provide full-featured support for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP. Operating systems that are not described in this document provide varying levels of functionality.

Throughout this document, Windows XP is used to denote Windows XP Home Edition, Windows XP Professional, and Windows Server 2003 unless noted otherwise.

Information relating to networking functions is specific to devices that have network capabilities.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP software has *not* been tested with and is *not* supported in the following operating systems:

- Windows 3.1x
- Windows 95
- Windows 98
- Windows Millennium Edition (Me)
- Windows NT® 4.0
- IA-64-bit operating systems

Print drivers for these operating systems are not included on the MFP printing-system software CD and are not available on the Web. Other drivers might work with the MFP, but some print-driver features and functions might not be available.

For more information about the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, go to the following Web site:

- www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Topics:

- [Standalone drivers](#)
- [Print driver support in other operating systems](#)

Standalone drivers

The following operating systems support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software, including the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, PS emulation drivers and HP UPD:

- Windows Vista™ (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows 2000 (32-bit)
- Windows XP Home Edition (32-bit)
- Windows XP Professional (32-bit and 64-bit)
- Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)

Print driver support in other operating systems

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is also supported in the following operating environments:

- Mac OS X (V10.2.8 or later). See [Macintosh on page 185](#) for more information.
- MS Windows Terminal Server
- Citrix Terminal Server. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/citrixprinting


Alternatively, go to the HP.com Web site and search for “c00213455”.

- MS Windows Cluster Server 8
www.hp.com/go/windowsclusterserver
- HP OpenVMS. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/openvmsprinting
- Tru64 UNIX printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/tru64unixprinting
- SAP printing. For more information, go to the following Web site:
www.hp.com/go/sap/print
- HP Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW). Available *only* from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/inpw_software

Availability

Download the printing-system software from the Web, or order it on a CD from HP fulfillment centers.

 **NOTE:** This document describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

The following table lists the availability of HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software components by operating system.

Table 1-3 Software component availability for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP

Component	Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, and Windows XP (32-bit)	Windows Vista, Windows XP and Windows Server 2003 (64-bit)
Drivers		
HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers	x	x
PS Emulation driver	x	x
HP PCL 6, HP PCL 5 Universal print driver (Web only)	x	x
HP PS Emulation Universal print driver (Web only)	x	x
Installer		
Common Windows Installer	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x
CD Browser	x	x
Add Printer Wizard	x	x
Other software		
HP Send Fax driver	x	x
Web Registration	x	x
HP Driver Preconfiguration	x	x
Easy Printer Care software (Web only)	x	
Enterprise Autoconfiguration	x	x

Topics:

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The HP Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases. (See the HP Proactive support link on the Download Drivers and Software page.)

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

In-box printing-system software CDs

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP contains a variety of files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The CD is divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- Microsoft Windows
- Macintosh

Each partition includes the software and files that are required to install and uninstall the printing-system components.

Topics:

- [Windows partition](#)
- [CD versions](#)


Windows partition

The root directory in the Windows partition of the software CD contains the AUTORUN.EXE file, the SETUP.EXE file, support files, and the following directories:

- Autorun
- Drivers
- Fonts
- HP Easy Printer Care
- HP TCP Port Monitor
- InstEng
- Manuals
- Web Registration

The printing-system files for each language reside in the following directories:

- Drivers
- Manuals

 **NOTE:** File layouts differ by language for each version of the software CD.

To view the files, insert the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD, right-click **Start**, click **Explore**, and then select the CD-ROM drive.

CD versions

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD is available in two versions, each of which contains printing-system software in various languages:

- **CD_ROW – Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480-60127):**

- AR = Arabic
- CA = Catalan (Català)
- CS = Czech (Česky)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Español)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- FR = French (Français)
- EL = Greek
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PL = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian (Русс)
- SL = Slovenian
- SK = Slovak
- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TR = Turkish (Türkçe)

- **CD_AS – Asia Pacific (part number CB480-60128):**

- AR = Arabic
- EN = English
- ID = Indonesia (Bahasa)

- ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
- ZHTW = Traditional Chinese
- JA = Japanese
- KO = Korean
- TH = Thai

Each of the following tables lists one of the software CD versions, along with the printing-system software components that are supported in each language.

Table 1-4 CD_ROW – Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480-60128) (1 of 4)

Component	AR	CA	HR	CS	DA	DE	EN
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x		x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x		x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x			x	x	x	x
CD Browser	x			x	x	x	x
Fonts	x	x		x	x	x	x
HP Web Registration				x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM 4730MFP User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM 4730MFP User Guide (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF)				x		x	x
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Printing-System Install Notes (.HTML)	x	x		x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Fax Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x

Table 1-4 CD_ROW – Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480-60128) (1 of 4) (continued)

Component	AR	CA	HR	CS	DA	DE	EN
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide				x	x	x	x

Table 1-5 CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (part number CB480–60127) (2 of 4)

Component	ES	FI	FR	EL	HE	HU
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x	x			x
CD Browser	x	x	x		x	x
Fonts	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Web Registration	x	x	x	x		x
HP Color LaserJet CM473 0MFP User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM473 0MFP User Guide (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF)	x		x			
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Printing-System Install Notes (.HTML)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Fax Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Guide (PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x			x

Table 1-6 CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (CB480-60127) (3 of 4)

Component	IT	NL	NO	PL	PT	RO
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x	x	x	x	
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x	x	x	x	
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x	x	x	x	
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x	x	x	x	
CD Browser	x	x	x	x	x	
Fonts	x	x	x	x	x	
HP Web Registration	x	x	x	x	x	
HP Color LaserJet CM473 0MFP User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM473 0MFP User Guide (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF)	x			x	x	
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Printing-System Install Notes (.HTML)	x	x	x	x	x	
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Fax Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	

Table 1-7 CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (CB480-60127) (4 of 4)

Component	RU	SK	SL	SV	TR
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x		x	x

Table 1-7 CD_ROW—Americas and Western Europe (CB480-60127) (4 of 4) (continued)

Component	RU	SK	SL	SV	TR
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x		x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x		x	x
CD Browser	x	x		x	x
Fonts	x	x		x	x
HP Web Registration	x	x		x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM4730M FP User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM4730M FP User Guide (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF)	x				
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Printing-System Install Notes (.HTML)	x	x		x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Fax Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF)	x			x	x

Table 1-8 CD_AS—Asia Pacific (CB480-60128) (1 of 1)

Component	AR	EN	ID	ZHCN	ZHTW	JA	KO	TH
HP PCL 6 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP PCL 5 driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
PS Emulation driver: 32-bit, 64-bit	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Common MS Windows Installer	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Add Printer Wizard Installer	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Installer Customization Wizard	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
CD Browser	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
Fonts	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP Web Registration		x		x	x	x	x	x

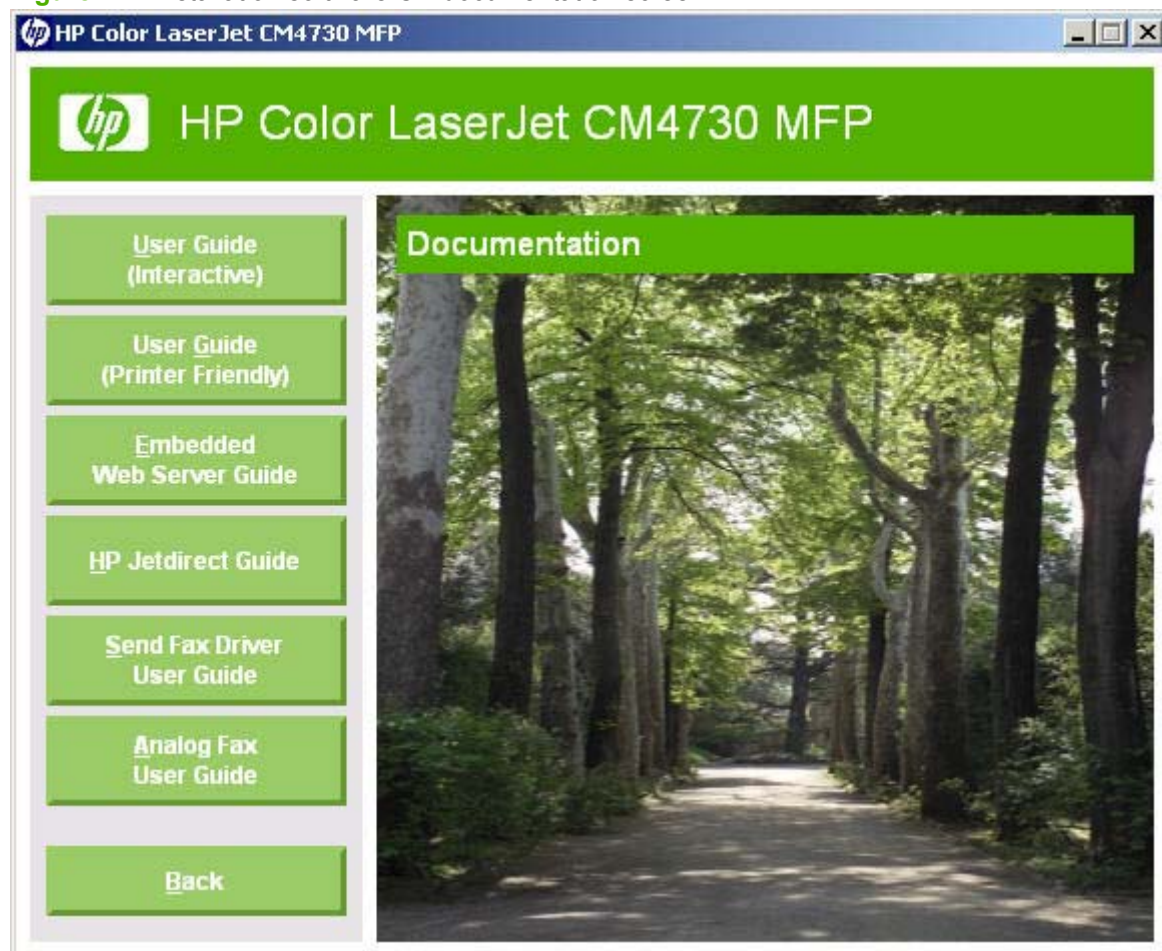
Table 1-8 CD_AS—Asia Pacific (CB480-60128) (1 of 1) (continued)

Component	AR	EN	ID	ZHCN	ZHTW	JA	KO	TH
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide (.CHM)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.PDF)		x		x	x	x	x	x
Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP Printing-System Install Notes (.HTML)	x	x		x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Fax Guide (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Analog Fax Accessory 300 Send Fax Driver (.PDF)	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	x
HP Embedded Web Server User Guide (.PDF)		x		x	x	x	x	x

HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP documentation

On the main screen of the printing-system software CD Browser, click **User Documentation** to open the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software documentation screen, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 1-1 Installation software CD documentation screen



The following table lists the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP documents that are available for each operating system.

Table 1-9 Documentation availability

Document	Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003/Vista	Macintosh
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide (.PDF)</i>	x	x
<i>HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide (.CHM)</i>	x	x
<i>HP Embedded Web Server User Guide (PDF)</i>	x	x
<i>HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide (.CHM and .PDF)</i>	x	x
<i>HP LaserJet Analog Send Fax Driver Guide (.PDF)</i>	x	x ¹
<i>HP LaserJet Analog Fax Guide (.PDF)</i>	x	x

Table 1-9 Documentation availability (continued)

Document	Windows 2000/XP/ Server 2003/Vista	Macintosh
<i>HP LaserJet CM4730 MFP Install Notes (.HTM)</i>	x	x
<i>HP Driver Prefconfiguration Support Guide (.PDF)</i>	x	x

¹ The Mac printing-system CD contains the document, but the software is not supported on Mac.

Access to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP documents depends on the type of document and its location:

- Some documents can be opened from the CD Browser.
- Some documents can be opened by navigating to the folder on the CD where they reside.
- Some documents are available on the Web through links in the CD Browser or CD folders.

Documents are available in the following file formats:

- **Portable document format (.PDF).** The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD includes Adobe® Acrobat® Reader for viewing online documentation.
- **Compiled HTML (.CHM).** When you click a documentation link to a .CHM document, a Microsoft HTML Viewer opens the file on the computer screen.
- **Hypertext markup (.HTM).** When you click a documentation link to an .HTM document, a Web browser opens the file on the computer screen.

The following documents are available:

- [HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP Printing-System Install Notes](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server User Guide](#)
- [HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide](#)
- [HP LaserJet MFP Analog Send Fax Driver Guide](#)
- [HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax User Guide](#)
- [HP LaserJet MFP Send Fax Driver Install Notes](#)
- [HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide](#)
- [HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide](#)

HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide

The *HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP User Guide* (in .CHM and .PDF) describes the basic device features.

View this guide from the software CD by following these steps:


1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Interactive)**.

The guide opens as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

LJCM4730MFP_USE_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is LJCM4730MFP_USE_FRWW.CHM.


The *HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide* is also provided as a printable .PDF file. To print the guide, follow these steps:

1. In the CD Browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**. The guide opens.
3. Print the guide.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

LJCM4730MFP_USE_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is LJCM4730MFP_USE_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.


HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP Printing-System Install Notes

The *HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP Printing-System Install Notes* (in .HTM format) contains important information about MFP features, instructions for installing the printing-system software, and technical assistance.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

LJCM4730MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_XXWW.HTM

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is LJCM4730MFP_INSTALL-NOTE_FRWW.HTM.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Embedded Web Server User Guide

The *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* (.PDF) provides information about MFP status, settings, and networking for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

View this guide from the software CD by following these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **Embedded Web Server Guide**.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

LJCM4730MFP_EWS_XXWW.PDF



NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is LJCM4730MFP_EWS_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide

The *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* is a network administrator's guide (in .CHM and .PDF format) that contains information about connecting the MFP directly to a network.

View this guide from the software CD by following these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **HP Jetdirect Guide**.

The guide opens in .PDF format.

Gain access to the .PDF file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

HPJDIAG_XXWW.PDF




NOTE: The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. In instance, the file name for the French version is HPJDIAG_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

The guide can also be accessed as a Windows Help file (.CHM file). This readable, onscreen version of the guide is provided in accordance with the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA).

Gain access to the .CHM file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:
HPJDIAG_XXWW.CHM

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is HPJDIAG__FRWW.CHM.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet MFP Analog Send Fax Driver Guide


The *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Send Fax Driver Guide* (.PDF) describes the basic device features.

View this guide from the software CD by following these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **Send Fax Driver User Guide**.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the file that has the appropriate file name: LJCM4730MFP_FAX-SEND_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the file name for the French version is LJCM4730MFP_FAX-SEND_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax User Guide


The *HP LaserJet MFP Analog Fax User Guide* (.PDF) describes the basic device features.

View this guide from the software CD by following these steps:

1. In the main screen of the CD browser, click **Documentation**.
2. Click **Analog Fax User Guide**.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file: LJCM4730MFP_FAX_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the French version of file is LJCM4730MFP_FAX_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

HP LaserJet MFP Send Fax Driver Install Notes

The *HP LaserJet MFP Send Fax Driver Install Notes* describes important information about fax features, instructions for installing the fax software, and technical assistance.

The document is available at the following Web site:


www.hp.com/go/mfpfaxaccessory300

HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* (.PDF) contains important information about preconfiguring printing-system drivers before installation in network environments.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file: PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_XXWW.PDF

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the French version of the file is PRECONFIG_SUPPORT_FRWW.PDF.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.


HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide

The *Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide* contains important information about features and installation using the Installer Customization Wizard.

Gain access to the file by following these steps:

1. Insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive.
2. Navigate to the **MANUALS\<LANGUAGE>** folder.
3. Open the following file:

INSTALLER_CUSTOMIZATION_ADMIN_GUIDE_XXWW.HTM

 **NOTE:** The "XX" in the file name corresponds to the language. For instance, the French version of the file is INSTALLER_CUSTOMIZATION_ADMIN_GUIDE_FRWW.HTM.

4. When the file is open, click **File**, and then click **Save As** to save a copy of the file to another location.

2 Software description

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems also support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, and software is available on the Web. For information about specific system installers, drivers, and components, see the section that corresponds to that system.

Topics:

- [Windows printing-system software](#)
- [Windows driver configuration](#)
- [HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool](#)
- [International Color Consortium profiles](#)
- [PANTONE color profiles](#)
- [HP Easy Printer Care](#)
- [HP embedded Web server](#)
- [HP Web Jetadmin](#)

Windows printing-system software

Topics:

- [Printing system and installer](#)
- [HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers](#)

Printing system and installer

Topics:

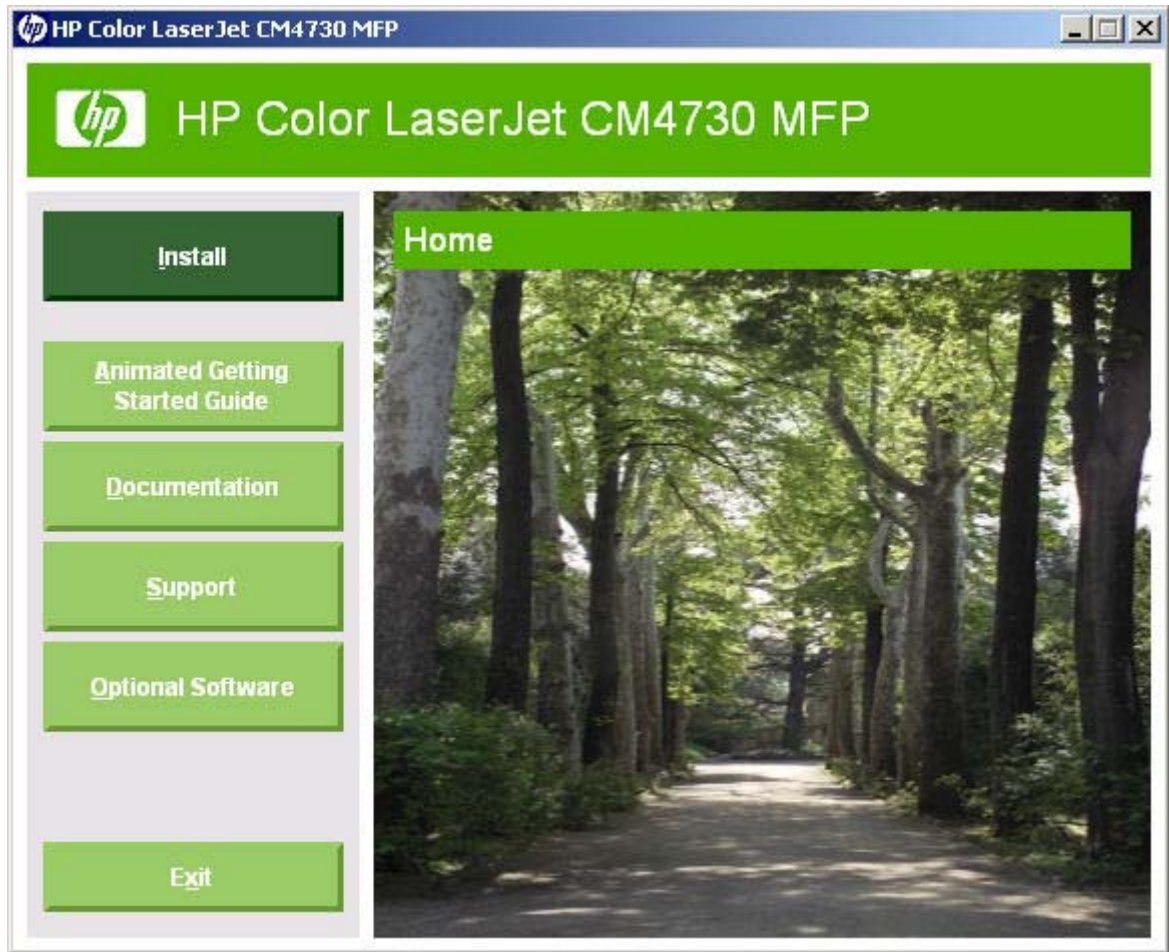
- [HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD for Windows systems](#)
- [Installer features](#)

HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD for Windows systems

In the Windows environment (Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003), insert the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive to open an interactive CD browser. Use the CD browser to install the drivers and related components, and to gain access to online user documentation, a customization utility, and optional HP software.

The following figure shows the main screen of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD.


Figure 2-1 Installation software CD browser



If the screen does not appear when you insert the software CD into the CD-ROM drive, follow these steps to open the CD browser:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Click **Run**.
3. Click **Browse...** and navigate to the root directory of the software CD.
4. Double-click the **SETUP.EXE** file to start the installer.

The main screen of the software CD browser contains installation and documentation options in the left panel. Move the cursor over each option to see a description of the option in the right panel.

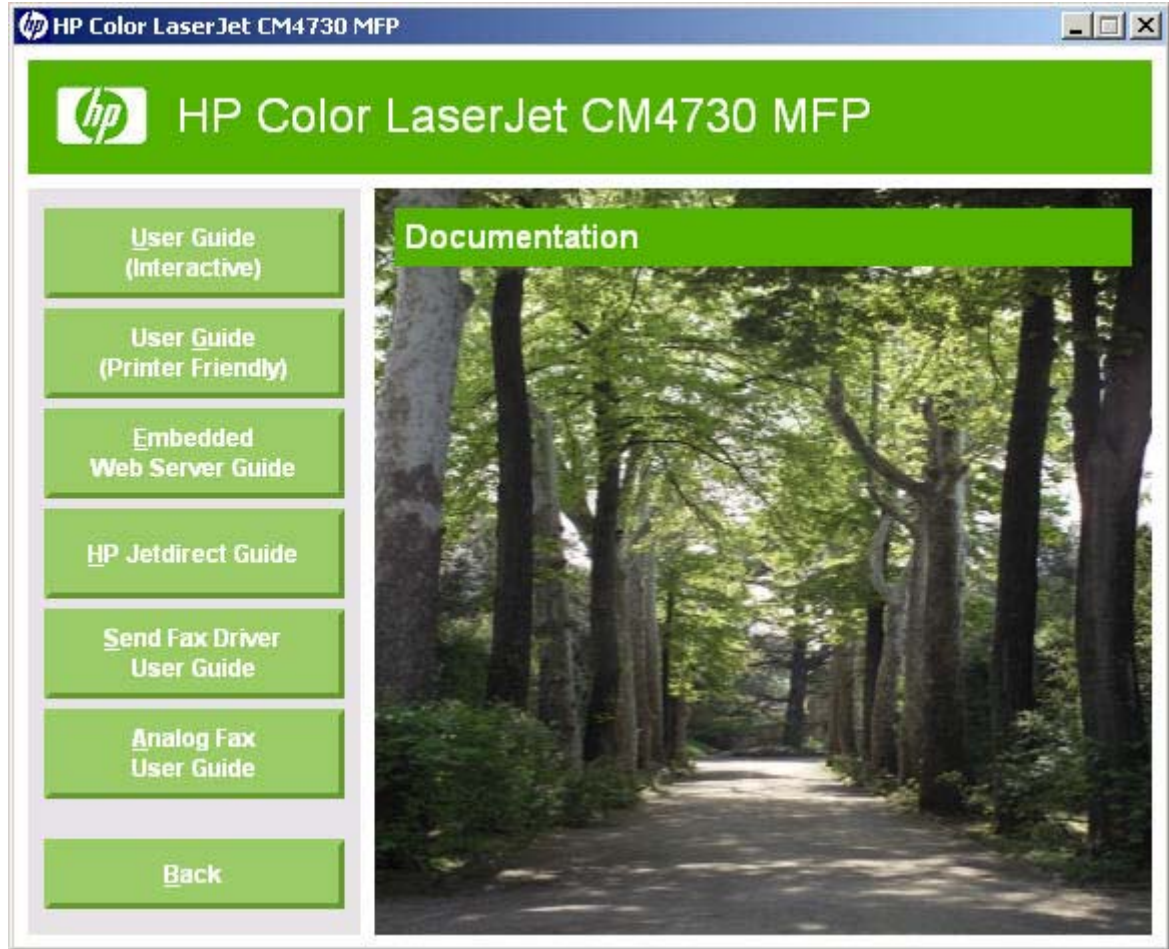
 **NOTE:** The options available for each device might differ from those in the figure.

Install. The installation wizard guides the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software installation. To install only the necessary software, select the Basic Installation. To install only the components that you want to install, select the Custom Installation.

Animated Getting Started Guide. Use this option to view a visual guide to aid in the setup of the device. This guide provides video animations of installing certain features and specific hardware installation steps.


Documentation. Use this option to view the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP user documentation. The following document options are available:

Figure 2-2 Documentation screen



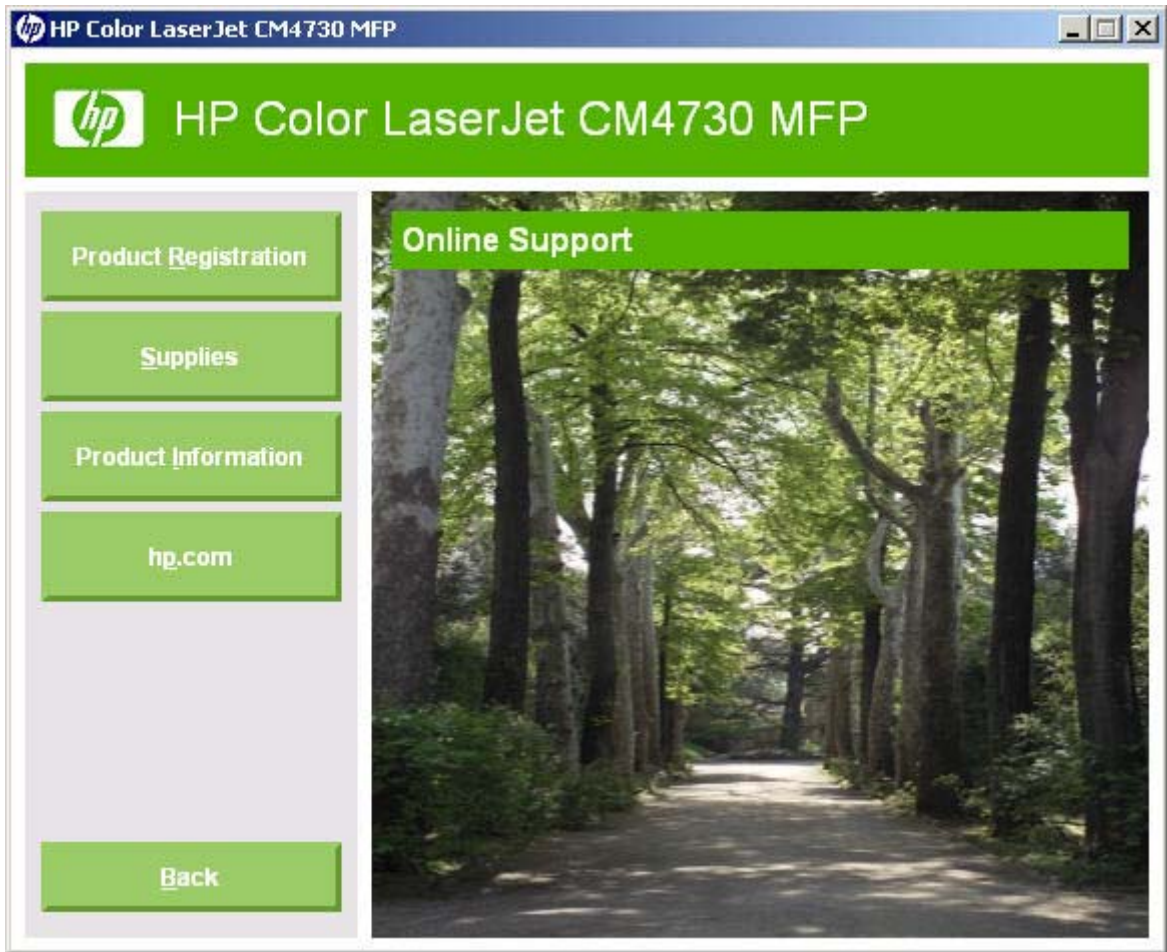
- **User Guide (Interactive)**
- **User Guide (Printer Friendly)**
- **Embedded Web Server Guide**
- **HP Jetdirect Guide**
- **Send Fax Driver User Guide**
- **Analog Fax User Guide**

Click **Back** to return to the main CD browser screen.

 **NOTE:** If Adobe Acrobat Reader 4.0 or later is not installed, click any of the links to a portable document format (.PDF) document to open it in a CD browser version of Acrobat Reader. This CD browser version is in English only, but can be used to open localized versions of .PDF documents. The Acrobat Reader software is *not* installed on the computer and can only run while the printing-system software CD is in the CD-ROM drive. Acrobat Reader is also available at the following Web site: <http://www.adobe.com>

Support. This option provides the following links to HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP support information:

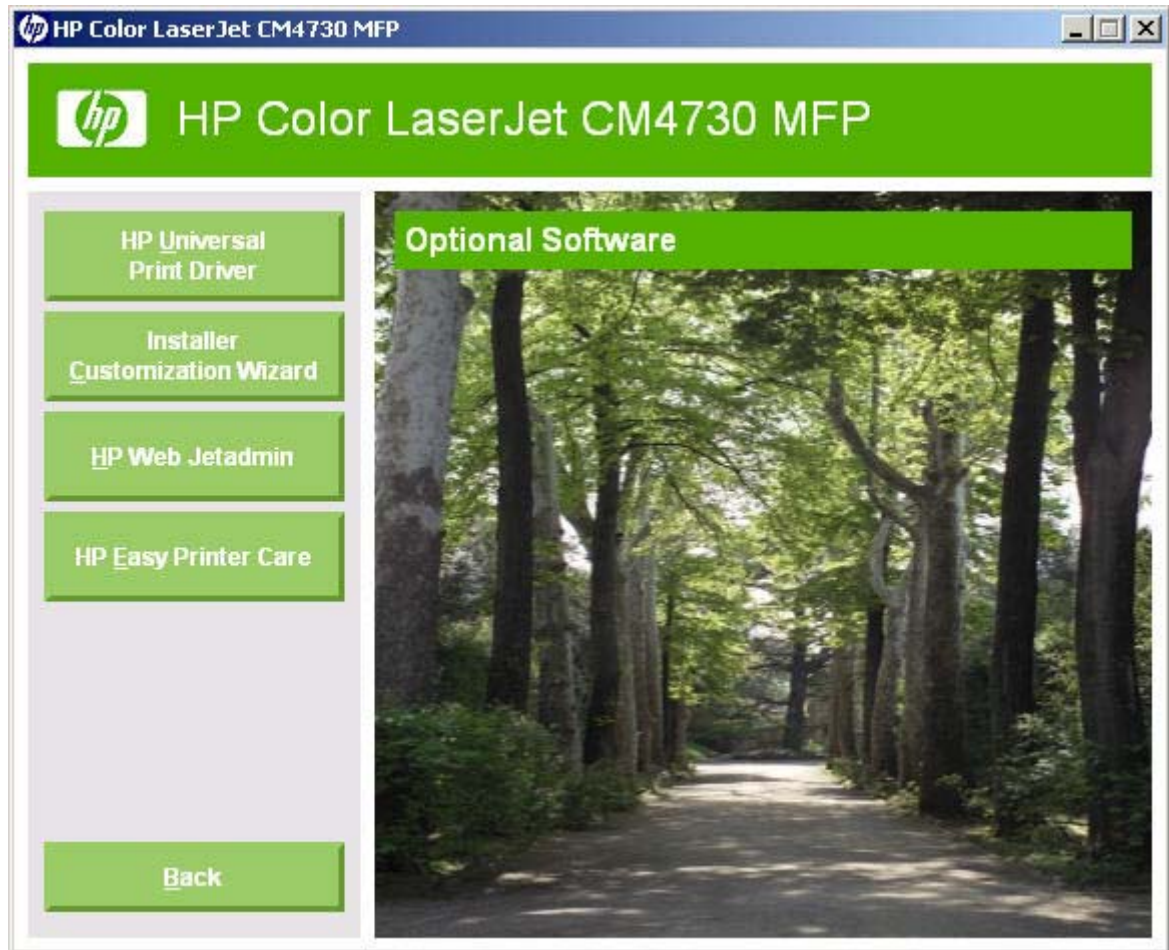
Figure 2-3 Online Support screen



- Click **Product Registration** to register the MFP online.
- Click **Supplies** for information about ordering MFP supplies.
- Click **Product Information** to open the HP Instant Support Web page for support information and updates for the MFP.
- Click **hp.com** to go to the HP home Web page for information about products and services, support, drivers, and HP online stores.

Optional Software. This option provides the following links to optional software programs for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Figure 2-4 Optional Software screen



- **HP Universal Print Driver.** Use this option to download the HP universal print driver (HP UPD) from the HP Web site. Use this driver to ensure a standard driver interface to find and print to an HP device.
- **Installer Customization Wizard.** Use this wizard to customize the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP installer to install silently for unattended installations.
- **HP Web Jetadmin.** Use this option to download HP Web Jetadmin software from the HP Web site.
- **HP Easy Printer Care Software.** Use this option to download and install HP Easy Printer Care. This maintenance tool helps track and maintain the devices by providing information about status, alert notifications, usage, and supplies for one or more devices.

Installer features

The common installer is designed to provide a simple and consistent installation method for the MFP on the following operating systems: Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.

The common installer offers the following features:

- The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD features an interactive software interface.
- Network connection is integrated so that you can install drivers and connect to a networked MFP in a single process.
- The selection dialog box sets the operating-system language as the default language. You can use the installer to select any of the languages on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD includes the following additional features:

- The HP LaserJet Uninstaller Utility
- The HP Customization Utility for custom installations

All of the Windows system components are installed by using the common installer. The installer automatically detects the language of choice and the operating system. Select from the following types of installation:

- Basic Installation
- Custom Installation


HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers

HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers provide the printing features and communication between the computer and the device. The printing system includes software for end users and network administrators who are working in the following operating environments:

- Windows Vista (32-bit and 64-bit), Windows 2000, Windows XP (32-bit and 64-bit), and Windows Server 2003 (32-bit and 64-bit)

Windows 64-bit drivers for Windows Vista, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 are available for the following systems:

- AMD Athlon 64, AMD Opteron, Intel® Xeon™, or Pentium 4 with EMT64
- Apple Mac OS X (V10.2.8 and later)

 **NOTE:** For the latest information about the printing-system software components, see the readme files on the CD. For additional information about installing the printing-system software, see the *Hewlett-Packard Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Printing-System Install Notes* on the printing-system software CD.

All of the drivers provide access to paper-handling and print-quality features.

Topics:

- [Select the best print driver](#)
- [HP print drivers](#)
- [Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems](#)

Select the best print driver

HP print drivers are designed for different environments and uses. See the print driver Help for available features.

Topics:

- [Complete LaserJet printing system](#)
- [HP PCL 6 driver](#)
- [HP PCL 5 driver](#)
- [PS Emulation driver](#)
- [HP universal print drivers](#)

Complete LaserJet printing system

Use the printing-system software CD to install the full set of drivers and other software for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

HP PCL 6 driver

The HP PCL 6 driver provides the best performance, print quality, and printer-feature support for most users. The driver aligns with Windows graphic device interface (GDI) for best performance in Windows environments.

The HP PCL 6 driver may not be fully compatible with third-party and custom solutions that are based on PCL 5.

HP PCL 5 driver

The HP PCL 5 driver is recommended for general office monochrome printing in Windows environments. The driver is compatible with previous versions of PCL and legacy HP LaserJet printers.

The HP PCL 5 driver is the best choice for the following:

- Any third-party or home-grown custom solutions that use forms, fonts, and SAP programs.
- Any environment with mixed operating systems (such as UNIX, Linux, and mainframe)

PS Emulation driver

The PS Emulation driver is recommended for printing with Adobe or other graphics-rich software programs. The driver is compatible with postscript level-3 and supports postscript font DIMMs.

Use the PS Emulation driver in primarily postscript-specific software programs such as Adobe and Corel.

HP universal print drivers

The universal print drivers are designed for corporate or IT-managed Windows environments. These drivers provide a single driver for use with multiple printer models.

Universal print drivers are not included as part of the MFP printing-system software CD, but are available from the Web: <http://www.hp.com/go/universalprinriver>

Universal print drivers are available as PCL 5, PCL 6, and PS emulation drivers. These drivers are not product specific so a single driver can be installed and used to print to many different HP LaserJet printer models.

For more information, see the HP universal print driver Web site: <http://www.hp.com/go/universalprintdriver>

HP print drivers

The following drivers are available on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD:

- HP PCL 6 driver for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003
- HP PCL 5 driver for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003
- HP Postscript 3 Emulation driver (PS Emulation driver) for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003



 **NOTE:** During a Basic or Custom Installation of the printing-system software, the HP PCL 6 driver is installed by default for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003.


Table 2-1 Drivers included with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software

Operating System	HP PCL 6 driver	HP PCL 5 driver	PS Emulation driver
Windows Vista	X	X	X
Windows 2000	X	X	X
Windows XP	X	X	X
Windows Server 2003	X	X	X
Macintosh OS			X

 **NOTE:** The HP MFP Send Fax driver is also included on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software CD. This driver allows you to send a fax from the PC when the a fax accessory is installed on the device. For more information, see the HP MFP Send Fax documentation on the software CD.

Driver version numbers for Windows operating systems

Access to driver version numbers varies, depending on the operating system in which the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is installed.

 **NOTE:** For a list of HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers, updated HP printing-system software, and product-support information, go to:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

The Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems support the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers. If you are using on of these environments, follow these steps to find driver-version information:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.

3. Click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP and Windows Server 2003), **Printers** (Windows 2000), or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the device icon.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **About** tab.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD version number (in the **Driver Files:** field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

Windows driver configuration


The HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers feature bidirectional communication technology which, in environments that support the drivers, provide automatic discovery and driver configuration for device accessories at the time of installation.

Some accessories that are automatically discovered and configured include the duplexing unit, optional paper trays, and dual inline memory modules (DIMMs).

Topics:

- [Driver autoconfiguration](#)
- [Bidirectional communication](#)
- [Enterprise AutoConfiguration](#)
- [Update Now](#)
- [HP Driver Preconfiguration](#)

Driver autoconfiguration

 **NOTE:** The 64-bit operating systems do not support driver autoconfiguration.

Automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication occurs in the following circumstances:

- When a print driver is installed by using Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC)
- When using the Update Now feature for a driver that is already installed

However, as shown in the following table, driver autoconfiguration and EAC are *not* available in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 (32-bit) operating systems over a direct connection when the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is installed by using the Add Printer Wizard. Direct connection is a parallel or USB port connection.

Table 2-2 Availability of automatic discovery and driver configuration through bidirectional communication in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003

Connection type	Add Printer Wizard install	Common installer
Network	Yes	Yes
Direct connection	No	Yes

Bidirectional communication

In environments that support bidirectional communication, the computer communicates with the device during installation, determines the physical configuration, and then configures the driver accordingly.

Bidirectional communication is the capability of the device to respond to data inquiries from the computer and report information back, such as what type of print media is available or what accessories are connected to the device. Bidirectional communication depends on the network operating system and on the type of connection that exists between the computer and the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP. If the connection does not have this capability (that is, if it has no bidirectional mode), it can only accept commands from the host and cannot report information back to the host computer.

Enterprise AutoConfiguration

Enterprise AutoConfiguration (EAC) uses bidirectional communication to provide autoconfiguration functionality for installation of the print driver over a network, whether you use the installer on the printing-system software CD or the Add Printer Wizard to install the driver. Driver installation that includes EAC is configured with the same settings as the physical configuration of the device. Configuration occurs without user interaction.

If bidirectional-communication software has been installed previously, EAC is not activated, and the pre-existing bidirectional-communication software is used to configure the print driver.

If bidirectional communication software has not been installed, EAC installs bidirectional-communication software that allows it to communicate with the device and automatically match the print driver with the actual device configuration. EAC is activated during installation of the driver or whenever the Update Now feature is used.

If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP configuration changes after installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication by using the **Update Now** feature.

Update Now

If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP configuration has been modified since installation, the driver can be automatically updated with the new configuration in environments that support bidirectional communication. Use the **Update Now** feature to automatically reflect the new configuration in the driver.

For example, if the device is installed and an optional paper-handling accessory is added later, use **Update Now** to query the device and update the settings to match the new device configuration.

The feature automatically updates the registry and changes the configuration information that appears on the **Device Settings** tab of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers.

To activate **Update Now** for these drivers, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the device name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click **Device Settings**.
7. If necessary, click **Installable Options** to expand it and show the options.
8. In the **Automatic Configuration** drop-down menu, select **Update Now**.
9. Click **OK** to save the setting.

HP Driver Preconfiguration

HP Driver Preconfiguration is a software architecture and set of tools for customizing and distributing HP printing-system software in managed corporate printing environments. Using HP Driver

Preconfiguration, information technology (IT) administrators in corporate and enterprise environments can preconfigure the printing and device defaults for HP print drivers before installing the drivers in the network environment.

HP Driver Preconfiguration is most beneficial when configuring print drivers for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration. Two types of features can be configured:

- Device settings
- Printing-preferences settings

HP Driver Preconfiguration configures the driver to match the accessories that are installed on the device, or to match the settings that IT administrators make in the configuration .CFG file (for example, optional trays, total amount of memory, or job-storage settings).

The preconfiguration process consists of three basic steps:

- Driver acquisition
- Driver preconfiguration
- Driver installation and deployment

These steps can be accomplished in different ways, depending on the tool that is being used to define the configuration.

Driver preconfiguration is supported through three distinct tools. All three are designed with the same basic user-interface (UI) controls for interacting with the .CFG file, but are packaged differently, either to support established device installation workflows or to allow the user to deploy and install the driver. The following tools support driver preconfiguration:

- **HP Driver Configuration Editor.** The HP Driver Configuration Editor is a small standalone Windows-based software program that administrators can use to open the .CFG file that is associated with a particular driver and make modifications that are applied when that driver is installed on the target computer. Use it in environments that have an established process for deploying drivers. It is used in the same way as any ordinary Windows-based software program.

The HP Driver Configuration Editor is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/hpdpc

- **The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin.** HP Web Jetadmin provides a program to create printer queues on Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003. The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin adds screens for customizing the drivers that are being installed for the queues. The plug-in is limited to Internet Explorer browsers. Netscape Navigator is not supported.

The HP Web Jetadmin Driver Configuration Plugin is available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/bizsupport/wja/live/manual/8.0/html/wjacomp_winnt.html

- **Customization Utility.** The Customization Utility enables an IT administrator to preconfigure the print drivers when customizing the installation for a silent install.

For detailed information about customizing print drivers within the Customization Utility, download the *HP Preconfiguration Utility User Guide* from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/hpdpc

The *HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide* is included in the download.

Topics:

- [Lockable features](#)
- [Continuous export](#)

Lockable features


The following driver features can be locked to prevent end-users from changing settings:

- **Print on Both Sides (duplex).** The options are **True** or **False**.
- **Print in Grayscale.** The options are **Disabled** or **Enabled**.
- **Media Type.** The options include all the media types that the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supports.
- **Paper Source.** The options are **Printer Auto Select**, **Manual Feed (Tray 1)**, **Tray 1**, **Tray 2**, or **Tray 3**.

When a feature is locked, the selected default option is the only option that is available to users. Generally, the feature is unavailable in the driver UI after it has been locked.

Continuous export

The term "continuous export" refers to the ability of the driver to copy the latest driver settings back to the working copy of the preconfiguration file. Using this feature, the exported values can be transferred when a compatible version of the driver is used to upgrade the print driver. For instance, if the orientation is set to **Landscape** in a driver that was originally installed in Windows 2000, then the orientation setting automatically remains **Landscape** when the operating system is upgraded to Windows XP or Windows Server 2003. The continuous export feature functions transparently from the user's perspective and works only between drivers of identical driver models.

 **NOTE:** Not all of the driver parameters can be exported; however, the exportable components are always the same as the components that can be preconfigured.

HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool

Use the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool, a Web-based diagnostic software program, to determine whether the correct and most current print driver for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is in use. Two methods are available to gain access to the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool:

1. Open a Web browser.
2. Go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/drivercheck

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool runs, the devices that are currently installed on the computer appear in a list. The tool gathers information about the device, drivers, and system setup in order to diagnose the software driver configuration and check the print driver.

When the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool is open, select the HP device that you want to check. The tool verifies whether the latest driver is being used, provides feedback if an incorrect driver is being used, and indicates whether an updated driver version is available. Click the latest driver version to download and install it.

The data that the HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool gathers is stored anonymously so that HP can analyze and continuously improve its diagnostic tools. No private data is gathered from the computer.

International Color Consortium profiles

HP provides cyan-magenta-yellow-black (CMYK) and standard red-green-blue (sRGB) International Color Consortium (ICC) profiles with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP. The CMYK profile can only be used with a postscript driver; the sRGB profile can be used with any of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP drivers. The profiles are available at the following HP Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

The ICC profiles describe the way color will be interpreted in the default CMYK and RGB modes. These profiles can be used for color conversions in a color-managed workflow. The sRGB profile matches the default RGB mode (sRGB), which is enabled with the **Default (sRGB)** or **Color** setting in either a PCL or postscript driver. The printer interprets CMYK data according to the Specifications for Web Offset Publications (SWOP) simulation when **Default CMYK+** is the selected **CMYK Color** setting in the postscript driver, and a more accurate SWOP rendering can be produced by selecting the **SWOP** setting. This standard defines how a particular set of CMYK ink colors should behave. Emulation for Dainippon Press (DIC) and Euro-standard CMYK inks used in Asia and Europe are also available and can be selected from the print driver.

PANTONE color profiles

Most software programs that support the use of PANTONE* colors for graphic objects will include the PANTONE®* name in the postscript output along with the color values that are assigned to the object. For best results, select an application that uses PANTONE* palette in a CMYK workspace and print with the Postscript driver with the SWOP inkset emulation selected.

- PS Emulation driver in Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003


When **SWOP** is selected as the **CMYK Color** setting, these CMYK values provide a good reproduction of the PANTONE* 4C spot-color simulations.

PANTONE* provides device- and software-specific palettes for some HP Color LaserJet products. Using the custom colors in these palettes can provide an alternative match to the 4C spot-color simulation. However, files that use these palettes are not portable to other devices.

PANTONE* Application Palettes are available at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Vector graphics, such as company logos that are created in PANTONE* Application Palettes, can be imported into Microsoft Word, PowerPoint, or other Microsoft Office software programs. For importation, the color program must create an encapsulated postscript (.EPS) file of the image. By using the **Insert file** function, you can then import the file into the Office document.

 **NOTE:** Cutting and pasting from the Clipboard does not work. These tasks do not preserve the PANTONE* name or the CMYK palette value.

HP Easy Printer Care

HP Easy Printer Care software is designed for end users and for those who keep devices up and running in small and large business groups. View the status of up to 15 supported HP LaserJet devices, set up alerts, generate usage reports, and reorder supplies from HP or select resellers.

The HP Easy Printer Care software is available through a link in the printing-system software CD, or at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

HP embedded Web server

The HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS) is a standard feature on all HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP models that are connected through a network.

The HP EWS provides a simple, easy-to-use solution for one-to-one device management. Instead of installing management software, such as HP Web Jetadmin, use HP EWS for remote management in offices that have a limited number of devices. The management console must have a supported Web browser.

In environments that have a larger number of devices, making one-to-one management impractical, the HP Embedded Web Server and HP Web Jetadmin work together to provide scalable remote device management. Use HP Web Jetadmin to consolidate management tasks and perform operations on a selected set of devices. For such environments, HP provides hooks between the HP EWS and HP Web Jetadmin so that HP EWS features can be configured on multiple devices in one operation. For example, you can set the security password for the HP EWS simultaneously on a cluster of devices.

The *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide* is available on the printing-system software CD. Or, for additional information and a copy of the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*, go to:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Topics:

- [Access to the HP EWS](#)
- [The HP EWS frame](#)
- [Information tab](#)
- [Links to off-product solutions](#)
- [Device Status screen](#)
- [Configuration Page screen](#)
- [Settings tab](#)
- [Configure Device screen](#)
- [Alerts](#)
- [Security](#)
- [Networking tab](#)

Access to the HP EWS


To open the HP EWS and view information about the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, open a supported Web browser and type the device transmission control protocol/Internet protocol (TCP/IP) address or host name in the address field.

To find the device TCP/IP address or hostname, look for **IP Address** on the device Configuration page (the Embedded Jetdirect page), which can be printed from the device control-panel display. Follow these steps to print an Embedded Jetdirect page:

1. Touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**, then **Configuration/Status Pages**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages** again, then touch **Print**.

The HP EWS frame

Each screen in the HP EWS is a frame that contains a top banner, four category tabs, a left-aligned navigation menu bar, and a main-content area. Selecting one of the category tabs causes the corresponding left-aligned navigation bar to appear, where a menu includes links to content for that tab. The main-content area shows information and opens options in response to navigation-tab selections and menu-bar selections.

 **NOTE:** When the HP EWS screens are opened immediately after the device is turned on, the HP EWS screens may change as you browse. Complete information becomes available when the device enters the **Ready** state.

Information tab

The following information is available on the HP EWS **Information** tab. Click the menu items on the left side of the HP EWS **Information** tab to view the information on each screen.


 **NOTE:** If an HP EWS password has been set, the **Information** tab is the only available tab until the user logs in. See [Security on page 51](#) for more information.

Figure 2-5 HP EWS — Information tab

The screenshot displays the 'Device Status' page of an HP Embedded Web Server. The page is organized into several sections:

- Navigation Menu:** Located on the left, it includes links for Device Status, Configuration Page, Supplies Status, Event Log, Usage Page, Diagnostics Page, Device Information, Control Panel, Color Usage Job Log, and Print. There is also an 'Other Links' section with links to HP Instant Support, Shop for Supplies, and Product Support.
- Device Status:** The main heading, followed by 'Sleep mode on' and two status indicators: 'Pause/Resume' (disabled) and 'Continue' (checked).
- Supplies:** A section showing the remaining levels of various components:
 - Black Cartridge: 41%
 - Cyan Cartridge: 43%
 - Magenta Cartridge: 50%
 - Yellow Cartridge: 53%
 - Image Transfer Kit: 93%
 - Image Fuser Kit: 95%
 - Document Feeder Kit: 100%
- Media:** A table listing the status of different trays and the output bin.

Input/Output	Status	Capacity	Size	Type
Tray 1	Empty	100 Sheets	Any Size	Any Type
Tray 2	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 3	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 4	OK	500 Sheets	Legal	Plain
Left output bin	OK	N/A	N/A	

- **Device Status.** Provides current status information about the MFP.
- **Configuration Page.** Provides information about the MFP configuration.
- **Supplies Status.** Provides information about the print cartridge.
- **Event Log.** Provides information about reported MFP errors.
- **Usage Page.** Provides a page count for each size of media that has passed through the MFP, as well as the number of duplexed pages that have been printed.
- **Diagnostics Page.** Contains calibration info, color density info, and parameters related to the color printing process.
- **Device Information.** Shows MFP information, such as the MFP TCP/IP address and serial number.
- **Control Panel.** Shows the MFP control panel.
- **Color Usage Job Log.** Provides basic printer information and tracks printer usage.
- **Print.** Includes options to print documents that are print-ready .PCL documents, .PS documents, .PDF files, text (.TXT) files, and files that are generated by a "print to file" driver option.

Not all of the screens on the tab appear in this document. For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.


Links to off-product solutions

Links on the HP EWS screens provide an easy way to locate information or complete tasks.

- **hp instant support.** Connects to a set of dynamic Web resources that help solve specific problems and determine additional services that might be available for the MFP. Specific status and configuration information about the MFP is retained and directed to the "Solve a Problem" Web site, which offers targeted support content and messages.
- **Shop for Supplies.** Connects to an HP product supplies screen where you can order genuine HP supplies for the MFP.
- **Product Support.** Connects to an HP product-support screen where you can search for information, contact the HP customer care home page, or find additional resources for the MFP.

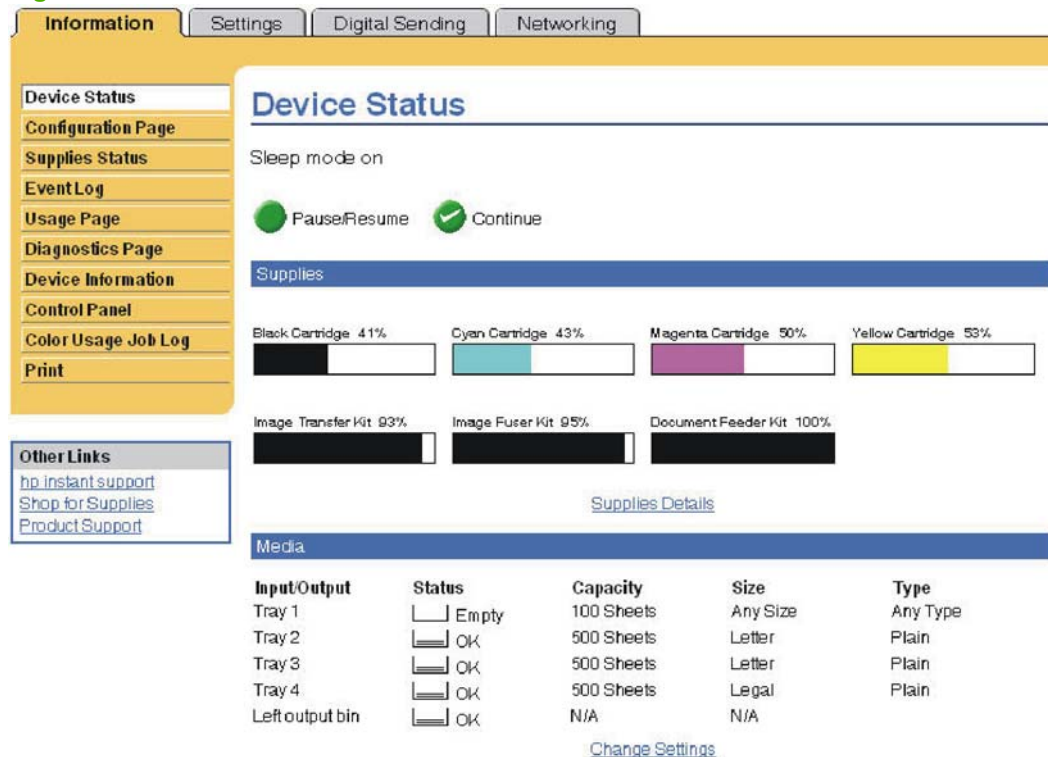
Device Status screen

Status information, such as whether the MFP is online or the toner is low, is available through a Web browser on a computer that is linked directly to the MFP. View this information without going to the MFP to identify the status.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

The following figure shows how this information is presented on the MFP Web page.

Figure 2-6 HP EWS Information tab – Device Status screen



Configuration Page screen

Gain access to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Configuration page remotely through the HP EWS. The HP EWS **Configuration Page** screen provides the same configuration information about the MFP as the Configuration page that is printed from the MFP.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

The following figure shows an example of a Configuration page viewed remotely through the HP EWS.

Figure 2-7 HP EWS **Information** tab – **Configuration Page** screen

Information
Settings
Digital Sending
Networking

Device States

Configuration Page

Supplies Status

Event Log

Usage Page

Diagnostics Page

Device Information

Control Panel

Color Usage Job Log

Print

Configuration Page

Other Links

[hp instant support](#)

[Shop for Supplies](#)

[Product Support](#)

Device Information

Product Name:	HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP
Device Name:	HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP
Model Number:	CXXXXA
Device Serial Number:	XXXXXXXXXX
Formatter Number:	G7000LZ
DC Controller:	3D
CPS:	1.031 (2.0)
SCS:	CMNPSL 28
Firmware:	20070208 20070208
Duplex Unit Version:	8
Output Accessory Bridge Version:	8
Optional Trays Version:	8
Service ID:	00000
PS Wait Time-out:	300 seconds
Engine Cycles:	3256
Color Cycle Count:	2767
Document Feeder Kit Interval:	90000
Pages Since Last Doc Feeder Maintenance:	34

Options

PCL:	(20010402)
PCLXL:	(20010402)
POSTSCRIPT:	(20010402)
PDF:	(20050131)
DIMM Slot 1:	256 MB DDR
DIMM Slot 2:	128 MB DDR
Card Slot 1:	SMART ATA FLASH DISK: 2 MB
Card Slot 2:	Empty
Card Slot 3:	Empty
EIO 1:	Empty
EIO 2:	HP Scanner Processor Card
Embedded JetDirect:	HP JetDirect J7991E 10.10.46.56
Internal Disk:	ST340014AS: 37 GB
Internal Fax:	
Disk Storage:	37910 MB Capacity
Card Slot Storage:	2 MB Capacity
LDAP Gateway:	Not Configured
SMTP Gateway:	Not Configured
hp MFP Digital Sending Server:	Not Configured

Memory

Installed DIMM Memory:	384 MB
On Board Memory:	
System:	0 MB
Imaging:	64 MB
Total RAM:	448 MB
DWS:	70.00

Automatic resource saving enabled

Security

Control Panel Lock:	None
Control Panel Password:	Disabled
Device Type: Disk:	Write Protect: Disabled
Device Type: Card Slot:	Write Protect: Disabled
File System Access:	
P/L:	Enabled
P/M:	Enabled
NFS:	Enabled
PostScript:	Enabled
Secure Disk Erase Mode:	Non-secure fast erase
Direct Ports (USB/IEEE 1234):	Enabled

Paper Trays and Options

Default Paper Size:	Letter
Tray 1 Size:	Any Size
Tray 1 Type:	Any Type
Tray 2 Size:	Letter
Tray 2 Type:	Plain
Tray 3 Size:	Letter
Tray 3 Type:	Plain
Tray 4 Size:	Legal
Tray 4 Type:	Plain

Duplex Unit

Internal

Input Trays:

1. TRAY 1, 100 Sheets
2. TRAY 2, 500 Sheets
3. TRAY 3, 500 Sheets
4. TRAY 4, 500 Sheets

Device 1:

HEWLETT-PACKARD
HP 500 SHEET STAPLER/STACKER [MP04 24] Q5691A

Output Bins:

1. Left output bin, 500 Sheets, Face Down, Stapler

Calibration Information

Last CPR (Engine Cycles): 2884
Last CPR: 29 Mar 2007/14:41
Last DMaxDHalf (Engine Cycles): 3242
Last DMaxDHalf: 5 Apr 2007/11:30 @

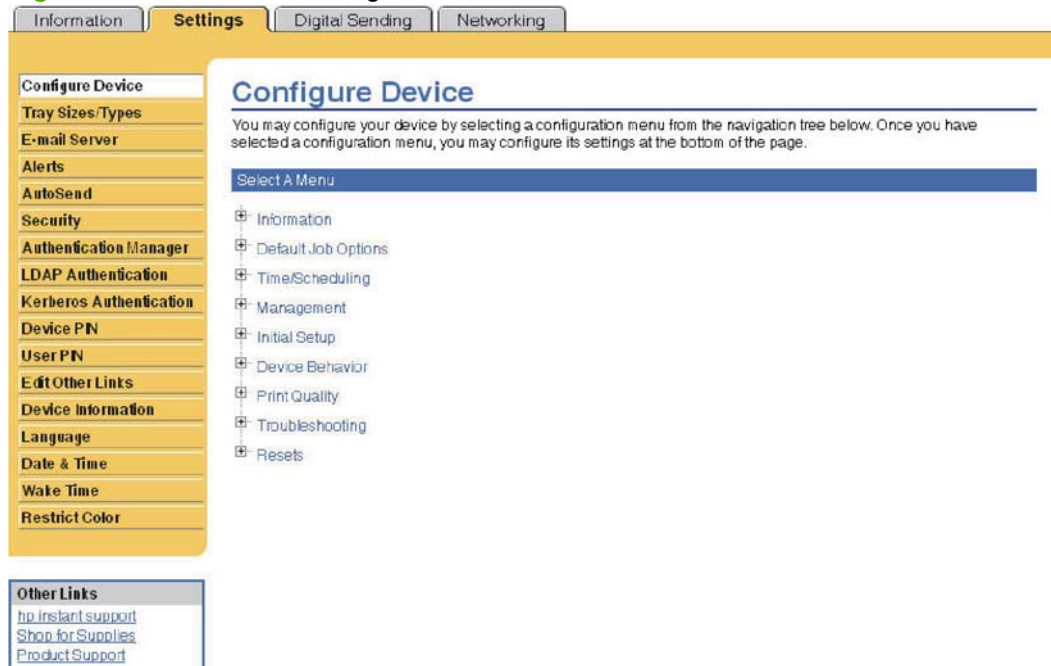
Color Density

C	M	Y	K
0	0	0	0
Midtones	0	0	0
Shadows	0	0	0

Settings tab

The following information is available on the HP EWS **Settings** tab. Click the menu items on the left side of the HP EWS **Settings** tab to view the information.

Figure 2-8 HP EWS — Settings tab



- **Configure Device.** Use the **Configure Device** screen to print MFP information pages and configure the MFP remotely.
- **Tray Sizes/Types.** Use these menus to select the default paper types for each tray on the product. (Paper sizing is auto-sensed by the trays.)
- **E-mail Server.** Use the **E-mail Server** screen to configure e-mail settings for outgoing e-mail.
- **Alerts.** IT administrators can use the **Alerts** screen to configure the MFP to send alerts in e-mail messages to anyone.
- **AutoSend.** Use the **AutoSend** screen to send MFP-configuration and supplies-usage information periodically to your service provider.
- **Authentication Manager.** Use the **Authentication Manager** screen to set the Device Functions that require users to successfully log in before use.
- **LDAP Authentication.** Use the **LDAP Authentication** page to configure a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) server to authenticate device users.
- **Kerberos Authentication.** Use the **Kerberos Authentication** page to configure the device to authenticate users to a Kerberos Realm. When Kerberos Authentication is selected, the user at the device must enter valid credentials (username, password, and realm).
- **Device PIN.** If PIN Authentication is selected for one or more Device Functions on the **Authentication Manager** page, the user will be prompted for a PIN before they can access those Device Functions.

- **User PIN.** The **User PIN Authentication** page enables you to add user PIN records into the device one at a time, and to edit or delete user PIN records that have already been saved in the device.
- **Security.** Use the **Security** screen to manage security for the MFP.
- **Edit Other Links.** Use the **Edit Other Links** screen to add or customize up to five links to the Web sites of your choice.
- **Device Information.** Use the **Device Information** screen to provide a name of your choice for the MFP, assign an asset number, and configure the company name, the person to contact about the MFP, and the physical location of the MFP.
- **Language.** Use the **Language** screen to select the language in which the HP EWS screens appear.
- **Date & Time.** Use the **Date & Time** screen to set the correct date and time for the MFP.
- **Wake Time.** IT administrators can use the **Wake Time** screen to schedule the MFP to turn on at a certain time on a daily basis.
- **Restrict Color.** Use the **Restrict Color** screen to restrict color printing for all users or for specific users and/or applications.

Not all of the screens on the tab appear in this document. For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

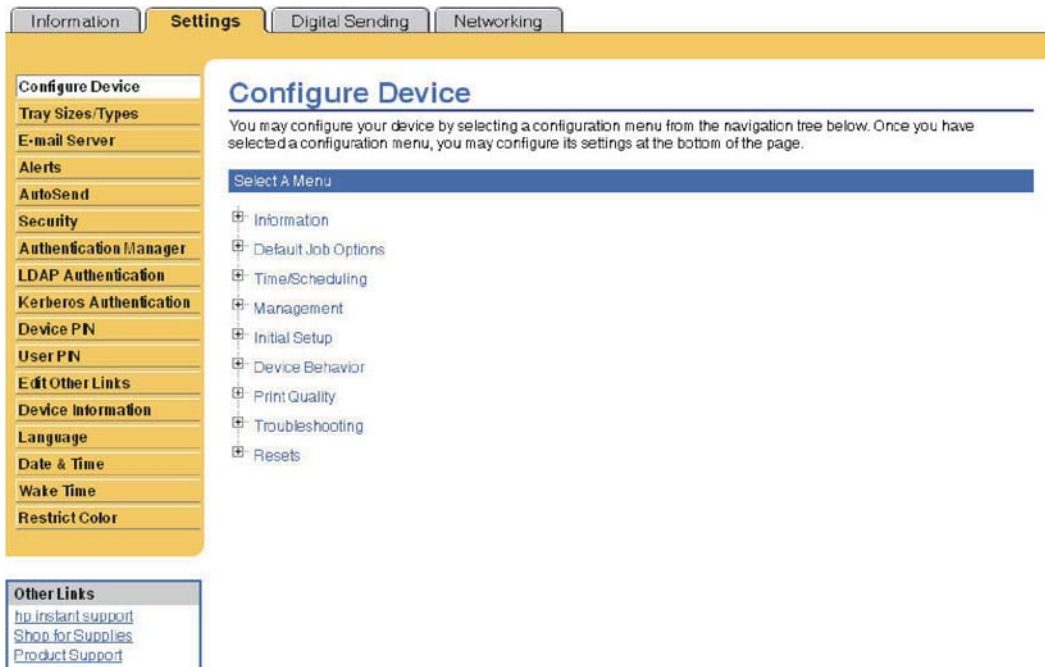
Configure Device screen

You can obtain MFP configuration information through a Web browser by opening the HP EWS screen and changing the basic configuration information on the **Settings** tab. Security and password controls give management information systems (MIS) managers the level of control that they require within their network environments.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

The following figure shows an example of MFP options that can be configured remotely.

Figure 2-9 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Configure Device** screen



Alerts

The MFP can automatically send e-mail alerts about printing problems or job status to specified e-mail addresses. For example, if toner is low, the MFP can notify the person who is responsible for ordering or changing the print cartridge. If an MFP failure occurs, the MFP can send an e-mail alert directly to the person who is responsible for fixing the problem.

These e-mail alerts can be configured to be sent to any device that can accept e-mail, such as digital phones, pagers, and personal digital assistants (PDAs). In large environments, administrators can route e-mail addresses to list-servers or uniform resource locators (URLs) for expanded notification.

 **NOTE:** For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

The following figure shows an example of the **Alerts** settings that can be configured remotely.

Figure 2-10 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Alerts** screen

Information **Settings** Digital Sending Networking

Configure Device
Tray Sizes/Types
E-mail Server
Alerts
AutoSend
Security
Authentication Manager
LDAP Authentication
Kerberos Authentication
Device PIN
User PIN
Edit Other Links
Device Information
Language
Date & Time
Wake Time
Restrict Color

Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)

Alerts - setup

Step 1: Type the list name

Type a name for your destination list.

ListName:

Step 2: Type the alert destinations

Type a maximum of 20 alert destinations in any of the following forms:
An e-mail address (e.g., your-name@your-company.com)
A mobile device (e.g., 208-555-5555@mobile-company.net)
A posting to a website (e.g., <http://www.your-server.com >)

Separate alert destinations using a semi-colon (;) or a comma (,).

AlertDestinations:

Step 3: Select Alerts

Select the alerts that you would like the alert destinations to receive. The most common alerts are listed here.

Alert Name	Selected	Threshold*
Order Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/> (0-100) percent
Order Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Non-HP Supply Installed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Remove Paper Jam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Close Drawers, Doors And Covers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Empty (Load)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Open	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
ADF Paper Jam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed

* Changes to threshold values apply to all destinations for this device.

Additional Alerts

To view all of the alerts for this product, click the **Show All Alerts** button.

Note: Clicking this button saves your current changes and opens the page that lists all of the alerts options.

Step 4: Select Control Panel Messages to Suppress

Select the message(s) below that you do not want to show on the device control panel. The option is available only if the corresponding e-mail alert has been selected in the previous step.

Order and Replace Cartridge

Step 5: Select e-mail attachments (optional)

Select the attachments that you want to include with each e-mail alert message in this destination list. Go to the **Information** tab to see examples of these pages.

Supplies Status Page
 Usage Page
 Configuration Page
 Event Log Page

Select this option if one of the alert destinations you have chosen to receive alerts is an automated computer system.

Security

The HP EWS screens that appear, and the settings on them, vary according to the specific HP EWS. Three modes of user access are possible:

- General user
- IT administrator
- Service provider


To control access to the HP EWS screens, set a password on the **Security** page.

Figure 2-11 HP EWS **Settings** tab – **Security** screen

The screenshot shows the HP EWS Security settings page. The 'Settings' tab is selected. The left sidebar contains a navigation menu with 'Security' highlighted. The main content area is titled 'Security' and includes sections for setting a password, configuring options, and managing direct ports. The 'Set Password' section has a 'Username' field with 'admin' entered, and 'New Password' and 'Verify Password' fields. The 'Set Options' section has two checked checkboxes: 'Display Color Usage Job Log Page on Information Tab' and 'Display Print Page on Information Tab'. The 'Display On Device Status Page' section has three checkboxes: 'Cancel Job' (unchecked), 'Pause/Resume' (checked), and 'Continue Button' (checked). The 'Direct Ports (USB/IEEE 1284)' section has a 'Disable Direct Ports' checkbox (unchecked). A note at the bottom states: 'Note: The device will automatically turn off then on after this setting is applied.' At the bottom right are 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons.

In a password-protected HP EWS, only the **Information** tab is available to users who do not log in by using the password. If no password is set (which is the default configuration), all of the tabs are available.

If a password has been set, log in as an IT administrator or a service provider to gain access to the protected HP EWS tabs (**Settings** and **Networking**).

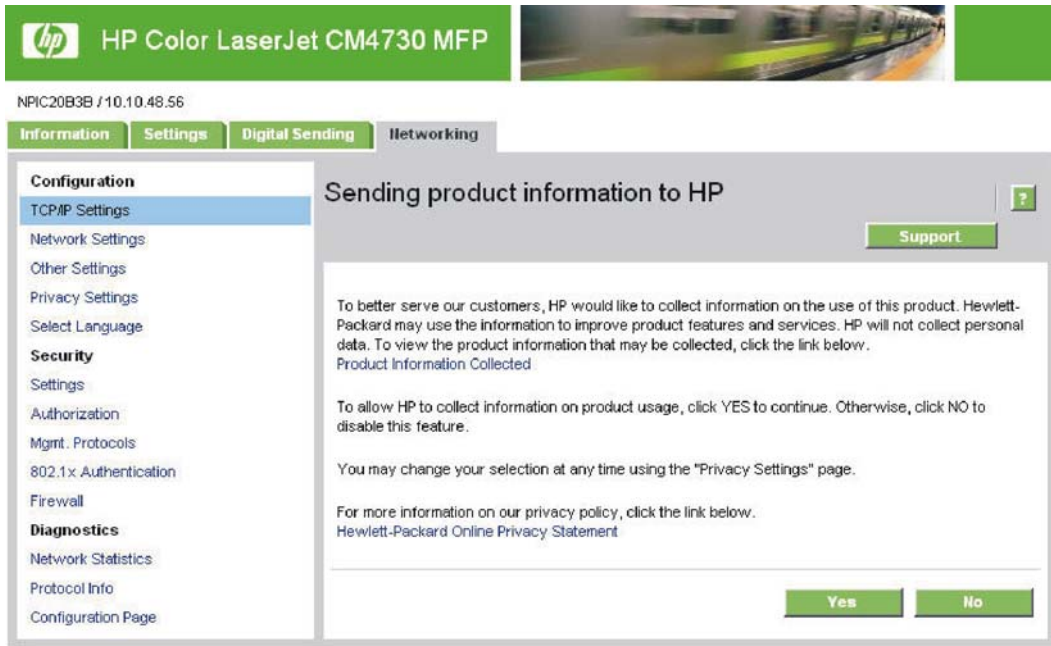
 **NOTE:** For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Networking tab

The HP EWS **Networking** tab provides access to HP Jetdirect network configuration parameters and status for the MFP.

An example of the HP EWS **Networking** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 2-12 HP EWS **Networking** tab – **Network Settings** screen



For more information, see the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide*.

HP Web Jetadmin

Use HP Web Jetadmin and a browser to manage HP Jetdirect-connected devices within an intranet. HP Web Jetadmin is a browser-based management tool that should be installed only on a single network-administration server.

To download a current version of HP Web Jetadmin, and for the latest list of host systems that support HP Web Jetadmin, go to the following Web site:

www.hp.com/go/webjetadmin

3 Install Microsoft Windows printing-system components

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP comes with software and installers for Microsoft Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. Linux and UNIX systems also support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, and software is available on the Web. This chapter provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software for Windows operating systems.

For Macintosh systems, see [Macintosh on page 185](#).

Topics:

- [Font support](#)
- [Print-driver installation instructions](#)

Font support

The following sections list the fonts that are included with Windows, and the fonts that are available on the CD that came with the device.

Topics:

- [Basic fonts](#)
- [Default fonts](#)

Basic fonts

Windows includes the following basic fonts, which can be used with any HP printing device:

- Arial
- Arial Bold
- Arial Bold Italic
- Arial Italic
- Courier New
- Courier New Bold
- Courier New Bold Italic
- Courier New Italic
- Symbol
- Times New Roman
- Times New Roman Bold
- Times New Roman Bold Italic
- Times New Roman Italic
- Wingdings

Default fonts

The following default fonts are installed through a Custom Installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software.

Table 3-1 Default fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus Extra Bold	Regular	ALBR85W.TTF
Albertus Medium	Regular	ALBR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Regular	OLVR55W.TTF
Antique Olive	Bold	OLVR75W.TTF
Antique Olive	Italic	OLVR56W.TTF

Table 3-1 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
CG Omega	Regular	CGOR45W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold	CGOR65W.TTF
CG Omega	Bold Italic	CGOR66W.TTF
CG Omega	Italic	CGOR46W.TTF
CG Times	Regular	CGTR45W.TTF
CG Times	Bold	CGTR65W.TTF
CG Times	Bold Italic	CGTR66W.TTF
CG Times	Italic	CGTR46W.TTF
Clarendon Condensed	Bold	CLAR67W.TTF
Coronet	Regular	CORONET.TTF
CourierPS	Regular	CPSR45W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold	CPSR65W.TTF
CourierPS	Bold Oblique	CPSR66W.TTF
CourierPS	Oblique	CPSR46W.TTF
Garamond	Antiqua	GARR45W.TTF
Garamond	Halbfett	GARR65W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv	GARR46W.TTF
Garamond	Kursiv Halbfett	GARR66W.TTF
Helvetica®	Regular	HELR45W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold	HELR65W.TTF
Helvetica	Bold Oblique	HELR66W.TTF
Helvetica	Oblique	HELR46W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Regular	HELR47W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold	HELR67W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Bold Oblique	HELR68W.TTF
Helvetica Narrow	Oblique	HELR48W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book	AVGR45W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic	Book Oblique	AVGR46W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Regular	AVGR65W.TTF
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi	Oblique	AVGR66W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Regular	BOKR35W.TTF
ITC Bookman Light	Italic	BOKR36W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Regular	BOKR75W.TTF
ITC Bookman Demi	Italic	BOKR76W.TTF

Table 3-1 Default fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
ITC Zapf Chancery	Medium Italic	CHANC___.TTF
ITC Zapf Dingbats	Regular	DINGS___.TTF
Letter Gothic	Regular	LETR45W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Bold	LETR65W.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	LETR46W.TTF
Marigold	Regular	MARIGOLD.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold	NCSR75W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Bold Italic	NCSR76W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Italic	NCSR56W.TTF
New Century Schoolbook	Roman	NCSR55W.TTF
Palatino	Bold	PALR65W.TTF
Palatino	Bold Italic	PALR66W.TTF
Palatino	Italic	PALR46W.TTF
Palatino	Roman	PALR45W.TTF
SymbolPS	Regular	SYMPS___.TTF
Times*	Bold	TIMR65W.TTF
Times	Bold Italic	TIMR66W.TTF
Times	Italic	TIMR46W.TTF
Times	Roman	TIMR45W.TTF
Univers	Bold	UNVR65W.TTF
Univers	Bold Italic	UNVR66W.TTF
Univers	Medium	UNVR55W.TTF
Univers	Medium Italic	UNVR56W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold	UNVR67W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Bold Italic	UNVR68W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium	UNVR57W.TTF
Univers Condensed	Medium Italic	UNVR58W.TTF

The following additional PS emulation fonts are also available on the CD.

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts

Font name	Font style	File name
Albertus MT	Regular	PS_12639.TTF
Albertus MT	Italic	PS_12640.TTF
Albertus MT Lt	Regular	PS_14530.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Antique Olive CompactPS	Regular	PS_11120.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Regular	PS_11119.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Bold	PS_11118.TTF
Antique Olive Roman	Italic	PS_11846.TTF
Apple Chancery	Italic	PS_24516.TTF
Bodoni Poster	Regular	PS_12704.TTF
Bodoni PosterCompressed	Regular	PS_14508.TTF
BodoniPS	Regular	PS_12581.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold	PS_12585.TTF
BodoniPS	Bold Italic	PS_12586.TTF
BodoniPS	Italic	PS_12582.TTF
Candid	Regular	PS_24517.TTF
Chicago	Regular	PS_24518.TTF
Clarendon Light	Regular	PS_14513.TTF
ClarendonPS	Regular	PS_10269.TTF
ClarendonPS	Bold	PS_12968.TTF
Cooper Black	Regular	PS_10369.TTF
Cooper Black	Italic	PS_10370.TTF
Copperplate32bc	Regular	PS_14514.TTF
Copperplate33bc	Regular	PS_14515.TTF
CoronetPS	Italic	PS_10249.TTF
Eurostile	Regular	PS_10267.TTF
Eurostile Bold	Regular	PS_10268.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Bold	PS_14512.TTF
Eurostile ExtendedTwo	Regular	PS_14511.TTF
Geneva	Regular	PS_24509.TTF
GillSans	Regular	PS_13872.TTF
GillSans	Bold	PS_13874.TTF
GillSans	Bold Italic	PS_13875.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Regular	PS_14053.TTF
GillSans Condensed	Bold	PS_14054.TTF
GillSans ExtraBold	Regular	PS_14051.TTF
GillSans	Italic	PS_13873.TTF
GillSans Light	Italic	PS_13871.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
GillSans Light	Regular	PS_13870.TTF
Goudy	Bold	PS_12544.TTF
Goudy	Bold Italic	PS_10695.TTF
Goudy	Regular	PS_12542.TTF
Goudy ExtraBold	Regular	PS_12545.TTF
Goudy	Italic	PS_12543.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Regular	PS_14526.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold	PS_14528.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Bold Italic	PS_14529.TTF
Helvetica Condensed	Italic	PS_14527.TTF
Hoefler Text	Regular	PS_24519.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Regular	PS_24521.TTF
Hoefler Text Black	Italic	PS_24522.TTF
Hoefler Text	Italic	PS_24520.TTF
Hoefler Text Ornaments	Regular	PS_24523.TTF
Joanna MT	Regular	PS_14503.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold	PS_14505.TTF
Joanna MT	Bold Italic	PS_14506.TTF
Joanna MT	Italic	PS_14504.TTF
Letter Gothic	Italic	PS_13778.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Regular	PS_13777.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold	PS_13779.TTF
Letter GothicPS	Bold Italic	PS_13780.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Regular	PS_12675.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold	PS_12677.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Bold Italic	PS_12625.TTF
Lubalin Graph	Italic	PS_12623.TTF
MarigoldPS	Regular	PS_94073.TTF
Mona Lisa Recut	Regular	PS_14525.TTF
Monaco	Regular	PS_24524.TTF
New York	Regular	PS_24510.TTF
Optima	Regular	PS_12506.TTF
Optima	Bold	PS_12510.TTF
Optima	Bold Italic	PS_12511.TTF

Table 3-2 Additional PS emulation fonts (continued)

Font name	Font style	File name
Optima	Italic	PS_12507.TTF
Oxford	Italic	PS_14072.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Italic	PS_11546.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Regular	PS_11545.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold	PS_11547.TTF
StempelGaramond Roman	Bold Italic	PS_11548.TTF
Taffy	Regular	PS_14507.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Regular	PS_13501.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold	PS_14023.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Bold Italic	PS_14024.TTF
Univers 45 Light	Italic	PS_13502.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold	PS_14030.TTF
Univers 47 CondensedLight	Bold Italic	PS_14040.TTF
Univers 55	Regular	PS_14021.TTF
Univers 55	Italic	PS_14022.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Regular	PS_14029.TTF
Univers 57 Condensed	Italic	PS_14039.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold	PS_13548.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Regular	PS_13547.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Bold Italic	PS_14481.TTF
Univers ExtendedPS	Italic	PS_14480.TTF

Print-driver installation instructions

Topics:

- [General Windows installation instructions](#)
- [Detailed instructions for Windows installation](#)
- [Set a default printer](#)

General Windows installation instructions

Installation is similar for all supported Windows operating systems.

If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is connected through a file or print server, the printing-system software must be installed on the server before it is installed on any client systems. If the printing-system software is not first installed on the server, bidirectional communication and some driver autoconfiguration methods are not available to the client systems.

For Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Vista, the person installing the software must have administrator rights on the system.

When the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system installer runs, the HP LaserJet uninstaller is added to the system.


Topics:

- [Install from the printing-system CD](#)
- [Install from a network or from downloaded files](#)

Install from the printing-system CD

Follow these instructions to install the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software from the CD that came with the device.

1. Quit all unnecessary software programs.
2. Insert the CD in the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD does not start automatically, click **Start**, click **Run**, and then browse to and double-click the **SETUP.EXE** file in the root directory of the CD.

3. Click **Install Printer** and follow the onscreen prompts.

Install from a network or from downloaded files

Follow these instructions when installing printing-system files downloaded from the Web, or when installing files from a network. See your network administrator for the location of the printing-system software files.

1. Browse to the location of the **SETUP.EXE** file.
2. Double-click the **SETUP.EXE** file.
3. Click **Install** and continue to follow the instructions until the device is installed. For detailed installation instructions, see [Detailed instructions for Windows installation on page 63](#).

Detailed instructions for Windows installation

A series of dialog boxes appears during installation of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software in Windows environments.

Topics:

- [Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons](#)
- [Direct-connect installation through a USB port](#)
- [Unsupported operating system dialog box](#)
- [Installation dialog-box sequence](#)
- [Modify a pre-existing installation](#)
- [Install drivers by using Add Printer Wizard](#)
- [Installer Customization Wizard for Windows](#)
- [Point and Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003](#)

Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons

Clicking one of these buttons on any screen will do the following:

- **Help.** Find suggestions for and explanations about the installation process.
- **Back.** Return to the previous dialog box. The specific dialog box depends on previous selections.
- **Next.** Proceed to the next step in the installation sequence.
- **Cancel.** Exit the installation sequence without installing the device.

When prompted about whether you want to cancel the installation, click **Yes**; and then, on the Cancel dialog box, click **Finish**.

Direct-connect installation through a USB port

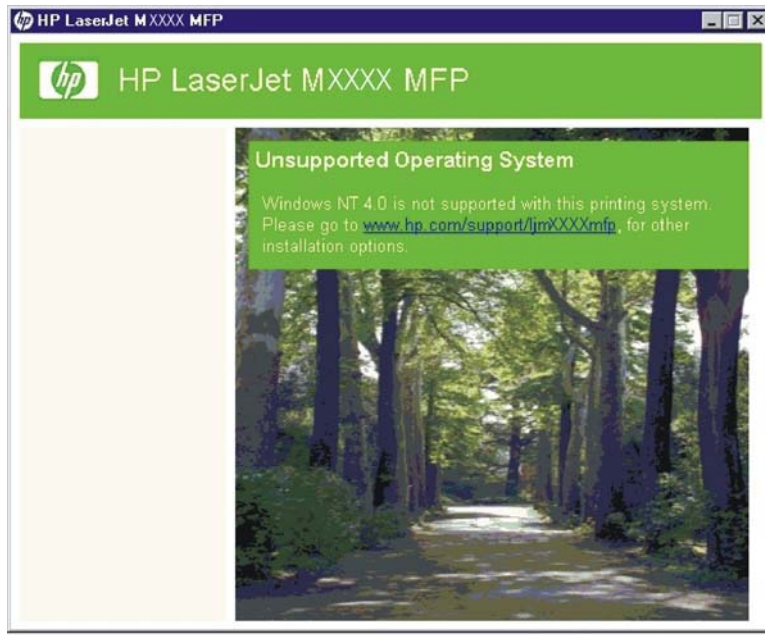
The printing-system software should be installed *before* the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is connected to the computer through a USB or parallel port connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software generates a prompt to connect the device.

Unsupported operating system dialog box


The Windows NT 4.0 and Windows 98 operating systems do not support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP. When attempting to install the software in these environments, an **Unsupported Operating System** dialog box appears.

An example of an **Unsupported Operating System** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-1 Setup Error – Unsupported Operating System, Windows NT 4.0




Installation dialog-box sequence

 **NOTE:** The dialog boxes shown in this document appear in the Windows XP Professional installation sequence. The order and appearance of dialog boxes can vary among operating systems.

Select the **Install Printer** option from the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD. The **Language Selection** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-2 Language Selection dialog box



 **NOTE:** The **Language Selection** dialog box lists only the languages that are available on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD.

The installer automatically detects the language that the computer system uses and presents this selection as the default.

Select any other language that is available on the CD by clicking the down arrow on the drop-down menu.

Click **OK** to initiate the printing-system setup. The **Welcome** dialog box appears.

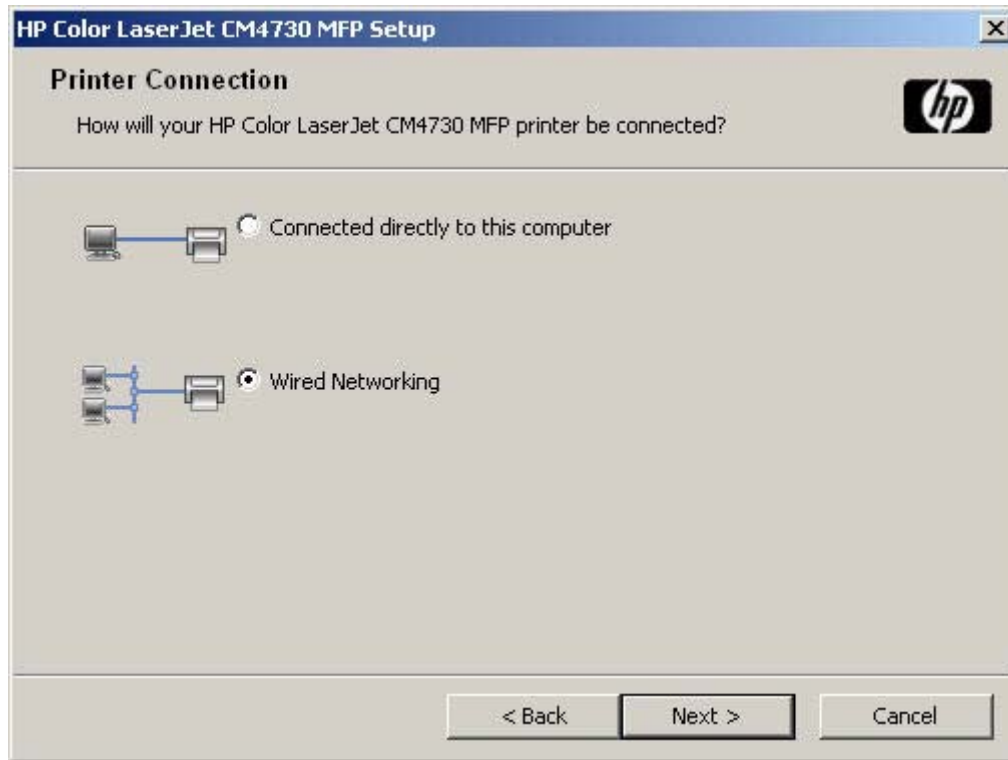
Figure 3-3 Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 Setup Wizard dialog box



Read the license agreement, and then click **Yes** to proceed with the installation.


The **Printer Connection** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-4 Printer Connection dialog box




The following two options are available in the **Printer Connection** dialog box:

- **Connected directly to this computer**
- **Wired Networking**

 **NOTE:** The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP does not support infrared connections or connections over a parallel port.

NOTE: The printing-system software should be installed *before* the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is connected to the computer through a USB or parallel port connection and turned on. During the installation process, the software generates a prompt to connect the device.


Click **Connected directly to this computer** (a "direct connection" using a USB 2.0 cable or parallel port cable) and then click **Next**. The **Installation Type** dialog box opens. This is the default option.

 **NOTE:** When plugged into an individual unit, a USB port is created during the driver installation. As a result, plugging in five different units results in five new copies of the driver and five new USB ports being created. The extra USB ports can be removed *only* if the extra driver copies are removed with the USB still connected.

To continue with the default installation sequence (using a "direct connection"), see [Figure 3-17 Installation Type dialog box on page 78](#).

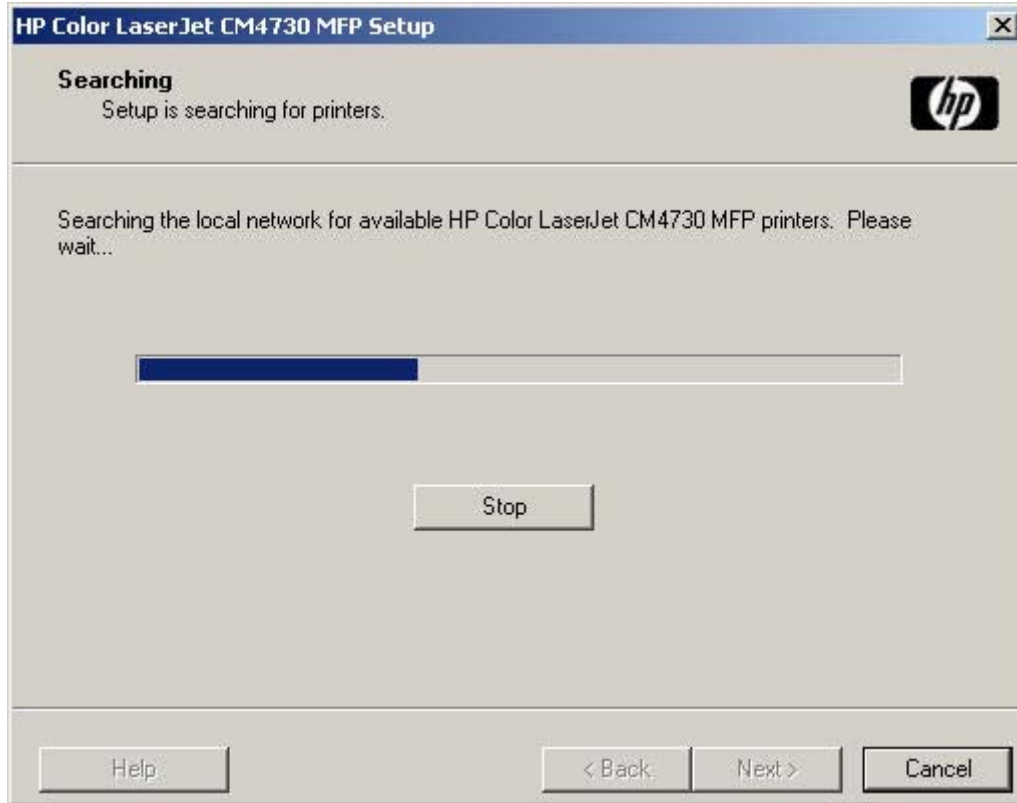
When installing the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP over the network, click **Wired Networking** in the **Printer Connection** dialog box.


For a network installation, connect the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP to the network and turn it on before installing the printing-system software.

 **NOTE:** Wired networking refers to the device being connected to the network by a network cable. For wireless installation instructions using an HP Jetdirect ew2400 802.11g wireless print server or an HP Direct 380x802.11B wireless print server, consult the documentation that comes with the print server.

Click **Next** to continue. The **Searching** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-5 Searching dialog box

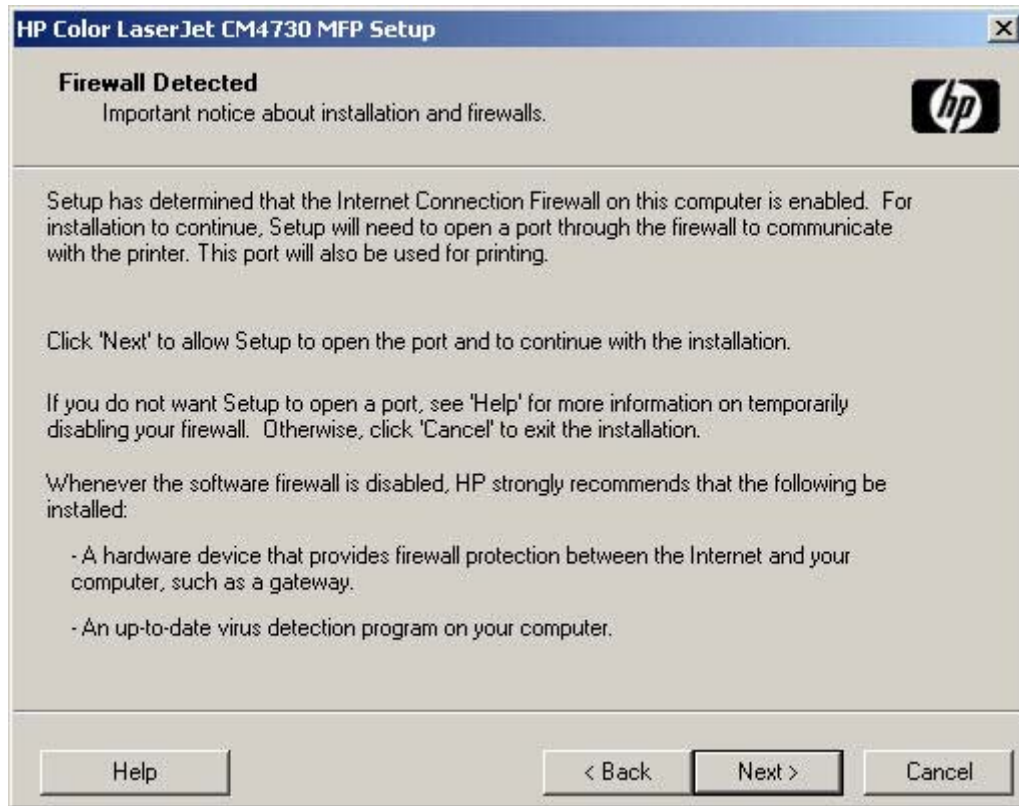


 **NOTE:** When installing the device over a network, allow the search for the first subnet in the network to finish finding all available devices. After the first subnet is scanned for available HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFPs, the results appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box. However, the installer continues to search the network for additional devices. The results of the first search appear within about 20 seconds, and then the search of the other subnets occurs. The results appear in the **Printers Found** dialog box (see [Figure 3-8 Printers Found dialog box on page 69](#)).

NOTE: If the device does not appear, the installation process includes the option of using the TCP/IP address for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, which might be preferable to waiting for the installer to finish the search.

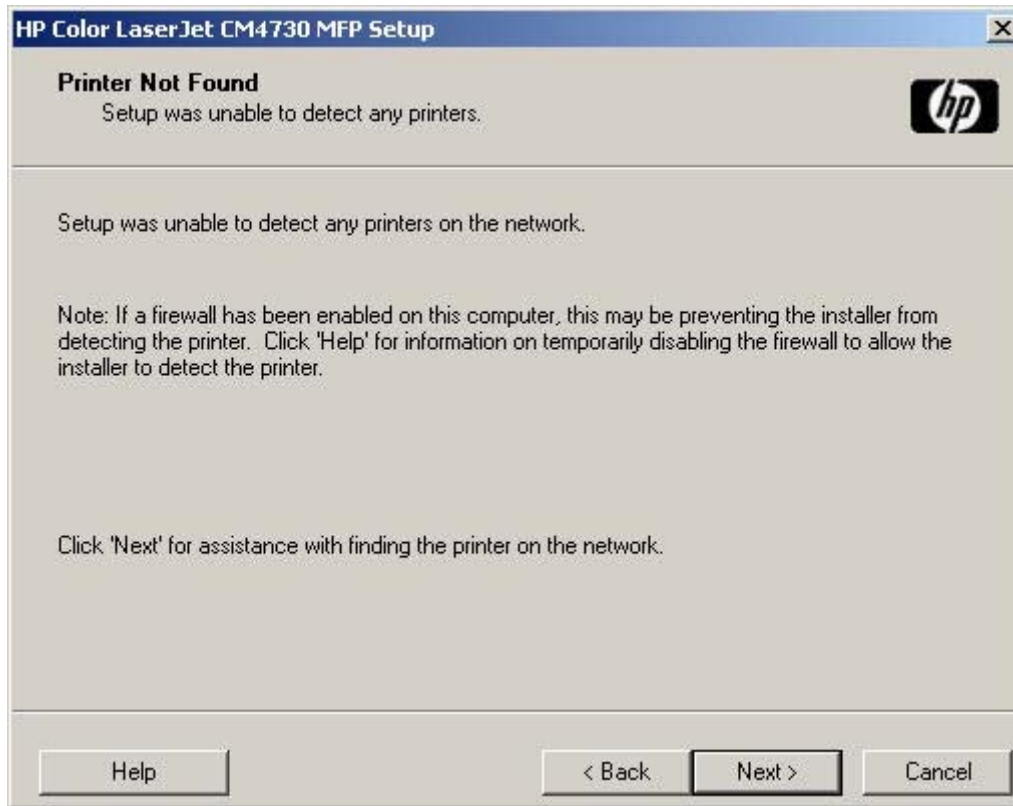
If the network has a firewall that is blocking the installation, the **Firewall Detected** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-6 Firewall Detected dialog box



If no device is found during a network installation, the **Printer Not Found** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-7 Printer Not Found dialog box

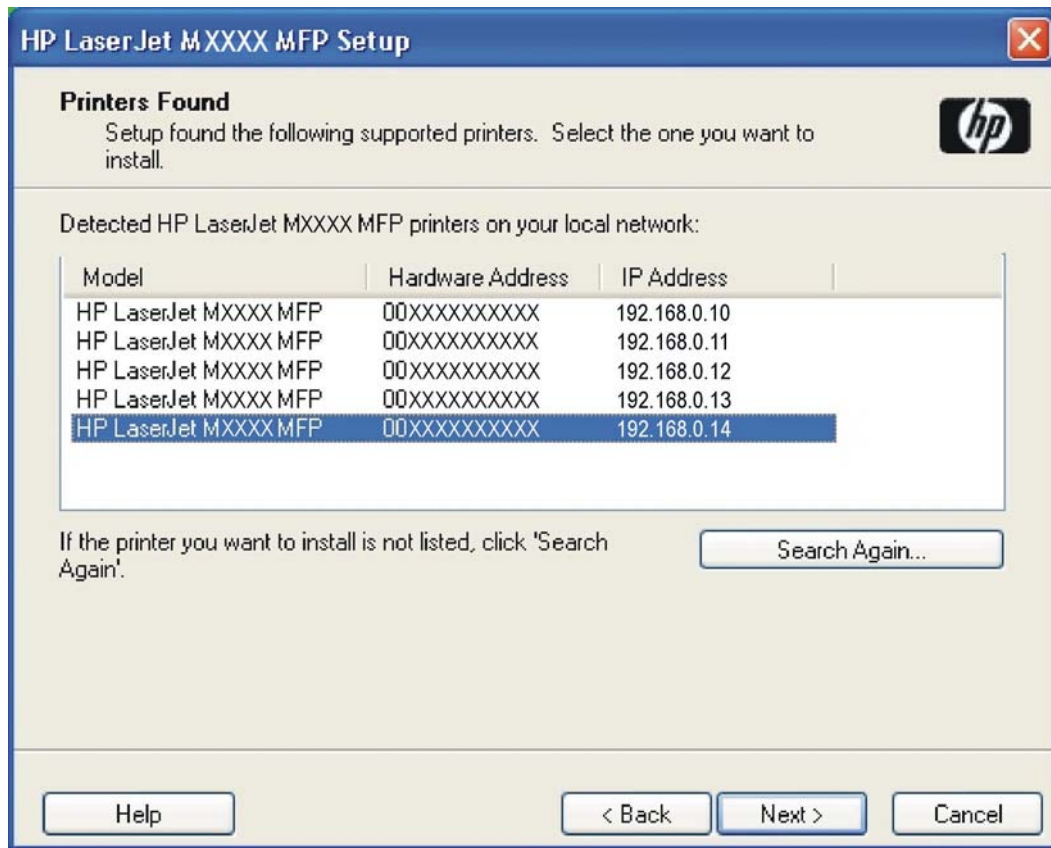


If this dialog box appears, the device might not be connected to the network. Ensure that the device is connected and turned on. If a firewall is blocking the installation and you want the installer to open a port through the firewall, click **Next**.

The **Searching** dialog box appears (see [Figure 3-5 Searching dialog box on page 67](#)).

If the software finds devices, the **Printers Found** dialog box appears, containing a list of matching devices that have been found on the network, as shown in the following example figure.

Figure 3-8 Printers Found dialog box



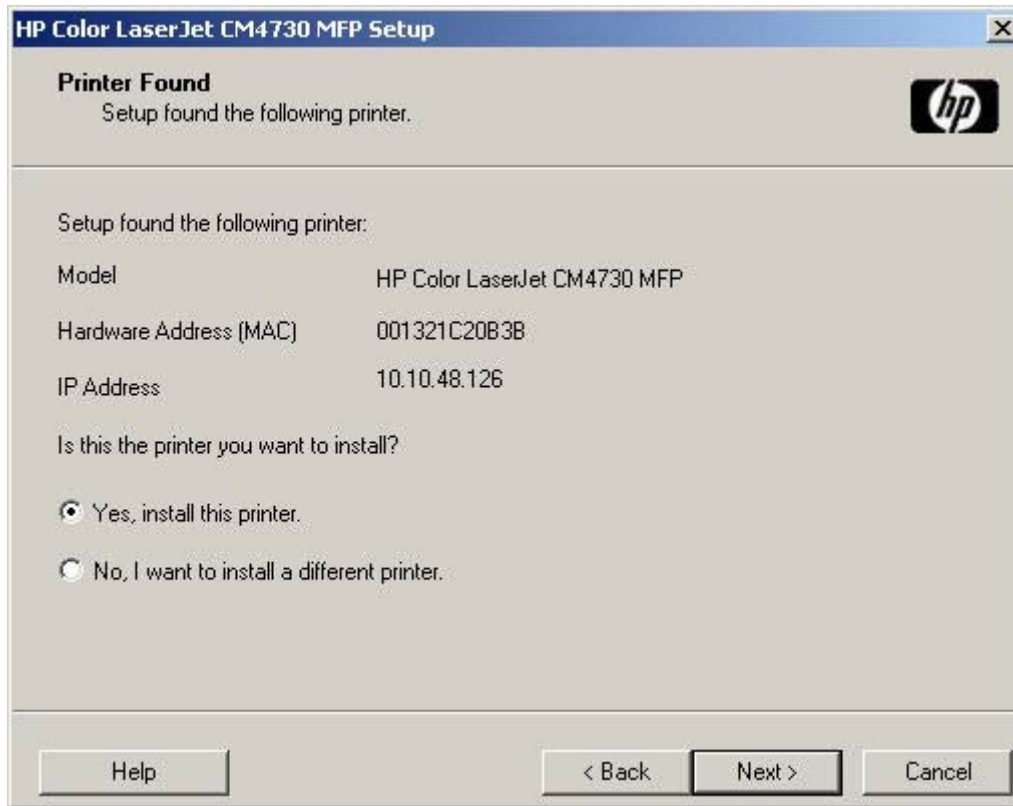
Select the device to install and click **Next**. The **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-10 Confirm Network Settings dialog box on page 71](#)).

If the device to install is not listed and you want the installer to continue searching network subnet masks, select a search option and click **Next** to perform another search.

If the device to install is not listed and you know its TCP/IP address, click **Search Again....** The **Check Printer Connection** screen appears (see [Figure 3-13 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 74](#)).

If a single device is found, the **Printer Found** dialog box appears, containing a list of matching devices on the network. The **Printer Found** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

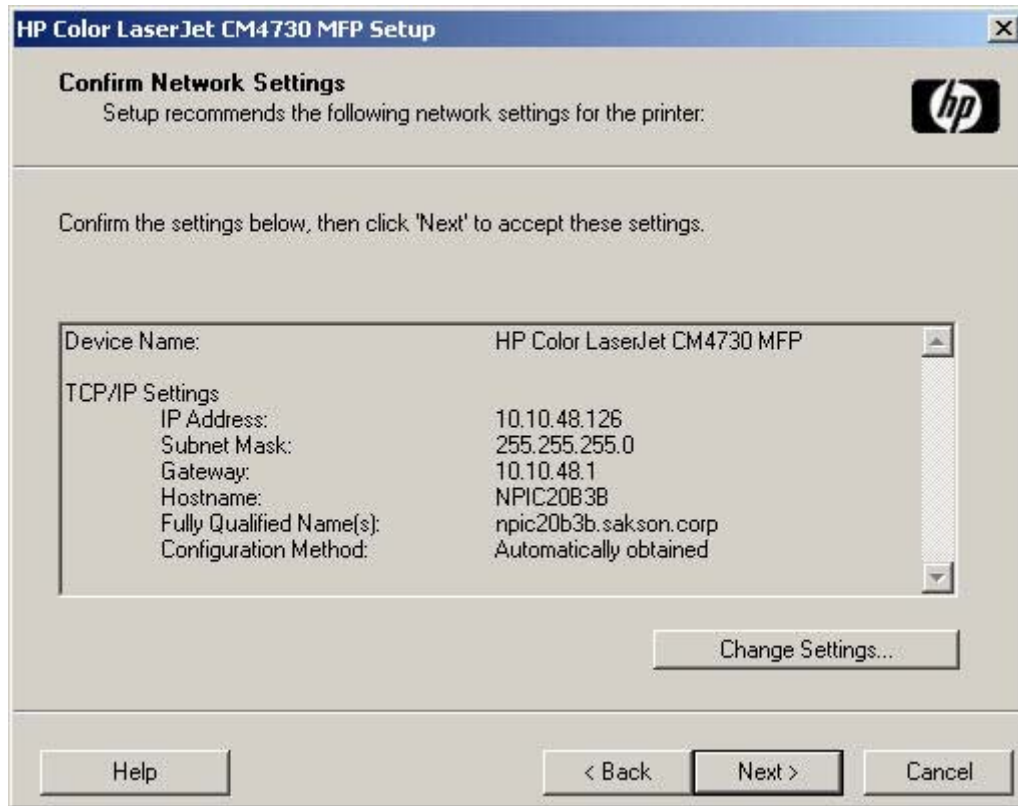
Figure 3-9 Printer Found dialog box



To install a different MFP, click **No, I want to install a different printer** and then click **Next**. The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box opens, advising you to make sure the cable is properly connected, and giving you the option of searching again for a network MFP or specifying an MFP by address (see [Figure 3-13 Check Printer Connection dialog box on page 74](#)).

To install the MFP listed, click **Yes, install this printer** and then click **Next**. The **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-10 Confirm Network Settings dialog box

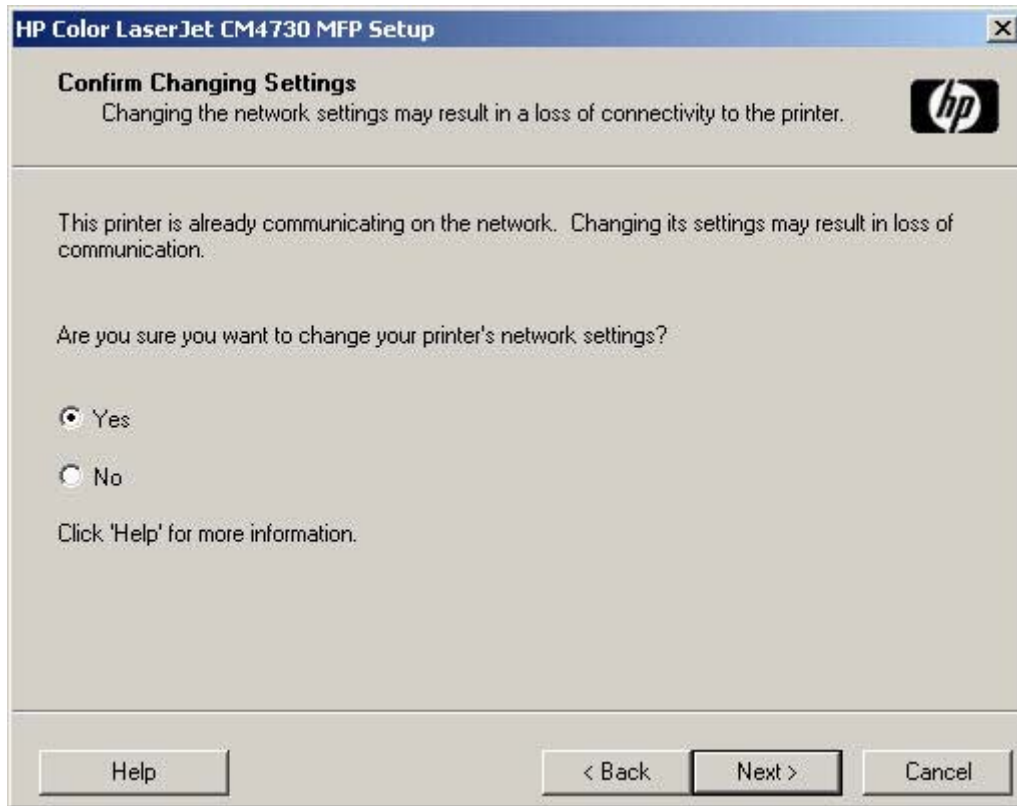


In the **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation. The **Installation Type** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-17 Installation Type dialog box on page 78](#)).

If you click **Change Settings...**, the **Confirm Changing Settings** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

- ⚠ **WARNING!** When the TCP/IP configuration is changed by using the **Change Settings** button, the actual settings in the device change. Make changes to these settings only with the advice of the network administrator.

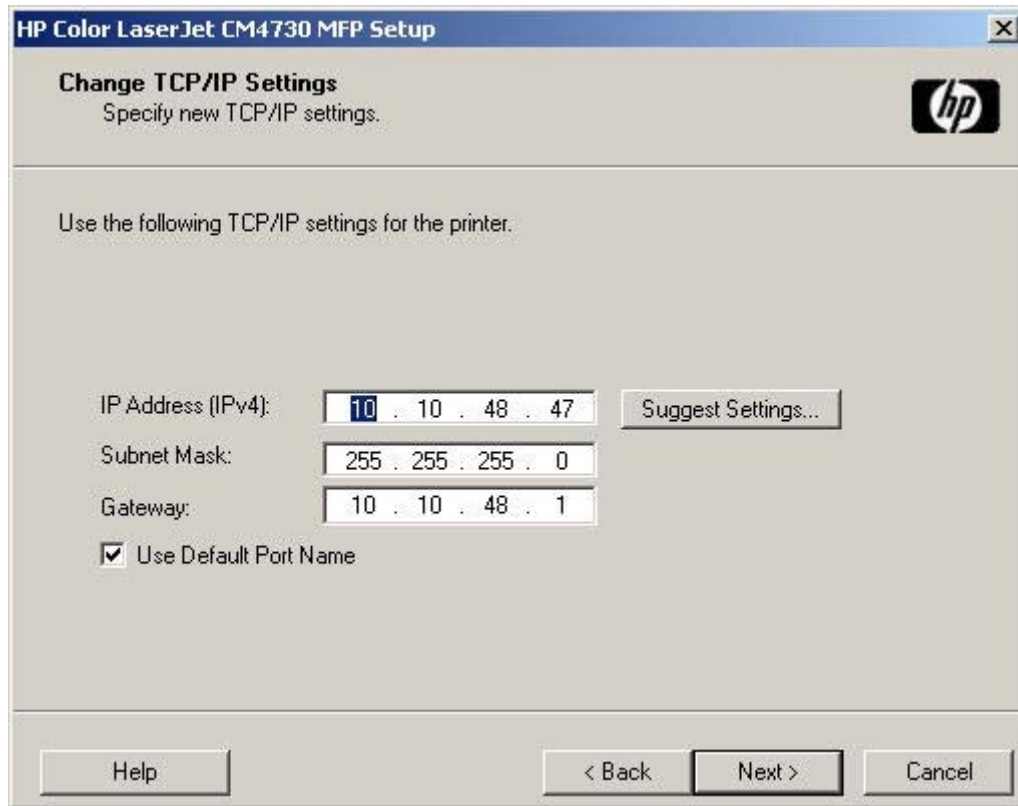
Figure 3-11 Confirm Changing Settings dialog box



If you click **No** in the **Confirm Changing Settings** dialog box, the **Installation Type** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-17 Installation Type dialog box on page 78](#)).

If you click **Yes**, the **Change TCP/IP Settings** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-12 Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box on page 73](#)).

Figure 3-12 Change TCP/IP Settings dialog box



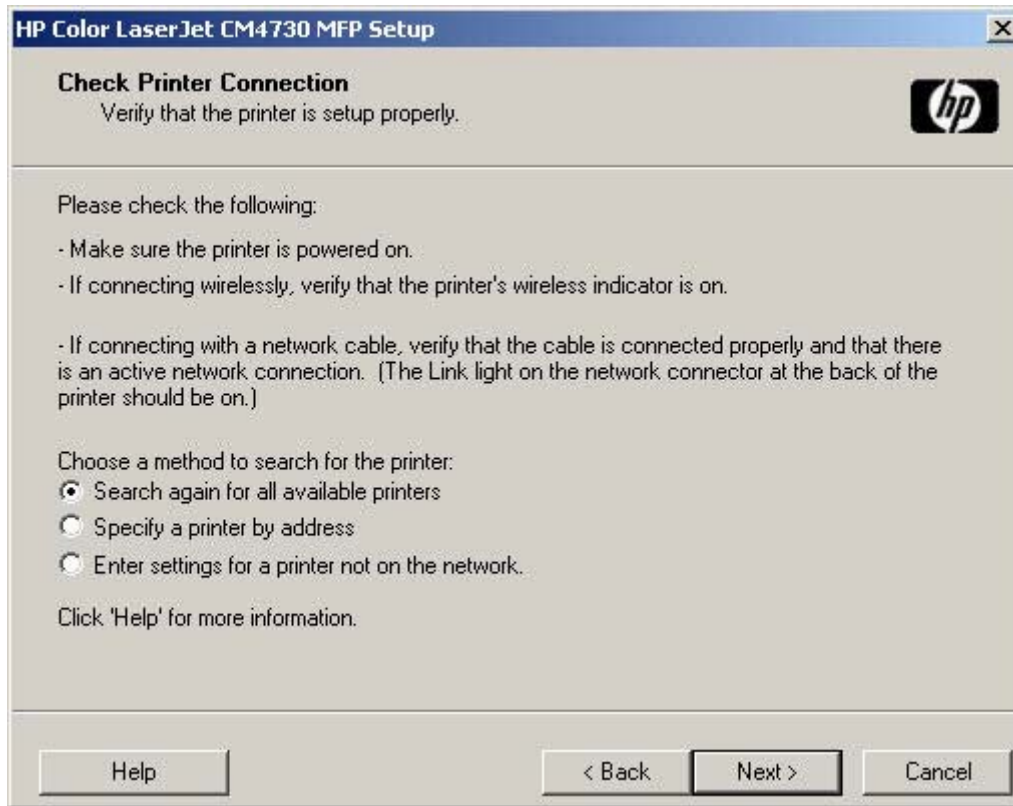
If information in the **IP Address:**, **Subnet Mask:**, or **Gateway:** fields change, click **Suggest Settings....** The fields refresh with information that was found by the installer and reported in the **Printer Found** screen.

Type a different **IP Address:**, **Subnet Mask:**, or **Gateway:** address and then click **Next** to open the **Confirm Network Settings** dialog box (see [Figure 3-10 Confirm Network Settings dialog box on page 71](#)).

If you clear the **Use Default Port Name** check box and click **Next**, the **Set Port Name** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-16 Set Port Name dialog box on page 77](#)).

The **Check Printer Connection** dialog box, which appears when **No, I want to install a different printer** is selected in the **Printer Found** dialog box or if the system failed to detect the device over the network, is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-13 Check Printer Connection dialog box

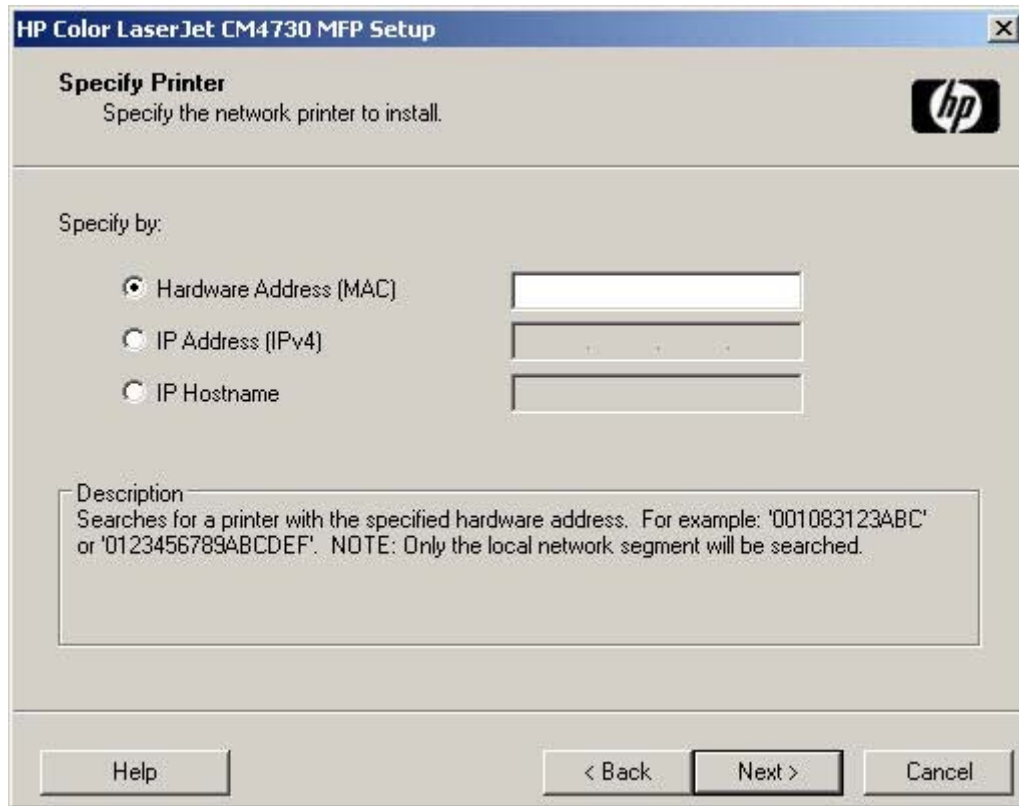


If you click **Search again for all available printers** and then click **Next**, the **Searching** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-5 Searching dialog box on page 67](#)).

If you click **Specify Printer by address** and then click **Next**, the **Specify Printer** dialog box opens. The **Specify Printer** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

If you click **Enter settings for a printer not on the network** and then click **Next**, the **Printer Settings** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-15 Printer Settings dialog box on page 76](#)).

Figure 3-14 Specify Printer dialog box



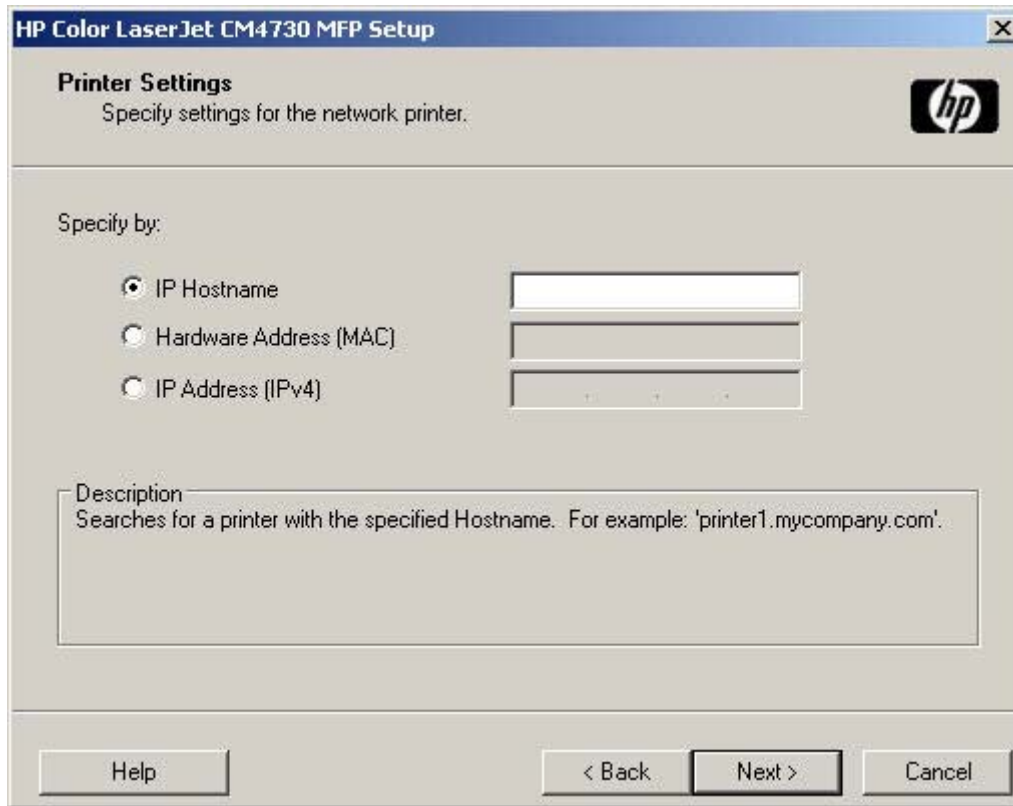
Specify a device by clicking one of the following options and typing in the required information:

- **Hardware Address (MAC)**
- **IP Address (IPv4)**
- **IP Hostname**

When you click **Next**, the **Searching** dialog box opens. When the search is finished, the **Printer Found** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-9 Printer Found dialog box on page 70](#)).

If you click **Enter settings for a printer not on the network** in the **Check Printer Connection** dialog box and then click **Next**, the **Printer Settings** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

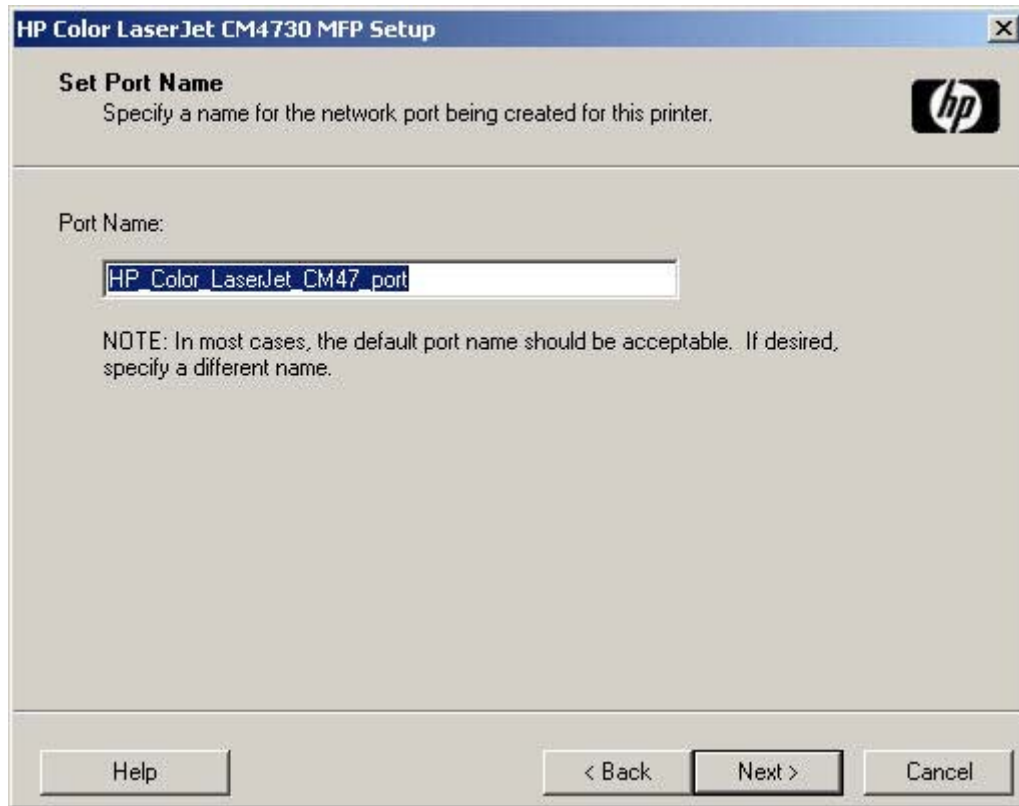
Figure 3-15 Printer Settings dialog box



To install the device by using the hardware address, click **Hardware Address (MAC)**, type the device hardware address in the field, and then click **Next**. The **Set Port Name** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

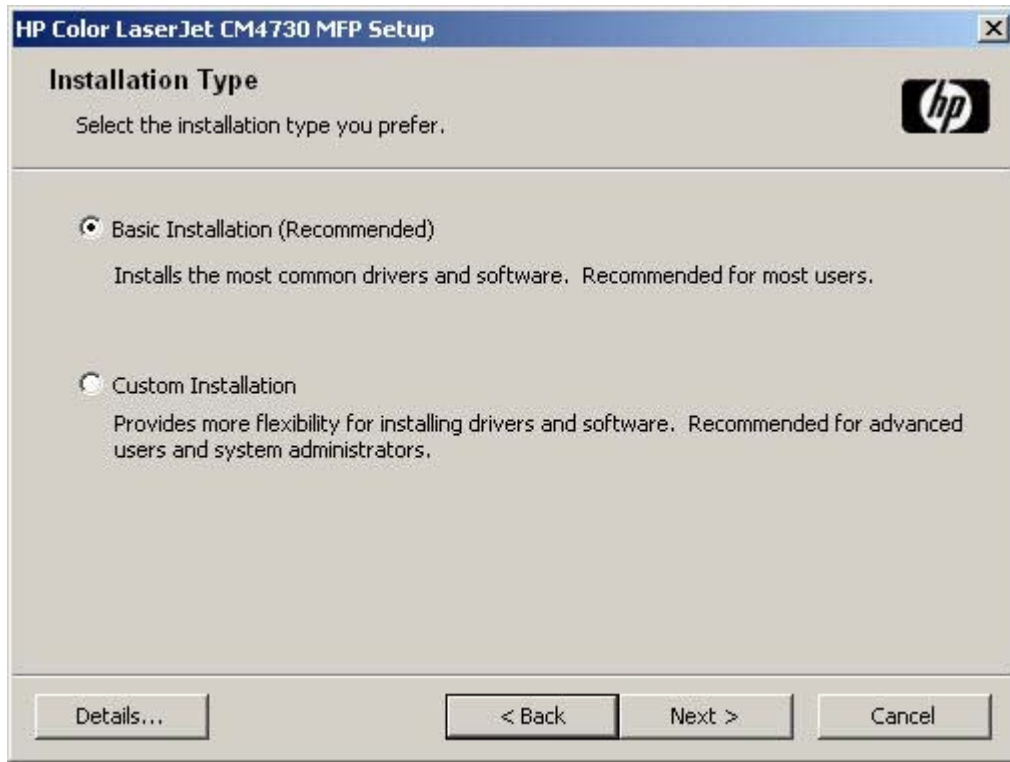
To install the device using the TCP/IP address, click **IP Address**, type the device TCP/IP address in the field, and then click **Next**. The **Set Port Name** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-16 Set Port Name dialog box



Type a port name in the **Port Name:** field and click **Next** to open the **Installation Type** dialog box (see [Figure 3-17 Installation Type dialog box on page 78](#)).

Figure 3-17 Installation Type dialog box

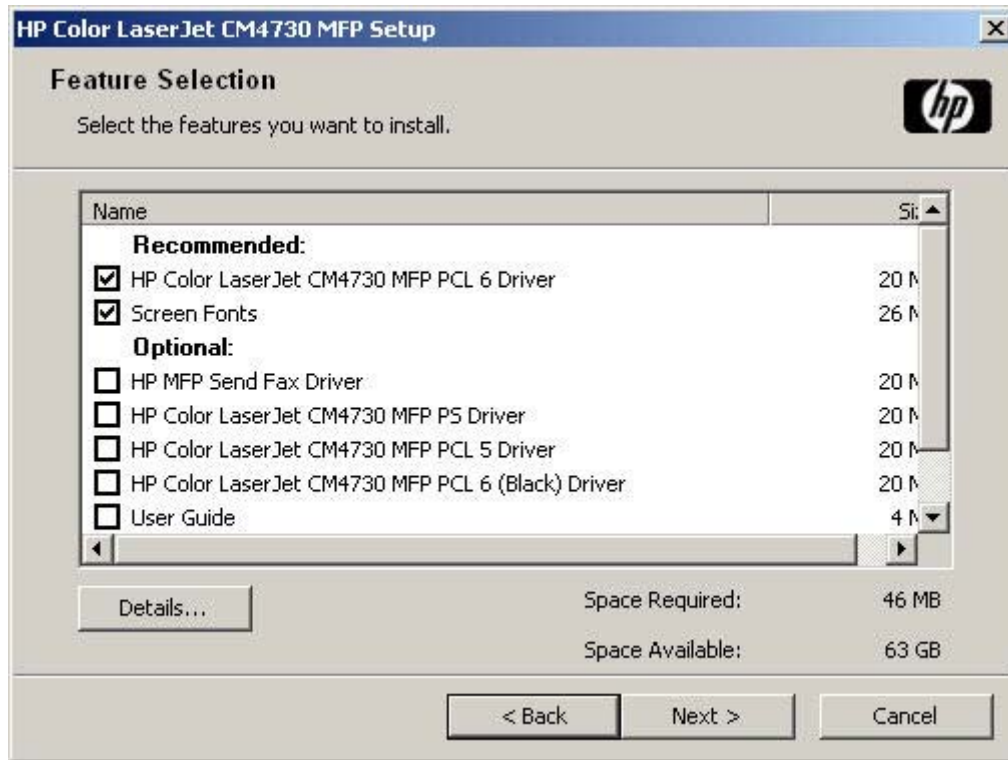


Click **Basic Installation** to install only the HP PCL 6 driver and screen fonts. If you click **Basic Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Ready to Install** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-20 Ready to Install dialog box on page 81](#)).

If you select **Custom Installation** and then click **Next**, the **Feature Selection** dialog box opens, as shown in the following figure.

 **NOTE:** Select **Custom Installation** to install the HP PCL 5 and PS emulation drivers, as appropriate.

Figure 3-18 Feature Selection dialog box



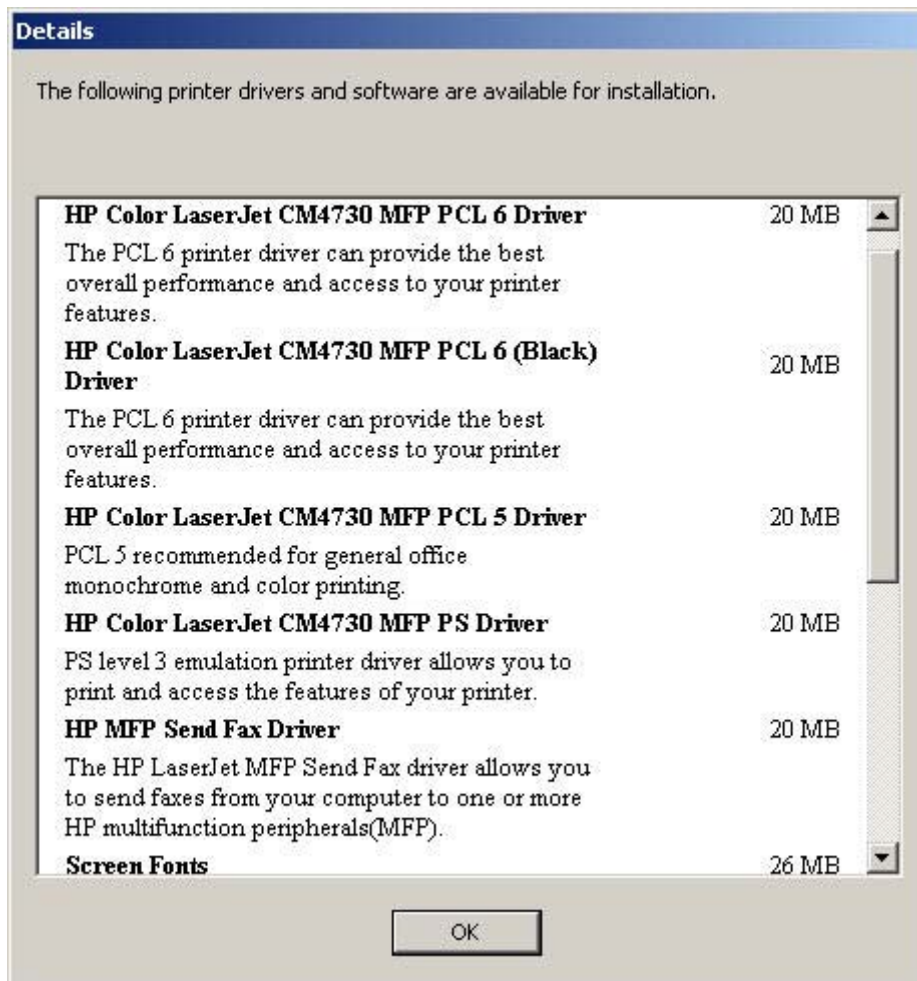
An empty check box indicates that the feature will not be installed. A check mark appears next to any driver or document that is to be installed.

Information about the space required and the space available on the hard drive appears in the dialog box.

Select any combination of features. Because the installer may have been customized, the features that are available vary. For example, some custom installers might not include print drivers.

To view details about the features, click **Details...** The **Details** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-19 Details dialog box

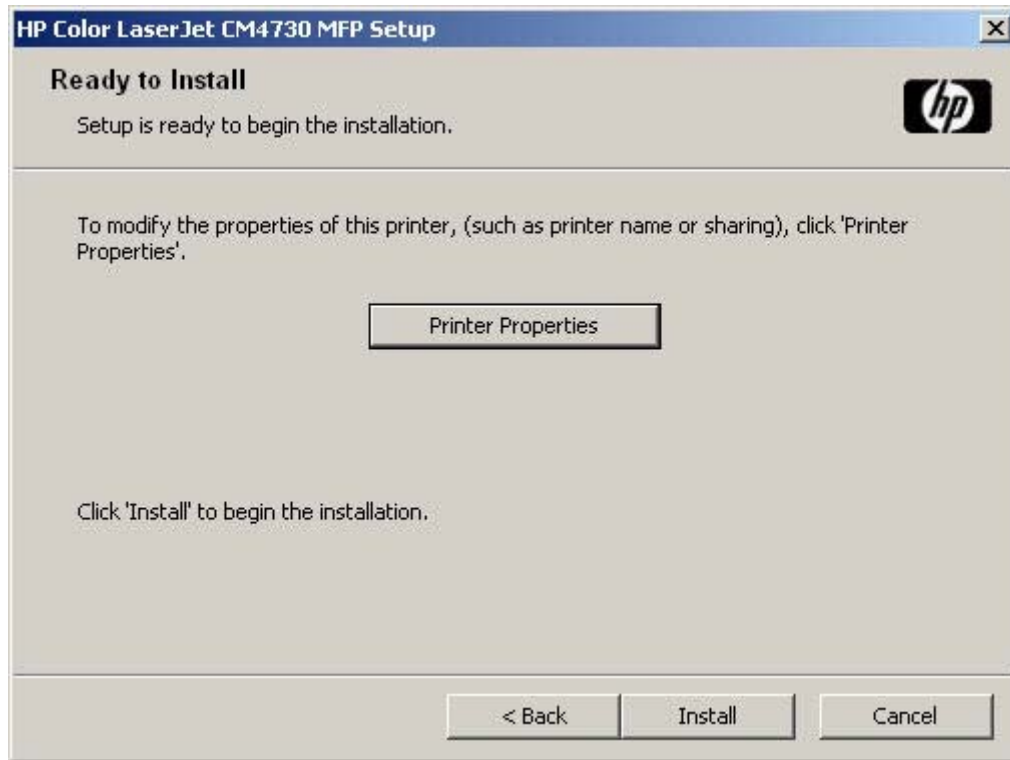


Click **OK** to return to the **Feature Selection** dialog box.

In the **Feature Selection** dialog box, click **Next** to continue the installation.

The **Ready to Install** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

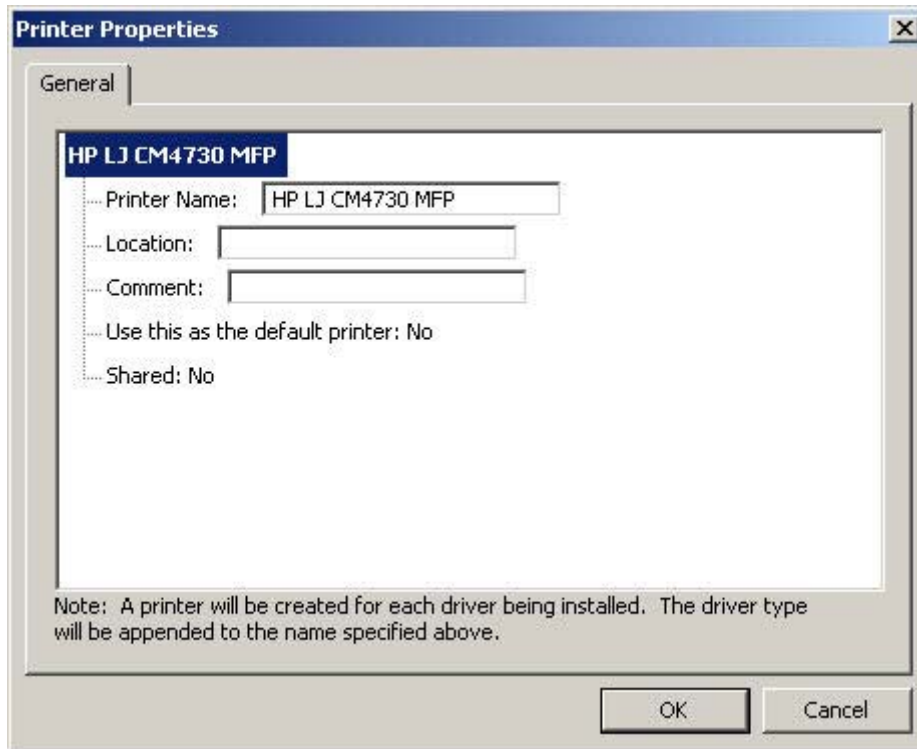
Figure 3-20 Ready to Install dialog box



Click **Install** to start the installation process. The **Installation Status** dialog box opens (see [Figure 3-22 Installation Status dialog box on page 83](#)).

Click **Printer Properties** to open the **Printer Properties** dialog box. The **Printer Properties** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-21 Printer Properties **General** tab




To change the device name, type a new name in the **Printer Name** field.

Use the **Location:** and **Comment:** fields to describe the device, as appropriate.

To use the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP as the default device, click **Use this as the default printer**, and then select **Yes** in the drop-down menu. **No** is selected by default.

If the device is being installed on a network and it will be shared among users, click **Shared**, and then click **Yes** in the drop-down menu. The device is not shared by default.

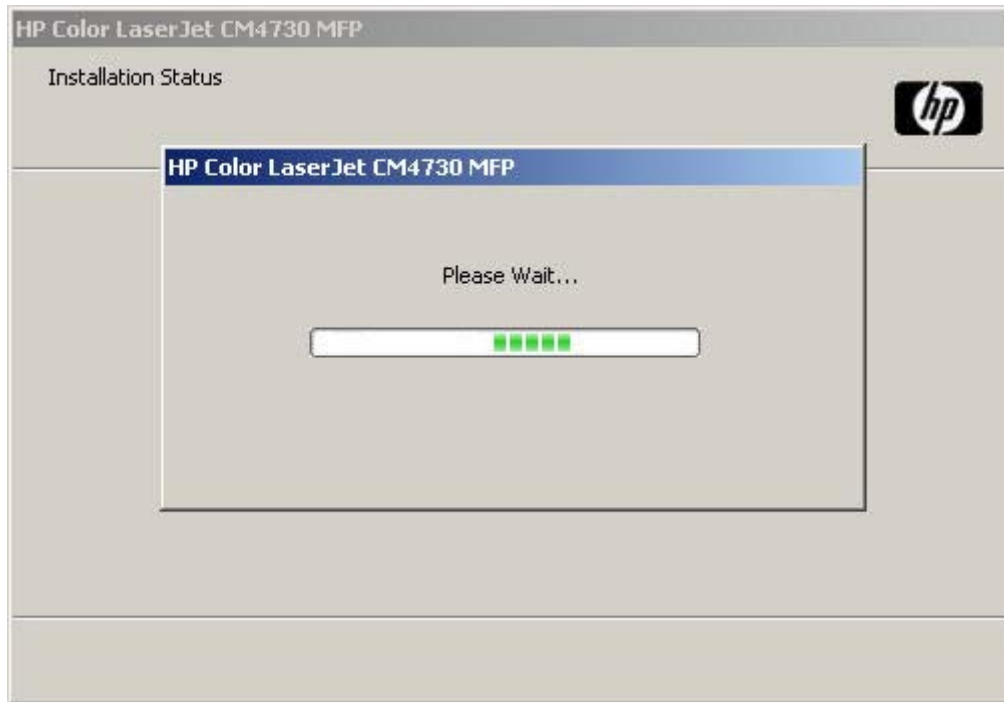
Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Install** dialog box.

 **NOTE:** If you share the device on Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 operating systems, type a name. Additional print driver support for other operating systems is also available.

If the device is not shared, additional driver support is not available.

In the **Ready to Install** dialog box, click **Install** to begin the process of copying and installing the printing-system software folders and files. The **Installation Status** dialog box opens as shown in the following figure.

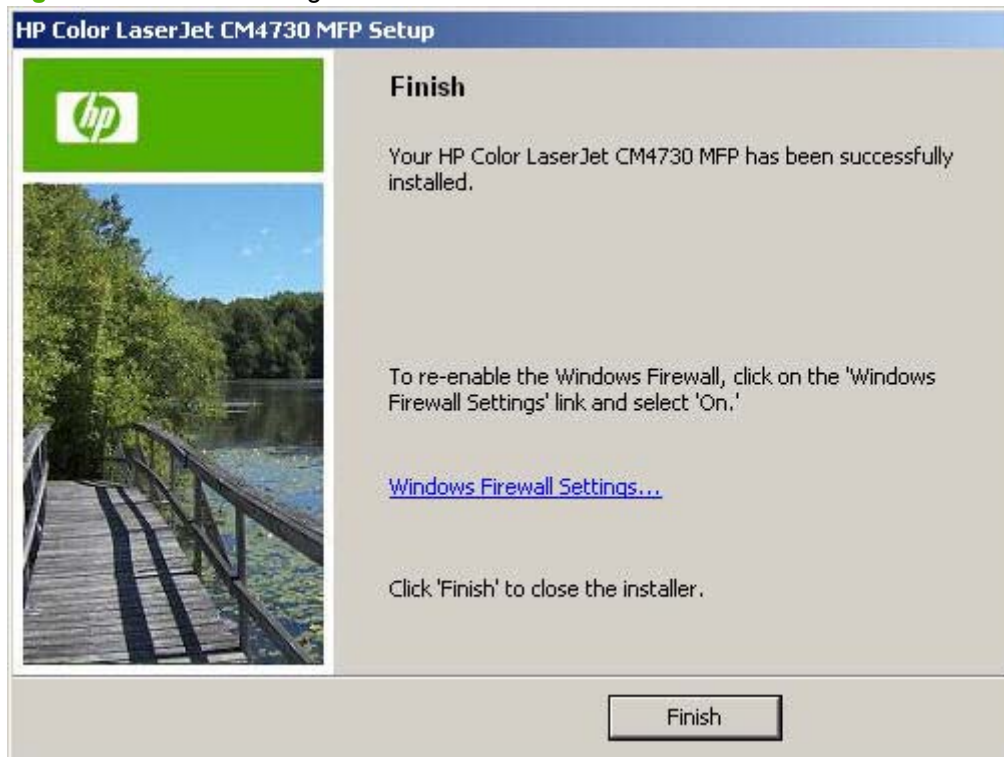
Figure 3-22 Installation Status dialog box




This dialog box remains on the screen until installation is complete.

When the installation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-23 Finish dialog box

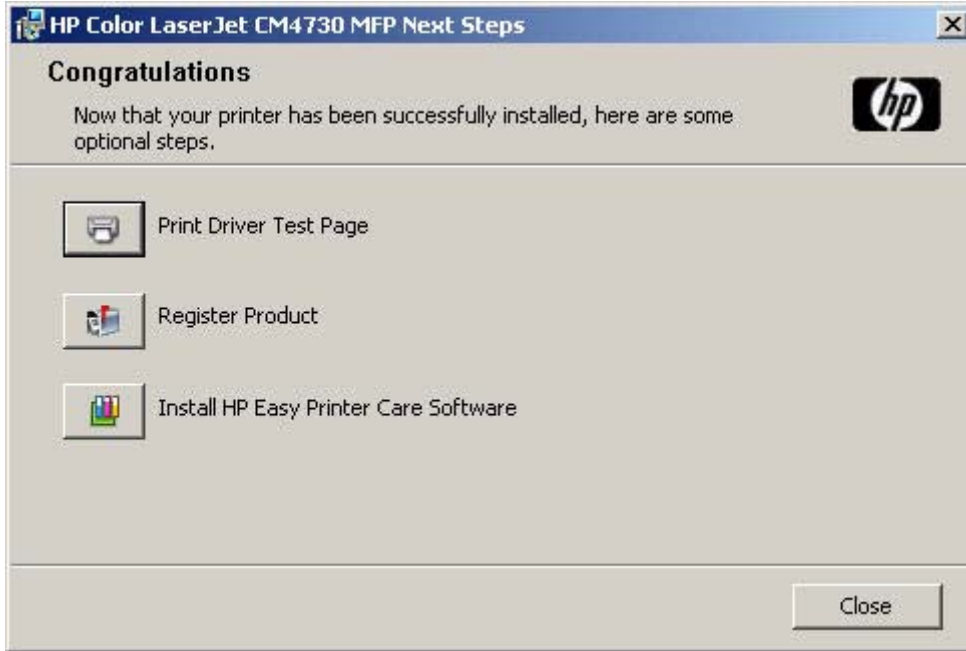


Click **Finish** to close the **Finish** dialog box and exit the installer.

 **NOTE:** Depending on the type of installation and selected options, additional steps might appear after you click **Finish**.

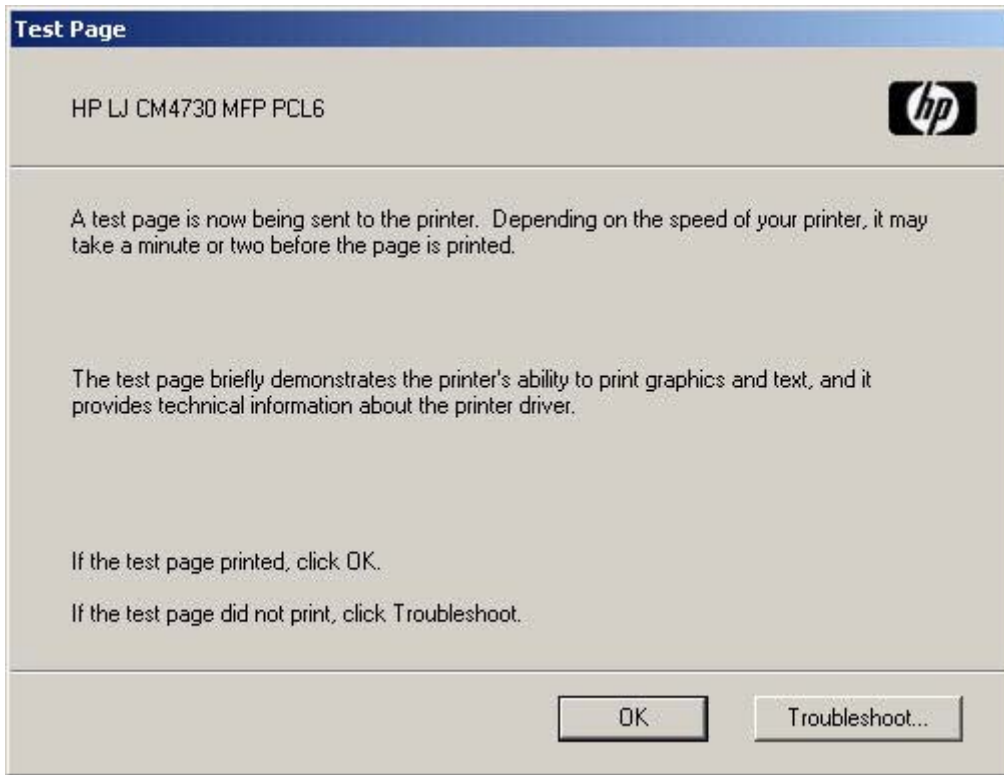
The **Congratulations** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-24 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box



To verify that the device is connected, click **Print Driver Test Page**. The **Test Page** dialog box opens as shown in the following figure.

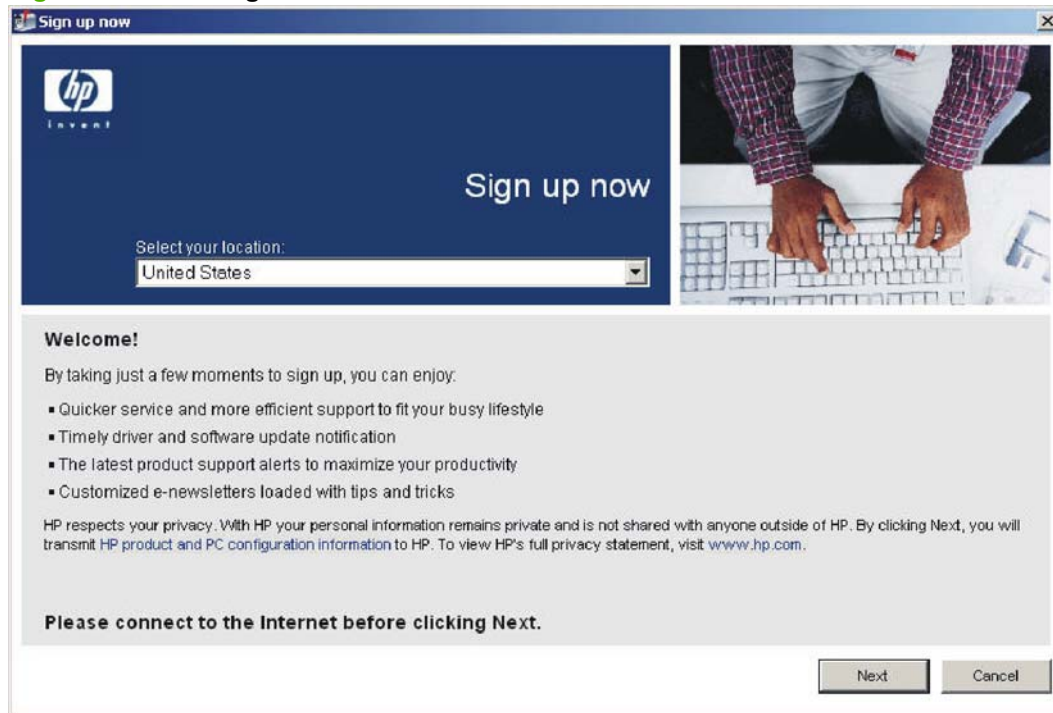
Figure 3-25 Test Page dialog box



If the test page prints correctly, click **OK** to continue. If it does not print, open the **Printer Properties** tab and try to print another test page, or click **Troubleshoot**.

If connected to the Internet, register the device online. In the **Congratulations** dialog box, click **Register Product** to open the HP Registration Web site, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-26 HP Registration screen



If connected to the Internet, install the HP Easy Printer Care Software, as appropriate. In the **Congratulations** dialog box, click **Install HP Printer Care Software**.

For more information, go to the HP Printer Care Web site:

www.hp.com/go/easyprintercare

Modify a pre-existing installation

If an HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP has been previously installed, the appearance of the main installation screen changes on the CD Browser, and the install-printer setting changes to **Modify Installation**. A pre-existing installation also changes the sequence of installation screens.

When you click **Modify Installation** on the main CD Browser screen, the **Setup Maintenance** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-27 Setup Maintenance dialog box



Select the **Add an additional printer or printer driver** option to add a print driver other than the one that was added during the previous installation. The installer discovers the available printers upon which to install the software, and a list appears for choosing the installation type.

Select **Add HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP software to your system** to add additional software, or to upgrade drivers currently installed on the system. The installer does *not* perform a discovery of the previous installation. The options that appear are the same as those from the original installation (see [Figure 3-19 Details dialog box on page 80](#)).

Select **Remove all HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP software or drivers from your system** to uninstall the drivers or software from your computer.

Install drivers by using Add Printer Wizard

Use the following steps to install drivers by using the Windows Add Printer Wizard:

1. Insert the printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD Browser starts, click **Exit**.

2. Go to the **Add a printer** feature in Windows, as follows.

In Windows XP, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. The **Printers and Faxes** window appears. Click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

In Windows 2000, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

In Windows Vista, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Control Panel**, then click **Hardware and Sound**. The **Hardware and Sound** window appears. Click **Printer**, and then click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

3. Use the **Add Printer Wizard** to find and connect to the device. The drivers are loaded as a part of this process.

If the printer has previously been installed on the system, some or all the drivers will already be present and will be displayed as selections during the add printer process.

If there has been no previous installation (drivers are not present), then you must use the “Have Disk” button. Clicking this button will allow you to browse to the printing drivers on the HP LaserJet software CD. Follow the paths below (listed under step 4) to locate the desired .INF file.

If the computer is running a 64-bit Windows operating system, you must install the corresponding 64-bit driver included on the printing-system software CD. Use the following steps to install a driver by using the **Add Printer Wizard**.

1. Insert the printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.

If the CD Browser starts, click **Exit**.

2. Go to the **Add a printer** feature in MS Windows.

In Windows XP, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers and Faxes**. The **Printers and Faxes** window appears. Click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

In Windows 2000, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Settings**, click **Printers**, and then click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.

In Windows Vista, click **Start** on the desktop, click **Control Panel**, then click **Hardware and Sound**. The **Hardware and Sound** window appears. Click **Printer**, and then click **Add Printer**. The **Add Printer Wizard** screen appears.


3. Use the **Add Printer Wizard** to find and connect to the device. The drivers are loaded as a part of this process.

4. Select the **Have disk** option and navigate to one of the driver files on the printing-system software CD for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003:
 - To install the HP PCL 6 driver, select the following file:
 - 32-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL6\HPCM473C.INF
 - 64-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL6\ HPCM473U.INF
 - To install the HP PCL 6 (Black) driver, select the following file:
 - 32-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL6\HPCM47BC.INF
 - 64-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL6\HPCM47BU.INF
 - To install the HP PCL 5 driver, select the following file:
 - 32-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL5\HPCM473B.INF
 - 64-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PCL5\HPCM473T.INF
 - To install the PS Emulation driver, select the following file:
 - 32-bit:** \Drivers\\PS\hpcm473d.inf
 - 64-bit:** \DRIVERS\\PS\HPCM473V.INF
 - To install the HP Send Fax driver, select the following file:
 - 32-bit:** \DRIVERS\\SENDERFAX\HPC4730E.INF
 - 64-bit:** \DRIVERS\\SENDERFAX\HPC4730W.INF
5. Complete the wizard steps. The driver is installed as part of the wizard process.

Installer Customization Wizard for Windows

Administrators can use the **Installer Customization Wizard** to customize the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP installer by preconfiguring the installation options in a response file. To start the utility, from the main menu, click **Option Software**, then click **Installer Customization Wizard**. Using this option, administrators can create a silent (unattended) installer that is customized with any of the following selections:

- Language
- Operating system
- Print drivers
- Components

 **NOTE:** For detailed information about the Installer Customization Wizard, see the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide*. (See [HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide on page 22.](#))

Topics:

- [The Installer Customization Wizard](#)
- [Dialog boxes](#)

- [Distribution](#)

The Installer Customization Wizard

The Installer Customization Wizard runs from the CD. It can be started from the CD browser, depending on device-specific installation. It runs separately from the common Microsoft Installer (MSI), and has its own interface.

Running the Installer Customization Wizard produces one installation package and a response file (RESPONSE.INI) for a single-system installation. The installation package might work for multiple systems that have the same response information, or the RESPONSE.INI file can be directly edited for system-configuration differences.

For the exact text with which to replace entries in the RESPONSE.INI file, see the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide*. (See [HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide on page 22.](#))

Run the Installer Customization Wizard

1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. In the CD browser main screen, click **Optional Software**.
3. Click **Installer Customization Wizard**.
4. Follow the instructions in the dialog boxes to complete the installation.

Dialog boxes

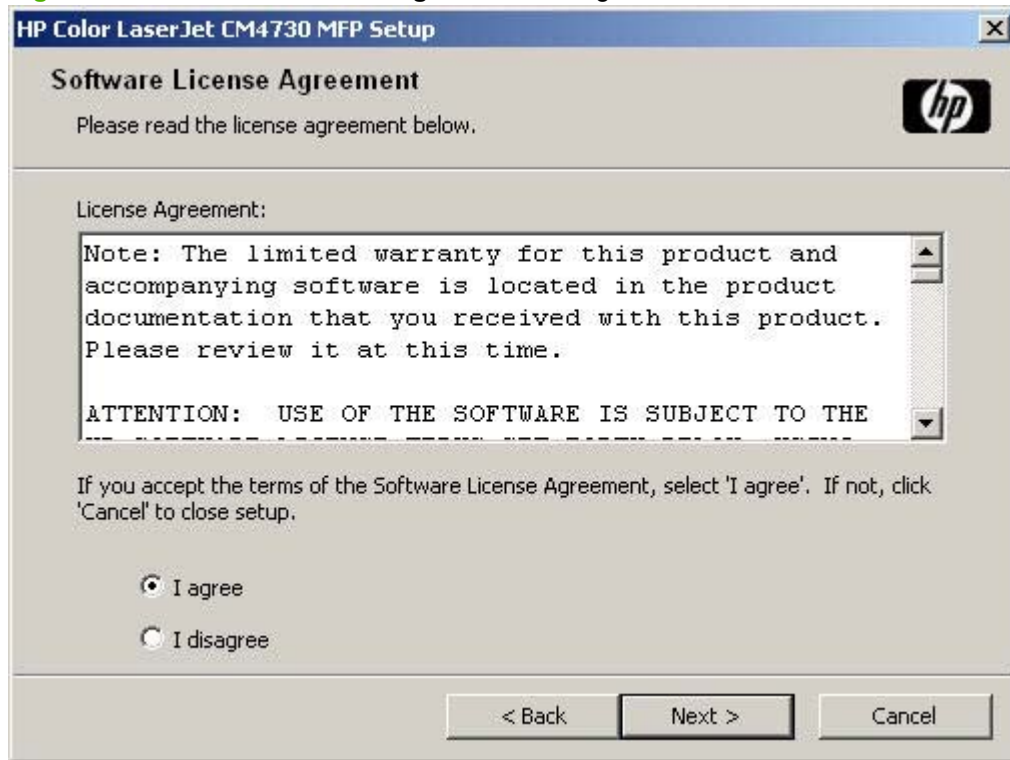
The **Welcome** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-28 Welcome to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Installation Customization Wizard dialog box



Click **Next** to open the **Software License Agreement** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

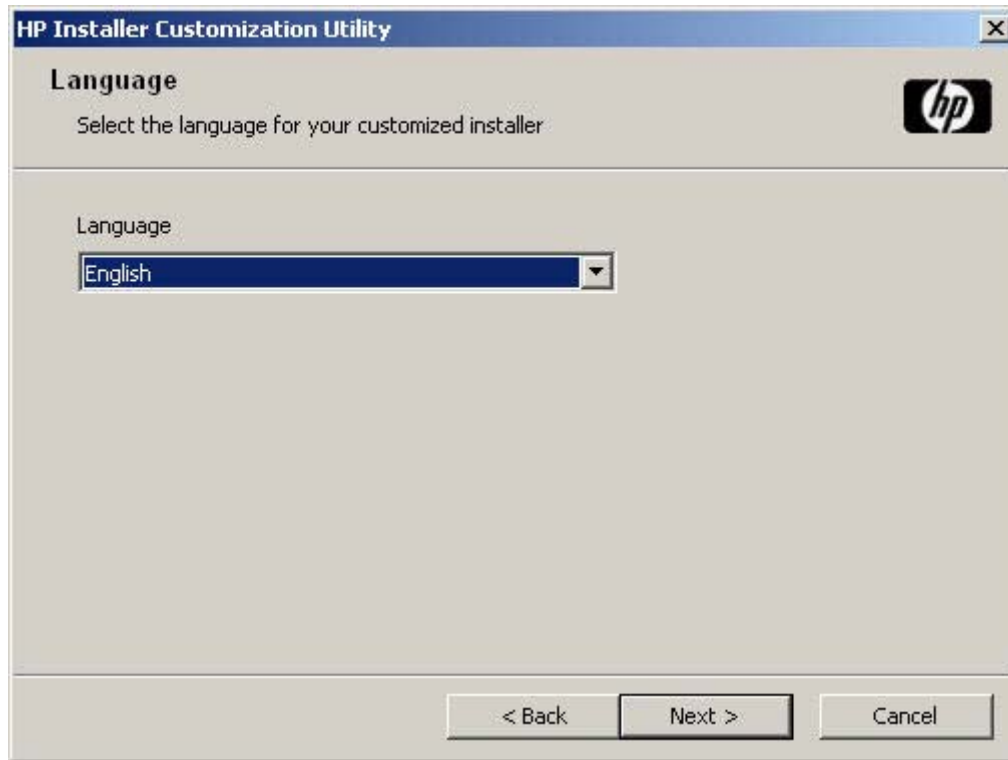
Figure 3-29 Software License Agreement dialog box



To cancel the installation, click **Cancel** on this or any other screen where it appears (see [Help, Back, Next, and Cancel buttons on page 63](#)).

Read the software license agreement, click **I agree**, and then click **Next** to open the **Language** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-30 Language dialog box



This is the language for the customized installer. The language selected is installed on the computer regardless of the language of the text in the wizard dialog boxes.

NOTE: After installation, the language used in the driver is limited to the one that is selected in this dialog box. Maintenance mode does *not* provide options for changing the language.

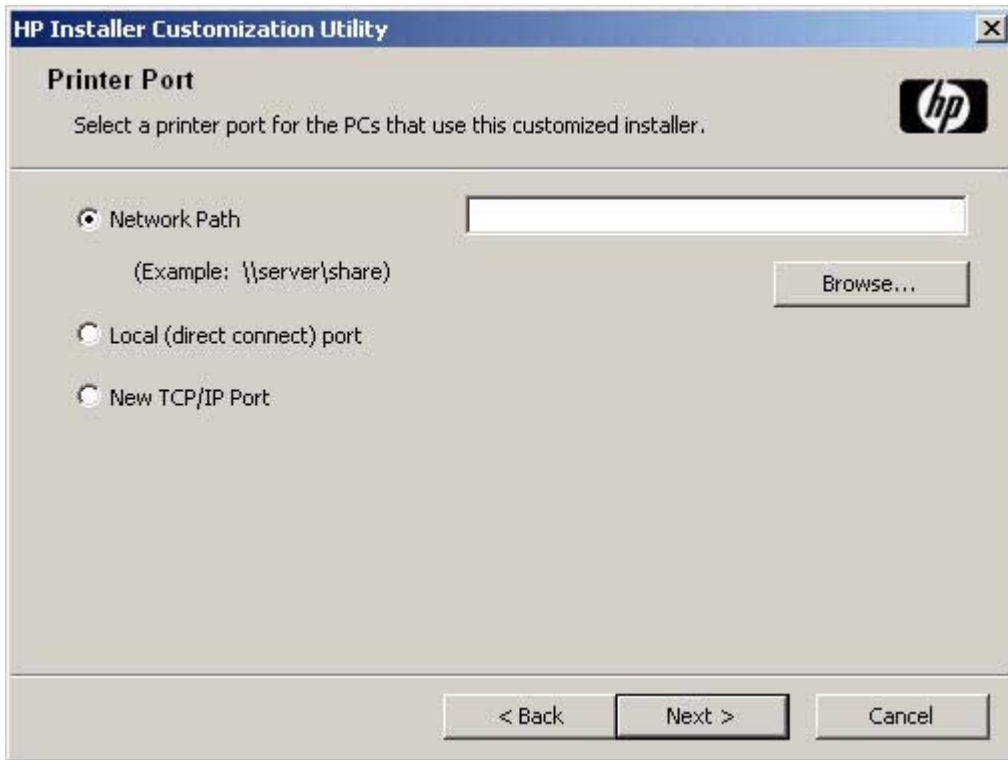
To change the language on a system that used an customized installer, uninstall the software, and then install a new device in order to restore the option to install other languages.

Select a language from the drop-down menu, and then click **Next**.

Click **Next** to open the **Printer Port** dialog box. The **Printer Port** dialog box opens as shown in the following figure.

Click **Back** on this or any screen where it appears to return to a previous screen.

Figure 3-31 Printer Port dialog box



Click **Network Path** to make the text field available for a queue-name entry. Type the path, or click **Browse** to open the **Browse for Printer** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-32 Browse for Printer dialog box



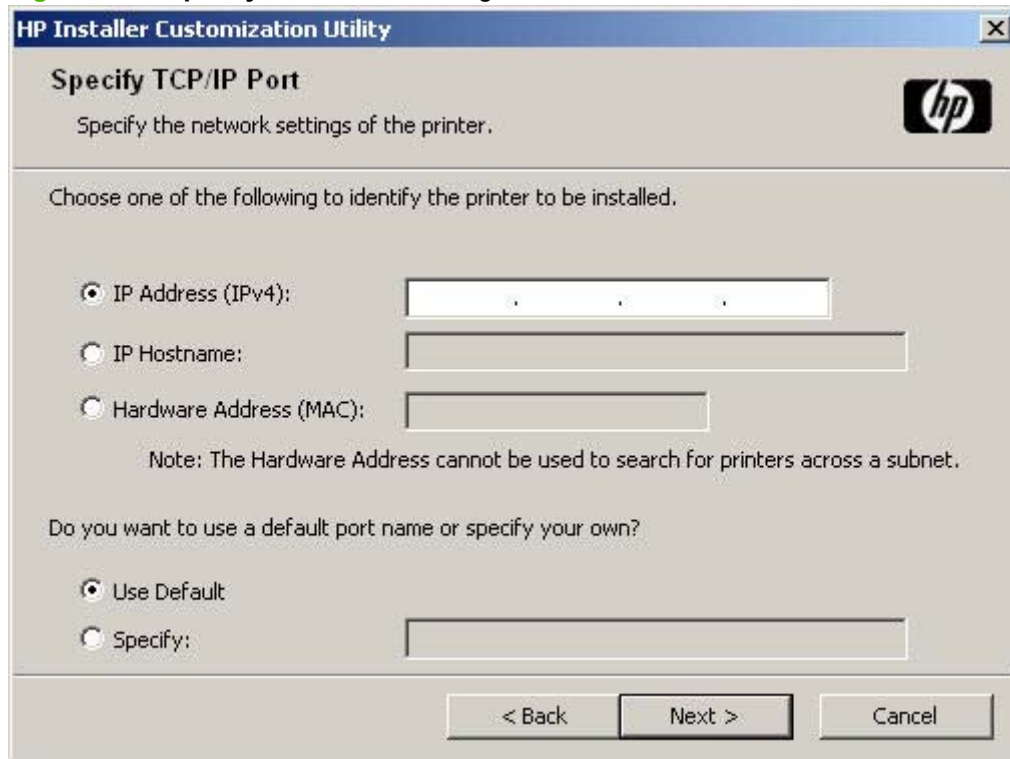
Navigate to a device and click **OK** to record the path in the **Network Path** field in the **Printer Port** dialog box. Click **Cancel** to close the **Browse for Printer** dialog box.

In the **Printer Port** dialog box, click **Local (direct connect) port**, and then click **Next** to open the **Drivers** dialog box (see [Figure 3-36 Drivers dialog box on page 95](#)).

In the **Printer Port** dialog box, click **New TCP/IP Port**, and then click **Next** to open the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

The **Printer Port** dialog box includes all custom network ports that are available on the local system. To use any custom network port for the customized installer, the port must be created identically on the system where it will be used.

Figure 3-33 Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box



Click **IP Address** to make the field available for typing the TCP/IP address for the device. Only numerals are allowed, and you must type at least one digit in the field to prevent an error message from prompting for a valid IP address.

Click **IP Hostname** to make the field available for typing the IP hostname for the device. Any characters are allowed, but no spaces. You must type at least one character in the field to prevent an error message from prompting for a valid IP hostname.

Click **Hardware Address** to make the field available for typing the hardware address of the MAC device. Any characters are allowed, but the entry is limited to 12 characters. You must type at least one character in the field to prevent an error message from prompting for a valid hardware address.

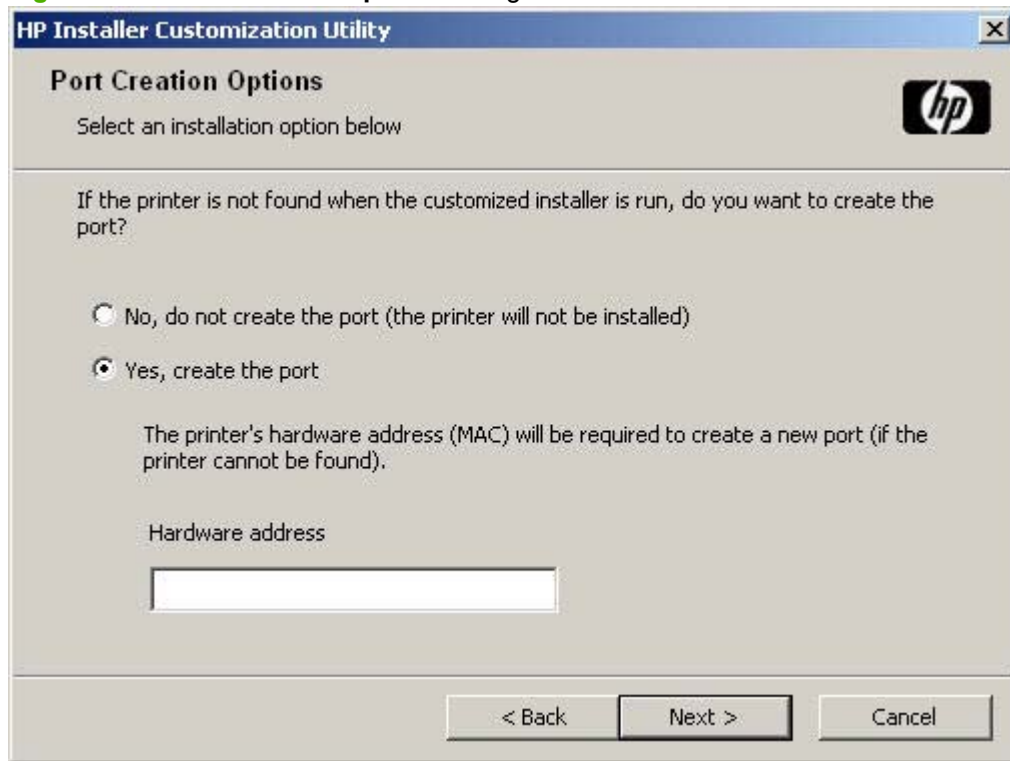
After selecting any of the options, type the appropriate name or address and then click **Next**. The **Drivers** dialog box opens. (See [Figure 3-36 Drivers dialog box on page 95](#).)

For each of the options in the **Specify TCP/IP Port** dialog box, either use the default port name (as specified in each of the three options) or specify a different name.

To use the default port name, select **Use Default** and click **Next**.

To specify a different name, click **Specify**, type a port name of your choice, and then click **Next**. The **Port Creation Options** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-34 Port Creation Options dialog box




Click **No, do not create the port (the printer will not be installed)** if you do not want to create a port.

If you click **Next** without typing a hardware address, a network setup error message appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-35 Please enter a Hardware address — Network Setup Error dialog box

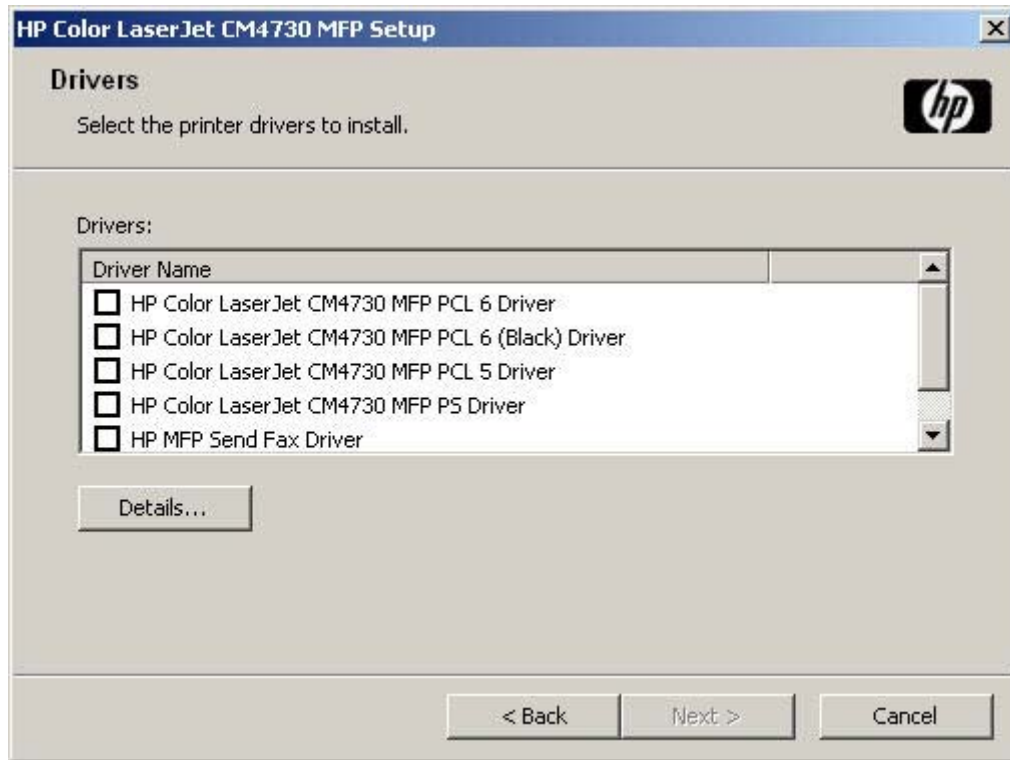


 **NOTE:** To print a configuration page to see the hardware address, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).

If you click **Yes, create the port**, type the device hardware address in the **Hardware Address** field, and then click **Next** to open the **Drivers** dialog box.

The **Drivers** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

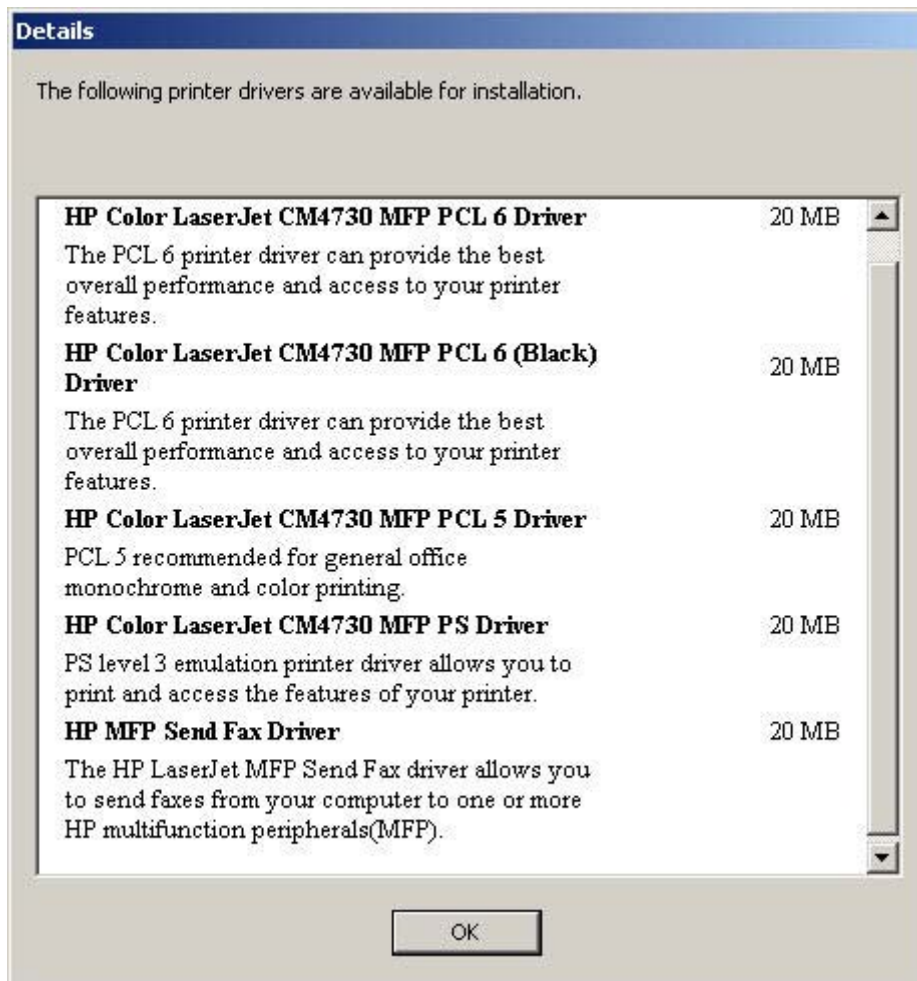
Figure 3-36 Drivers dialog box



Any combination of features can be selected for the installer, and none depends on any other selection. You can create a custom installer that installs features without including a print driver. Select the drivers to install.

To view details about the drivers, click **Details...** The driver **Details** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-37 Driver **Details** dialog box

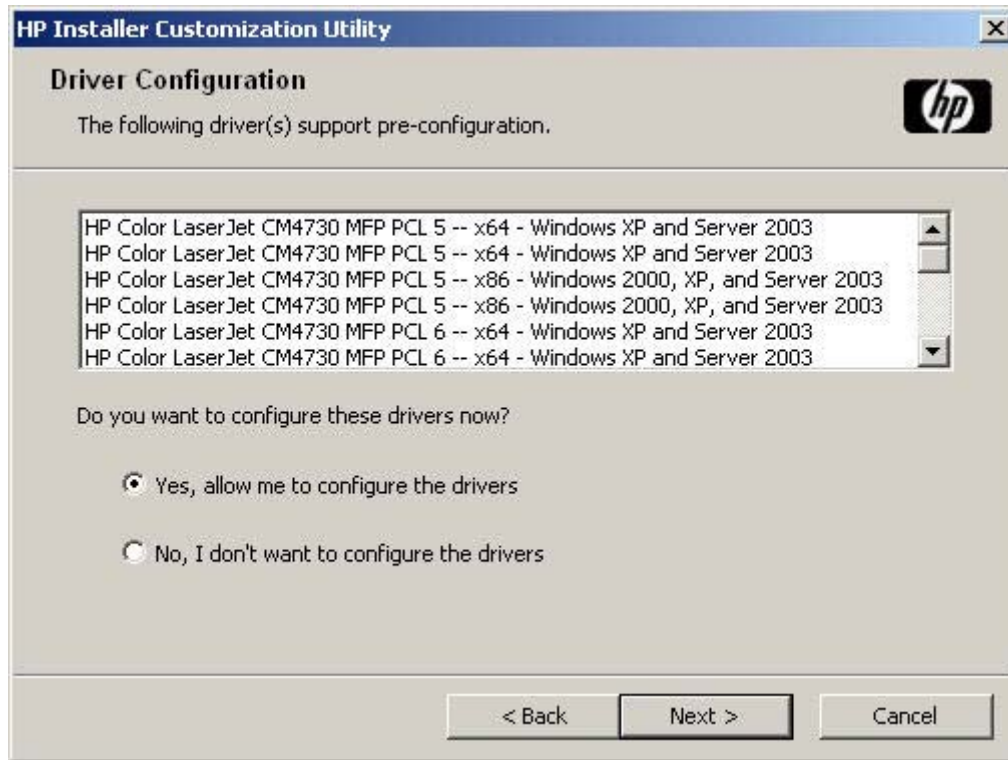


All the drivers that are available on the **Drivers** dialog box are described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Drivers** dialog box.

On the **Drivers** dialog box, select one or more drivers, and click **Next** to continue the wizard.

The **Driver Configuration** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-38 Driver Configuration dialog box



To preconfigure the driver settings, select **Yes, allow me to configure the drivers**, and then click **Next**. The **Driver Configuration** dialog box changes to show two tabs:

- **Printing Preferences**
- **Device Settings**

These tabs are shown in the following figures.

Figure 3-39 Driver Configuration — Printing Preferences tab

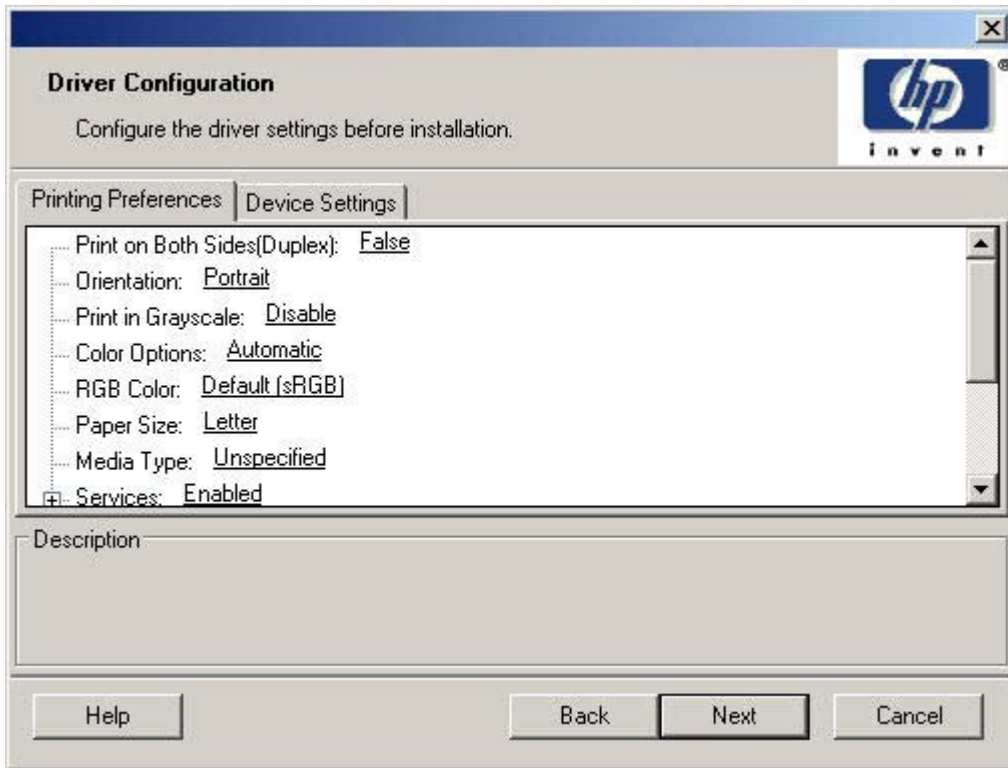
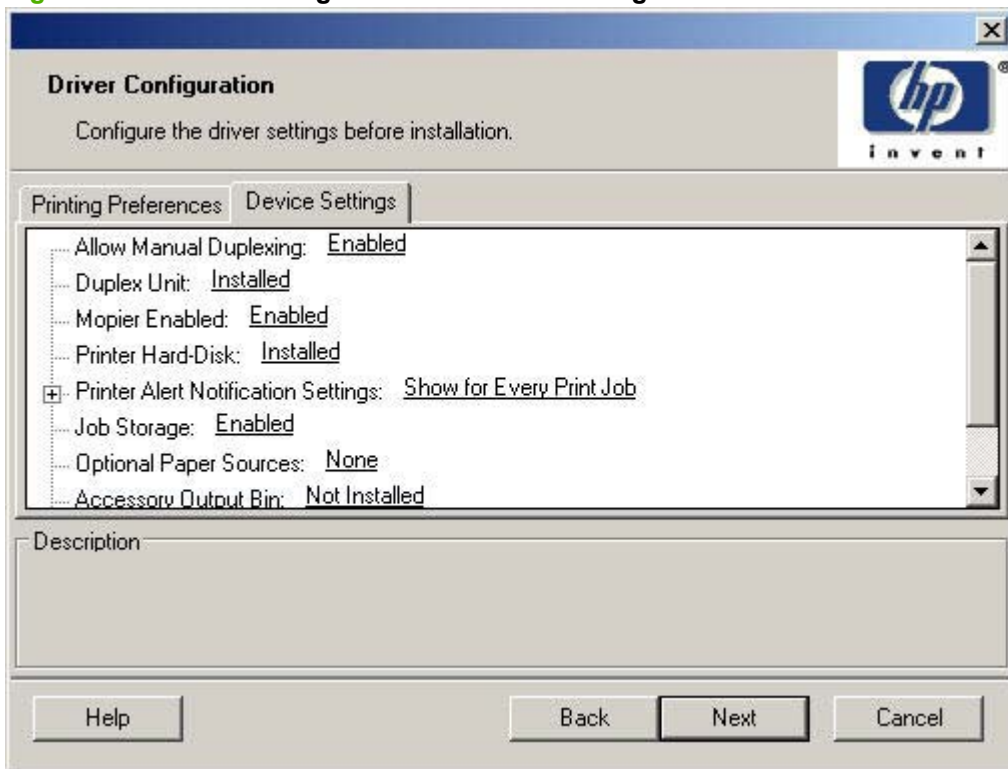


Figure 3-40 Driver Configuration — Device Settings tab



Select the settings on each tab. For each setting, a drop-down menu appears that lists the options. If the setting can be locked, a Lock check box appears beside the drop-down arrow. For example, the **Print on Both Sides (Duplex)** setting can be locked to ensure that users use double-sided printing.

In some instances, an **Invalid Selection** message might appear. For example, when **Left Edge Binding** is selected for the **Booklet Printing** option, an error message appears, as shown in the following figure.

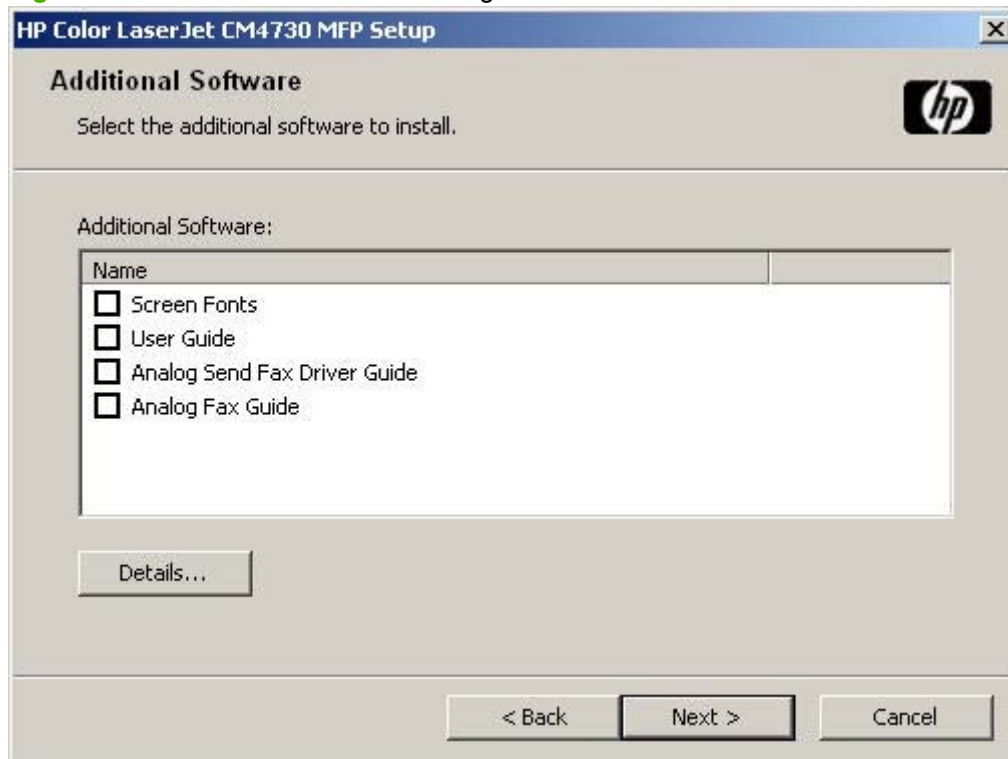
Figure 3-41 Invalid Selection dialog box



When the settings have been selected, click **Next**.

The **Additional Software** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-42 Additional Software dialog box



Clicking **Details** opens the additional software **Details** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

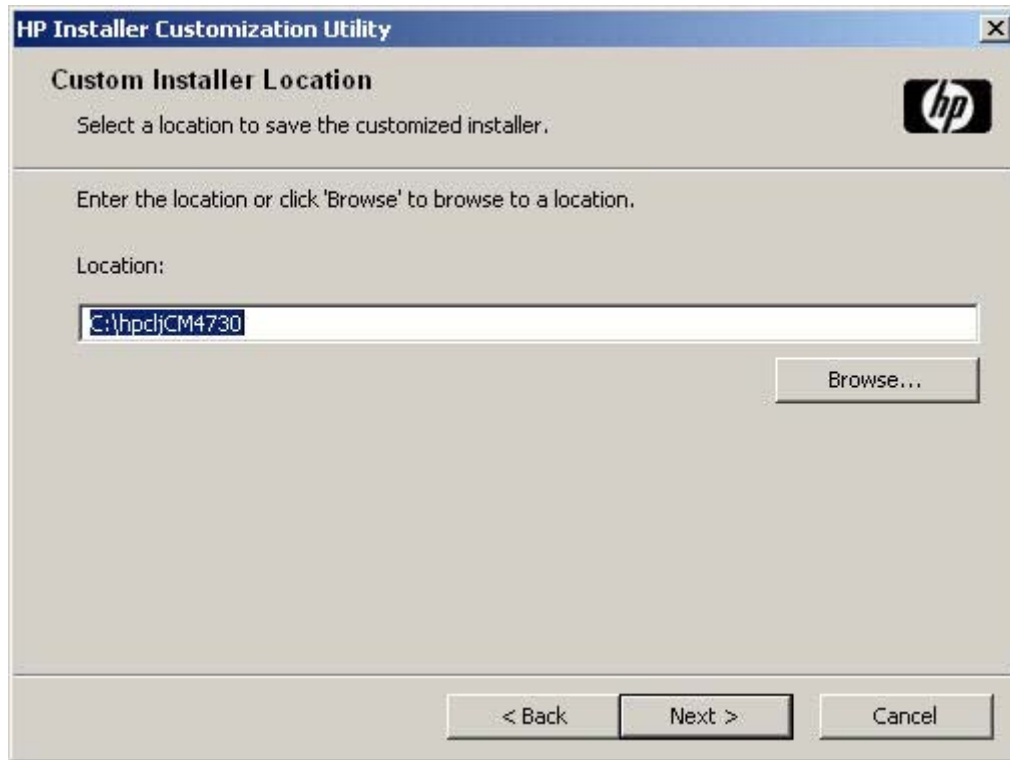
Figure 3-43 Additional software **Details** dialog box



All the software selected in the **Additional Software** dialog box is described in the **Details** dialog box. Click **OK** to return to the **Additional Software** dialog box.

In the **Additional Software** dialog box, click **Next** to open the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-44 Custom Installer Location dialog box



In the **Location:** text field, type the directory for the custom installer. The field is large, but is limited as to the number of characters that it can accommodate.

To change the directory for the custom installer, click **Browse...**, navigate to the appropriate folder, and then click **OK** to return to the **Custom Installer Location** dialog box.

Click **Next** to open the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

 **NOTE:** The location for the installer package defaults to `c:\<NAME OF PRINTER>`.


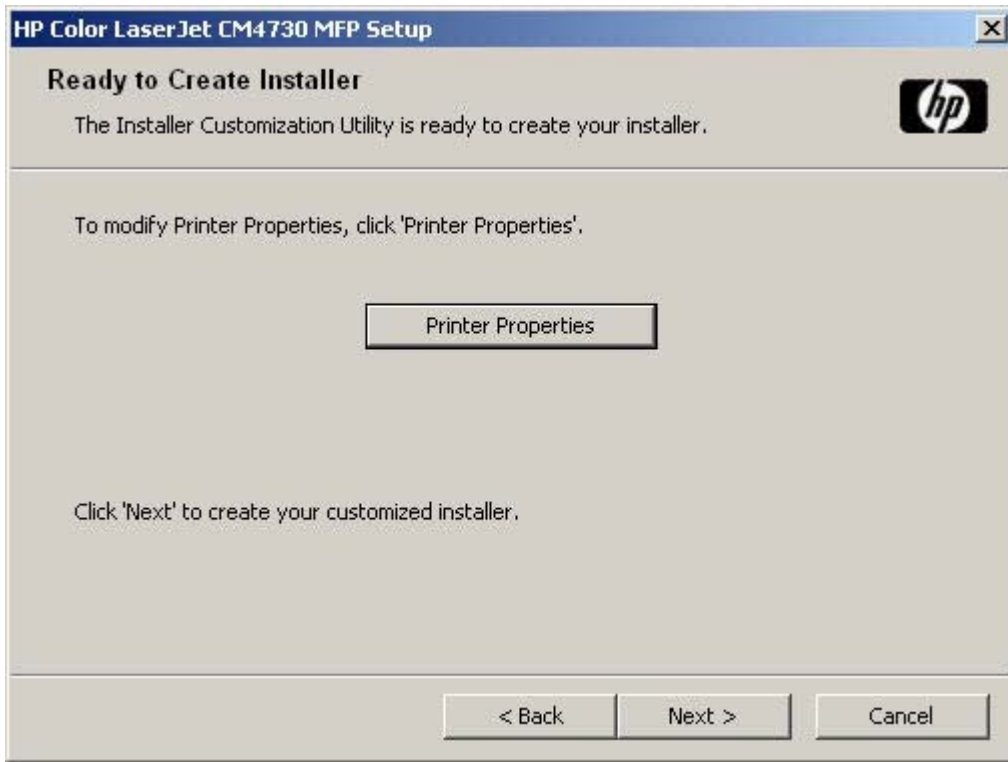
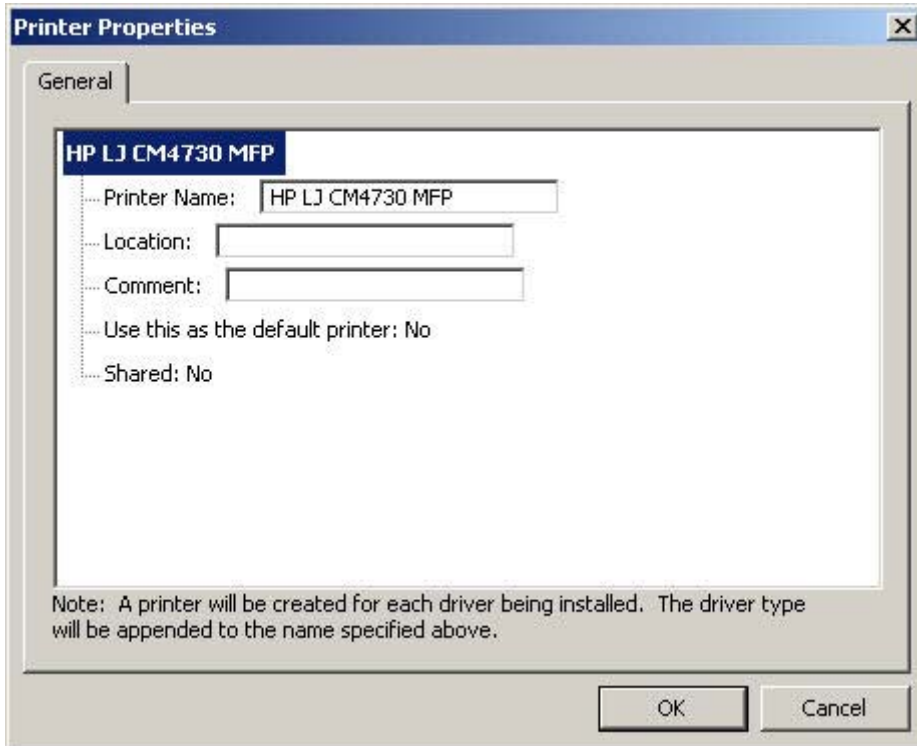
 **NOTE:** During installation, several files, including system files, are placed at the root of the directory that appears in the **Location** field. Be sure that enough space is available on the directory before continuing.

Figure 3-45 Ready to Create Installer dialog box



Click **Printer Properties** to open the **Printer Properties** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-46 Printer Properties **General** tab



To change the device name, type a new name in the **Printer Name** field.

Use the **Location** and **Comment** fields to describe the device, or leave these fields blank.

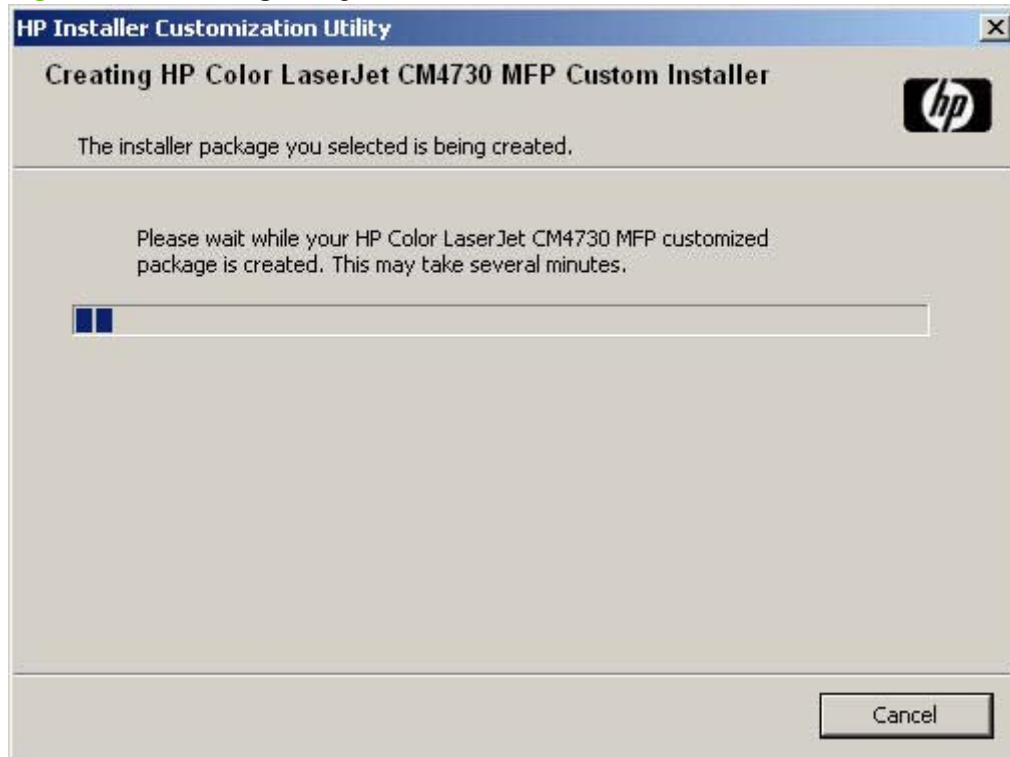
To use the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP as your default device, click **Use this as the default printer**, and then select **Yes** drop-down menu.

To share the device over a network, click **Shared**, and then select **Yes** in the drop-down menu. The default setting is **No**.

Click **OK** to return to the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box.

In the **Ready to Create Installer** dialog box, click **Next** to begin the process of creating the custom installer package. The **Creating** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-47 Creating dialog box

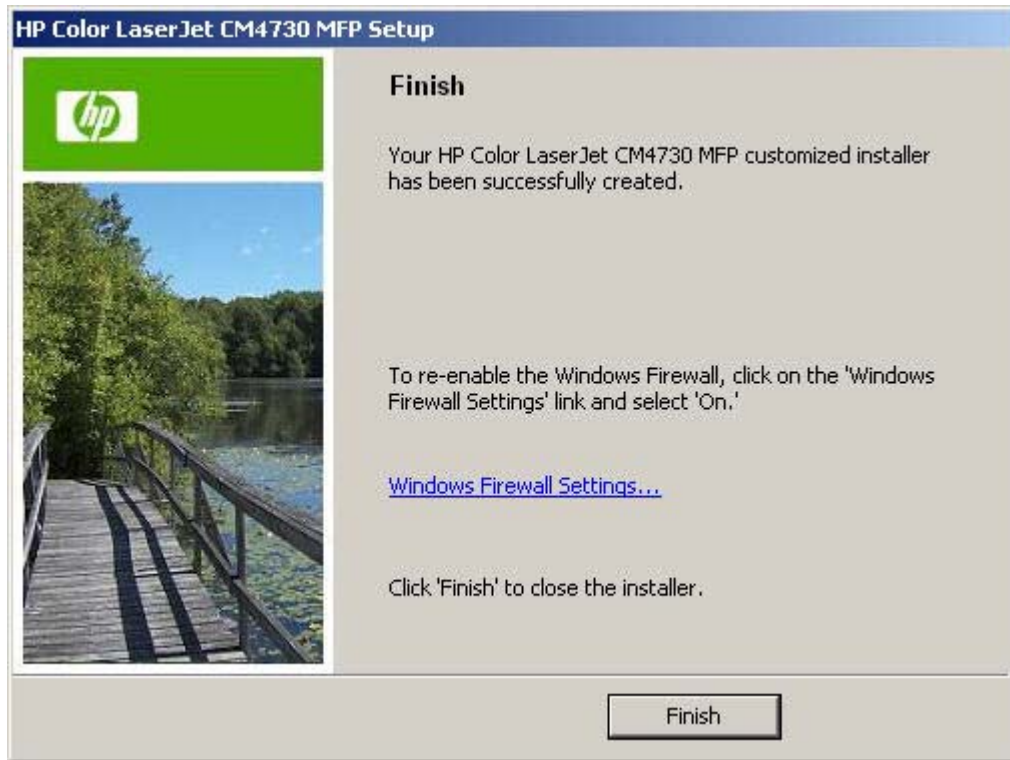


This dialog box remains on the screen until the status bar fills.

Click **Cancel** to close the Installer Customization Wizard without creating the customized installer package.

When the creation is complete, the **Finish** dialog box appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 3-48 Finish dialog box



Click **Finish** to close the **Finish** dialog box and exit the Installer Customization Wizard.

Distribution

The custom installation package is now ready for distribution. It is the same as the package on the CD, except that it is limited to one language, and it contains the selected features and options. The installation package is run silently so that it requires no user interaction. This installation method is useful when using the default selections that the installer provides or when running the installation without being prompted.

You can perform the silent installation in two ways:

- Customized silent installer
- Command-line silent installer

The response file can be renamed, but it must be in the root directory of the installer package. The name cannot contain spaces, because spaces prevent the SETUP.EXE file from passing to the installer package.

The end-user cannot customize the command-line silent installer. It installs the printing-system components specified during package creation.

For more information (including the exact content for replacing entries in the RESPONSE.INI file), see the *HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide*. (See [HP Device Installer Customization Wizard Administrator's Guide on page 22.](#))

Point and Print installation for Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003

Use the following information to install a print driver through the Microsoft Point and Print function when you do not connect directly to the device on the network.

Point and Print is a Microsoft term that describes a two-step driver installation process. The first step is to install a shared driver on a network print server. The second step is to "point" to the print server from a network client so that the client can use the print driver.

This section outlines the procedures for installing print drivers by using Point and Print. If these procedures are not successful, contact Microsoft.

Hewlett-Packard provides drivers that are compatible with the Point and Print feature, but the feature is a function of the Windows operating systems, not of HP print drivers.

Administrator privileges are necessary to install a print driver on a Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, or Windows Server 2003 operating system.

In a homogenous operating system environment (one in which all of the clients and servers are running in the same operating system), the same print driver version that is vended from the server to the clients in a Point and Print environment also runs and controls the print queue configuration on the server. However, in a mixed operating system environment (one in which servers and clients might run on different operating systems), conflicts can occur when client computers run a version of the print driver that is different from the one on the print server.

In an effort to increase operating system stability, Microsoft determined that, starting with Windows 2000 and continuing with all future operating systems, print drivers would run as *user-mode* processes. User-mode drivers run in a protected part of the operating system, as do all of the normal end-user processes and software programs. A user-mode print driver that functions incorrectly can terminate (or "crash") only the process in which it is running—not the whole operating system. Because access to critical system resources is restricted, overall operating system stability is increased.

Set a default printer

This section applies to the Windows Vista, Windows 2000, Windows XP, and Windows Server 2003 operating systems.

1. In Windows 2000, click **Start**, click **Settings**, and then click **Printers**.

In Windows XP and Windows Server 2003, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, and then click **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home).

In Windows Vista, click **Start**, click **Control Panel**, click **Hardware and Sound**, and then click **Printer**.

2. Right-click the device to set as the default.
3. Click **Set As Default**. A check mark appears next to the menu option.

4 HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS Emulation drivers for Microsoft Windows

Introduction

This document describes the features of the HP PCL 6 driver, the HP PCL 5 driver, the HP Postscript 3 Emulation driver (PS Emulation driver), and the HP UPD for Windows.

Control print jobs from the following:

- Device control panel
- Software-program print-dialog box
- Print-driver user interface

Generally, for features that are duplicated in more than one location, settings that are established in the software program take precedence over print-driver settings. Print-driver settings, in turn, override MFP control-panel settings.

When installing the printing-system software in Windows 2000, Windows Server 2003, Windows XP, and Windows Vista, the HP PCL 6 driver is installed by default. The HP PCL 5 and PS emulation drivers can be installed by performing a Custom Installation.

The following sections describe the options that are available on each tab of the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers.

This document also describes differences between the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers. Unless otherwise noted, features described here apply to all three.

Topics:

- [Access to print drivers in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista](#)
- [Help system](#)
- [Advanced tab features](#)
- [Printing Shortcuts tab features](#)
- [Paper/Quality tab features](#)
- [Effects tab features](#)
- [Finishing tab features](#)
- [Output tab features](#)

- [Job Storage tab features](#)
- [Color tab features](#)
- [Services tab features](#)
- [Device Settings tab features](#)
- [About tab features](#)
- [Status Notification Popup \(SNP\)](#)

Access to print drivers in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista

Depending on the operating system on which the print drivers are installed, access to the print drivers and different print-driver interfaces is available in several ways:

- [Device control panel](#)
- [Software-program print dialog box](#)
- [Print-driver user interface](#)

Device control panel

For information about controlling print jobs from the MFP control panel, see the *HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP User Guide* that came with the MFP, or download it from following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Software-program print dialog box

To gain access to the print-driver settings from within most software programs, follow these steps:

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.

The appearance and names of the driver tabs can vary, depending on the operating system. These driver settings apply only while that software program is open.

Print-driver user interface

Control the drivers directly from the **Printers** folder for access to two sets of driver tabs: the **Printing Preferences** tabs and the **Properties** tabs. The settings on the **Printing Preferences** tabs control the driver default settings for each user's profile. Configure installable options on the **Properties** tabs.

Printing Preferences driver tabs

The **Printing Preferences** driver tabs change the default settings that are used across all software programs. To gain access to these tabs, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.

The following **Printing Preferences** tabs are available:

- **Advanced**
- **Printing Shortcuts**
- **Paper/Quality**
- **Effects**
- **Finishing**
- **Output**
- **Job Storage**
- **Color**
- **Services**

All of these tabs are MFP-specific.

The **Job Storage** tab is available only when the **Job Storage** setting is **Enabled**. To make the settings take effect, click **OK** on the **Device Settings** tab (in the driver **Properties**).

Properties driver tabs

This set of tabs controls the driver behavior and driver connections. To gain access to the **Properties** tabs, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Properties**.

The following **Properties** tabs are available:

- **General**
- **Sharing**
- **Ports**
- **Advanced**
- **Color Management**
- **Security**
- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Only MFP-specific HP driver tabs are described in this document; the other tabs are part of the operating system. The following **Properties** tabs are described in this document:

- **Device Settings**
- **About**

Help system

The HP PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers include a full-featured Help system to provide assistance with printing and configuration options.

What's this? Help

Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista support What's this? Help. Gain access to **What's this?** Help messages in any of the following ways:

- Right-click an option and then click **What's this?**. A pop-up Help window appears.
- Click the ? button in the upper-right corner of the frame, next to the X, to change the cursor to an arrow with a question mark. When you use this special cursor to select an option, the pop-up Help window for that option appears.
- Press the F1 key, and the Help window for the currently selected option appears.

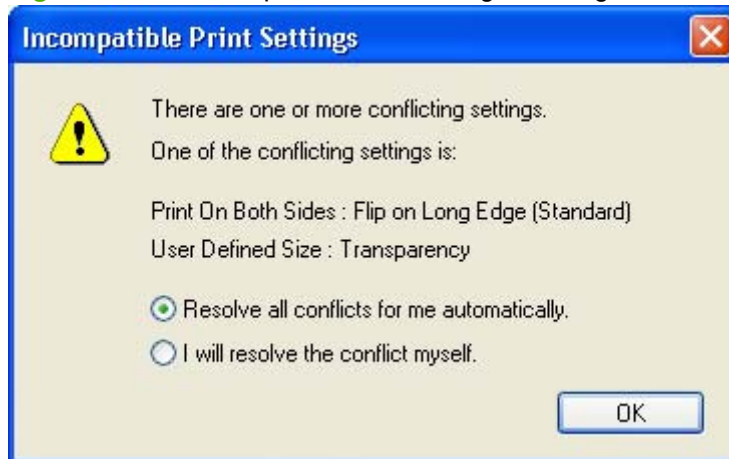
Context-sensitive Help

When you click the **Help** button on a driver tab or in a dialog box, a context-sensitive Help message appears.

Incompatible Print Settings messages


Incompatible Print Settings (constraint) messages are unsolicited messages that appear in response to specific print-driver selections. These messages appear in response to selections that are illogical or impossible given the MFP capabilities or the current settings of other options. For example, duplexing is not possible when the Transparency media type is selected. The following figure shows an example of an **Incompatible Print Settings** message.

Figure 4-1 An Incompatible Print Settings message



To accept an automatic change, click **Resolve all conflicts for me automatically**, and then click **OK**. The driver resets the conflicting control to a setting that is compatible with the new value.

To keep the conflicting setting, click **I will resolve the conflict myself** and then click **OK**.

 **NOTE:** In this example, the conflict can be resolved manually. If the conflict is not resolved when the driver is closed, then the same message reappears when a print job is sent to the MFP.

NOTE: Constraint messages are limited, and the underlying software architecture might accept some settings that are illogical or impossible for the MFP to perform. If print jobs do not print as expected, see the MFP documentation to ensure that the MFP has the expected capabilities.

Advanced tab features

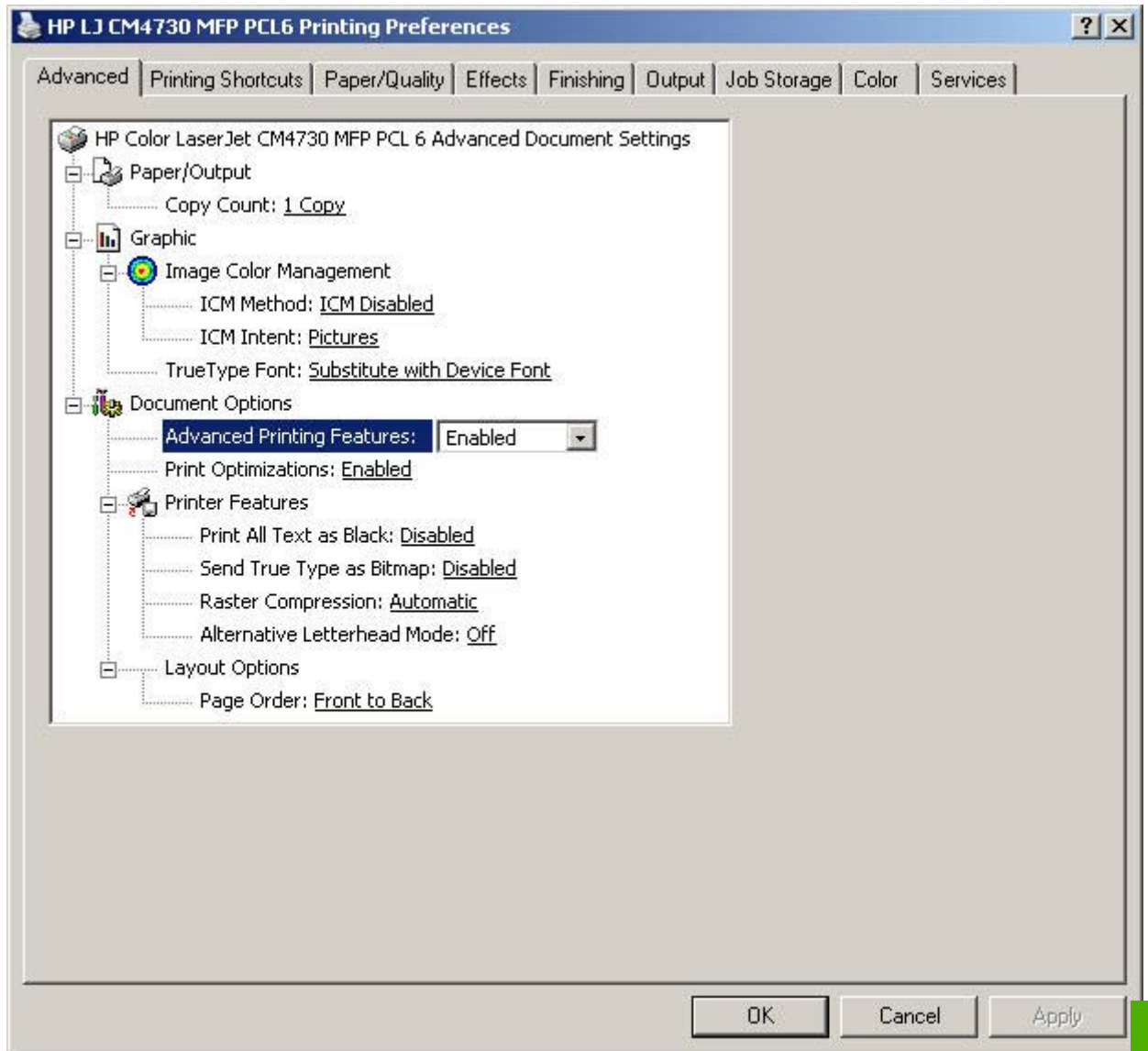
To gain access to the **Advanced** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Advanced** tab.

Use the **Advanced** tab to change the layout of printed pages, to configure special controls that are not commonly used, and to control features such as media size and number of copies. (Most current software programs also support these features in the print dialog box or through the page settings.)

The following figure shows the **Advanced** tab.

Figure 4-2 The default appearance of the **Advanced** tab



The **Advanced** tab contains the following options:

- [Paper/Output](#)
- [Graphic](#)
- [Document Options](#)

Paper/Output

Paper/Output contains the following options:

- **Copy Count** setting
- **Collated** check box (appears when you select **Copy Count**)

Copy Count

Copy Count specifies the number of copies to print. This driver setting is useful for software programs that do not provide a copy count. If a copy count is available in the software program, set the copy count in the software program.

The requested number of copies appears in the **Copy Count** option. Select the number by typing in the box or by using the up and down arrows to the right of the text box. Valid entries are numbers from 1 to 9999. The copies value will not advance from the maximum number (9999) to 1 when the up arrow is used, or change from 1 to the maximum number (9999) when the down arrow is used.


When you click another group box or leave the **Advanced** tab, invalid entries into the edit box (such as non-numerical input, numbers less than 1, or numbers greater than the maximum allowed) are changed to the last valid value that appeared in the box. The default number of copies is 1.

Because the number of copies can be set in some software programs, conflicts between the software program and the driver can arise. In most cases, the software program and the driver communicate so that the number of copies set in one location (such as the software program) appears in the other (such as the driver). For some software programs, this communication does not take place, and the copies values are treated independently. For example, setting 10 copies in the program and then setting 10 copies in the driver results in 100 copies (10 x 10) being printed. Set the number of copies in the software program, wherever possible.

Collated

The **Collated** check box is visible when **Copy Count** is selected and can be changed when **Copy Count** is greater than 1.

When collated, pages print consecutively for each copy of the document. When not collated, copies of each page print together.

 **NOTE:** This setting is *not* synchronized with the collate setting in the software program **Print** dialog box. Settings in the software program override settings in the print driver.

To obtain uncollated printed output, clear the **Collate** setting in *both* the driver and the software program.

Graphic

Graphic contains the following options.

- **Image Color Management** settings
- **True Type Font** settings

Image Color Management

The Image Color Management (ICM) options are used for printing color graphics. ICM enables programs to adjust colors before printing so that the color of images on the screen more closely match the color of the printed images. The following options are available:

- **ICM Method.** Specifies how to print color graphics.
 - **ICM Disabled.** Disables Image Color Management.
 - **ICM Handled by Host System.** The host computer performs color matching before it sends the document to the product.
 - **ICM Handled by Printer.** The MFP performs color matching using rules that are created and downloaded to the MFP.
- **ICM Intent.** Specifies how color images are created to produce the image that looks best on the printed page.
 - **Graphics.** Use this for images requiring fully saturated, bright colors (such as, charts).
 - **Pictures.** Maximize the contrast for photographs or pictures where the colors blend together.
 - **Proof.** Use this for documents in which a specific color of ink must be matched exactly.
 - **Match.** Preview the color settings from another product.

True Type Font

Use **Substitute with Device Font** (the default setting) to use equivalent printer fonts for documents that contain TrueType fonts. This permits faster printing but can eliminate special characters that the equivalent printer font does not support. Select **Download as Softfont** to use TrueType fonts instead of printer fonts.

Document Options


Document Options contains the following options:

- **Advanced Printing Features**
- **Print Optimizations**
- **PostScript Output Options (PS emulation driver only)**
- **Printer Features**
- **Layout Options**

Advanced Printing Features


When **Advanced Printing Features** is **Enabled**, metafile spooling is turned on and **Finishing** tab options such as **Page Order**, **Booklet Layout**, and **Pages per Sheet** are available, depending on the MFP. For normal printing, leave **Advanced Printing Features** at the default (**Enabled**). If compatibility problems occur, disable the feature. However, some advanced printing features might still be available in the print driver, even if they have been disabled. Selecting an advanced printing feature in the print driver that has been disabled on the **Advanced** tab automatically makes the feature available.

Print Optimizations

 **NOTE:** Print Optimization settings are available only in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers. They are not available in the PS Emulation driver.

The default setting for **Print Optimizations** is **Enabled**. When this feature is enabled and the document contains overlapping text and graphics, the text that is placed on top of a graphic might not print correctly. If the printed output is not correct, disable this feature. When this feature is disabled, print optimization-features, such as substituting MFP fonts for TrueType fonts and scanning for horizontal and vertical rules, are turned off.

PostScript Output Options (PS emulation driver only)

 **NOTE:** PostScript Options settings are available only in the PS Emulation driver. They are not available in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Output Options** drop-down menu:

- **Optimize for Speed.** This is the default setting.
- **Optimize for Portability.** Use this setting to create a file that conforms to the Adobe Document Structuring Conventions (ADSC). Each page of the document is a self-contained object. For example, this option is for creating a postscript file and printing it on a different MFP.
- **Encapsulated PostScript (EPS).** Use this setting to include the file as an image in another document that is to be printed from another program.
- **Archive format.** Use this option to create a postscript file that you can use later.

Select one of the following settings in the **TrueType Font Download Options** drop-down menu:

- **Automatic.** This is the default setting.
- **Outline.** Select this option if you want to download the TrueType font as a scalable outline font.
- **Bitmap.** Select this option to download the TrueType font as a bitmap font.
- **Native TrueType.** If the MFP is a TrueType rasterizer printer; select this option to download the TrueType font as an outline font.

Select one of the following settings in the **PostScript Language Level** drop-down menu:

- **3**
- **2**
- **1**

The default setting is **3**. It is usually better to select the highest number available, because it provides more features. In some instances, lower numbers might be necessary. For example, if you are printing a file to disk and that file is to be printed by someone who has a level-1 MFP, select **1**.

Select one of the following settings in the **Send PostScript Error Handler** drop-down menu:

- **Yes.** This is the default setting. When an error occurs in the print job, an error page is sent to the MFP.
- **No.** Select this setting if you do not want an error page to be printed when an error occurs.

Printer Features

Printer Features contains the following options:


- **Print All Text as Black.**

This feature is **Disabled** by default. When **Enabled** is selected, the driver prints all text as black regardless of the original document text color. The exception is white text, which remains white. (White text is a reliable method of printing reverse typeface against a dark background.) This setting does not affect graphic images on the page, nor does it affect any text that is part of a graphic.

- **Send TrueType as Bitmap.** (Available only in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers.)

This feature provides an alternative for software programs that have trouble using TrueType fonts for special graphic aspects such as shading, rotation, or slanting. The setting is **Disabled** by default. The TrueType fonts are converted to bitmap soft fonts before downloading. When **Enabled**, the driver sends TrueType fonts to the printer as outlines, which retains the standard format (outline) of the fonts.

- **Raster Compression.** (Available only in the PCL 6 driver.)

 **NOTE:** The **Raster Compression** option is not available in the HP PCL 5 driver or the PS Emulation driver.

Use the **Raster Compression** feature to select one of the following graphics-compression methods:

- **Automatic.** The software determines the best compression method to use.
 - **Best Quality.** The software uses a compression method that ensures no data is lost during compression.
 - **Maximum Compression.** Where applicable, the software always uses a maximum compression method, even if some data might be lost.
- **Alternative Letterhead Mode.** (Available only when an automatic duplexing unit is installed.)

When using letterhead or preprinted paper, the printer must be able to keep the images synchronized with the paper. Blank paper does not have any “sides” so it does not matter which physical side of the paper is printed with the first image. However, because letterhead or preprinted paper has unique sides, the printer must compensate for this, especially when 2-sided printing is used.

When selected, this option eliminates the need to flip or reload letterhead or preprinted paper in a tray, whether you are printing on one or both sides of the sheet. Load the paper as you would for printing on both sides.

When this option is selected, you must use one of the following options in the **Type is** setting:

- **Letterhead**
 - **Preprinted**
- **Graphics Mode.** (Available only in the HP PCL 5 driver.)


Use **Graphics Mode** to select one of the following settings:

- **Send Graphics as Vector.** Select this setting to send graphics to the MFP as a combination of HP Graphics Language, Version 2 (HP-GL/2), and raster images. This default setting might produce higher-quality output.
- **Send Graphics as Raster.** Select this setting to send all graphics to the MFP as images composed of individual dots. This setting might improve printing speed.

Layout Options

Layout Options contains the **Page Order** setting.

Page Order specifies the order in which the pages of the document are printed. **Front to Back** prints page 1 first. **Back to Front** prints page 1 last.

 **NOTE:** The page-ordering operation works on whole sheets of media rather than on individual logical pages. Accordingly, if **Pages per Sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is greater than one, the ordering of logical pages on a physical sheet of media does not change.

Printing Shortcuts tab features

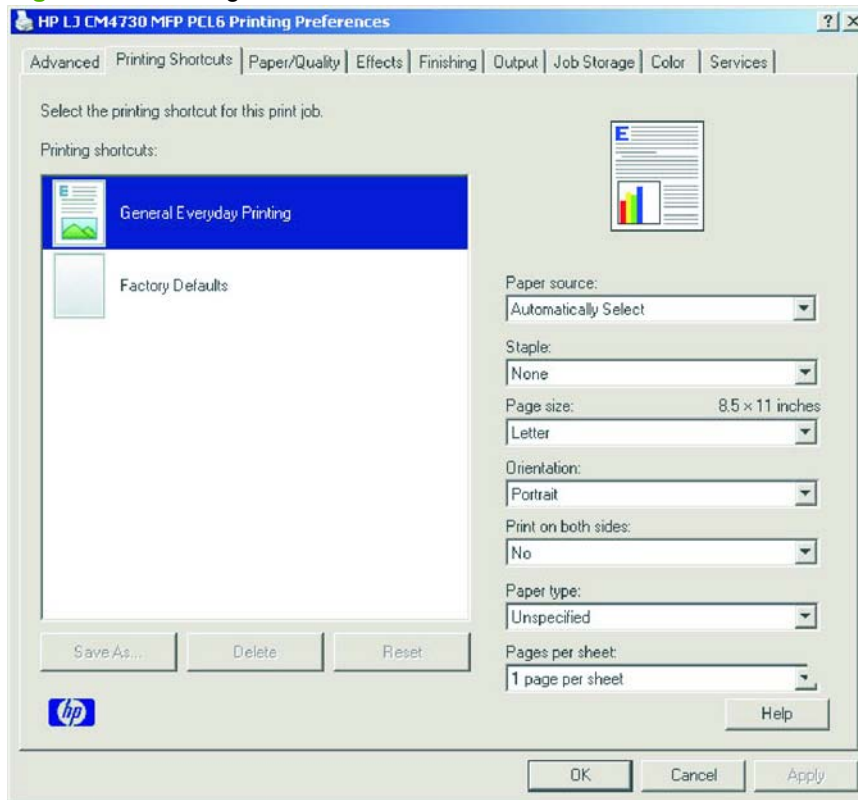
To gain access to the **Printing Shortcuts** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Use the **Printing Shortcuts** tab to store specific combinations of driver settings for easy use.

The following figure shows the **Printing Shortcuts** tab.

Figure 4-3 Printing Shortcuts tab



The **Printing Shortcuts** tab is a new tab that appears on the PCL 6, PCL 5, and PS emulation drivers beginning with the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP. In previous drivers, the Print Task Quick Sets appeared in most of the driver tabs, and was used to capture commonly used driver settings. Like Quick Sets, the **Printing Shortcuts** tab saves commonly used driver settings under a shortcut name.

Printing Shortcuts contains the following:

- Factory Defaults
- General Everyday Printing
- Document preview image

Factory Defaults

When **Factory Defaults** is selected, the customizable options are grayed out, locking in those default options.

The **Factory Defaults** are as follows:

- **Paper source: Automatically select**
- **Staple: None**
- **Page size: Letter**
- **Orientation: Portrait**
- **Print on both sides: No**

General Everyday Printing

When **General Everyday Printing** is selected, the following options are available:

- **Paper source:**
- **Staple:**
- **Page size:**
- **Orientation:**
- **Print on both sides:**
- **Paper type:**
- **Pages per sheet:**

When options other than the defaults are selected, the **Save as...** and **Reset** buttons become active.

Click **Save as...** to create a custom printing shortcut.

Click **Reset** to restore the default settings.

Paper source

The following options are available:

- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Printer auto select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**

- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3**
- **Tray 4**

Staple

The following options are available:

- **None** (default)
- **One Staple Angled (Max 30 Sheets)**

Page size

The following options are available:

- **Letter** (default)
- **Legal**
- **Executive**
- **Statement**
- **8.5x13**
- **A4**
- **A5**
- **B5 (JIS)**
- **16K**
- **Double Japan Postcard Rotated**
- **Envelope #10**
- **Envelope Monarch**
- **Envelope B5**
- **Envelope C5**
- **Envelope DL**

Orientation

The following options are available:

- **Portrait** (default)
- **Landscape**

Print on both sides

The following options are available:

- **No** (default)
- **Yes, Flip Over**
- **Yes, Flip Up**

Paper type

The following options are available:

- **Unspecified** (default)
- **Plain**
- **Preprinted**
- **Letterhead**
- **Transparency**
- **Prepunched**
- **Labels**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Color**
- **Light 60-75 g/m²**
- **Intermediate 90-104 g/m²**
- **Heavy 105-120 g/m²**
- **Extra Heavy 120-163 g/m²**
- **Cardstock 164-220 g/m²**
- **Rough 90-105 g/m²**
- **Glossy 75-120 g/m²**
- **Heavy Glossy 120-160 g/m²**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy 160-220 g/m²**
- **Tough paper**
- **Envelope**

Pages per sheet

The following options are available:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-4 Document preview image



Paper/Quality tab features

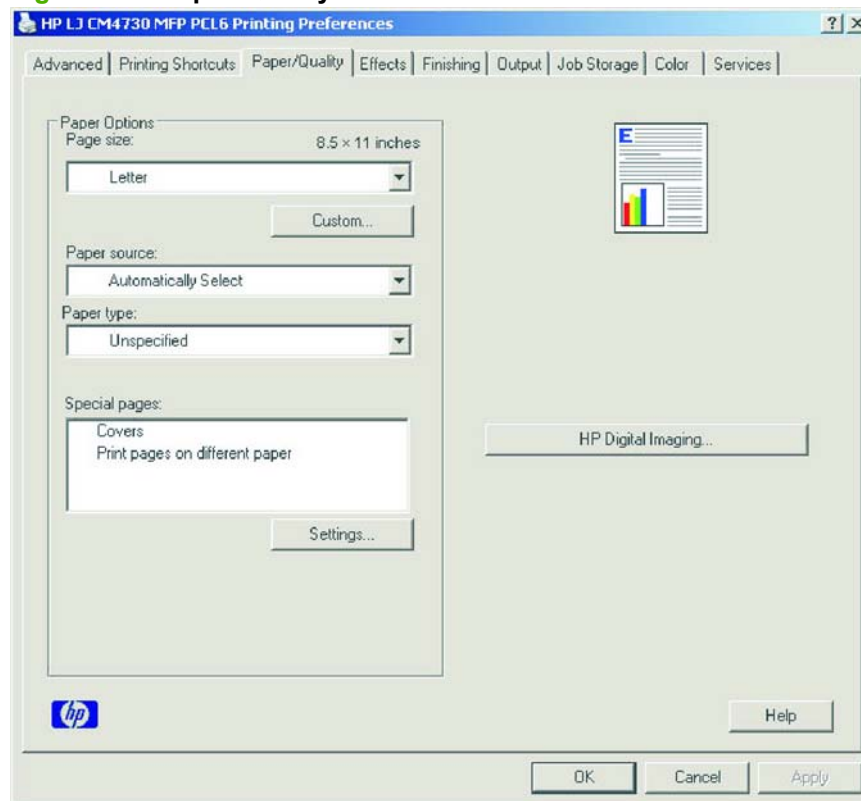
To gain access to the **Paper/Quality** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Use the **Paper/Quality** tab to specify the size, type, and source of the media. Also use this tab to specify different media selections for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, and back cover of the document.

The following figure shows the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Figure 4-5 Paper/Quality tab



The **Paper/Quality** tab contains the following options:

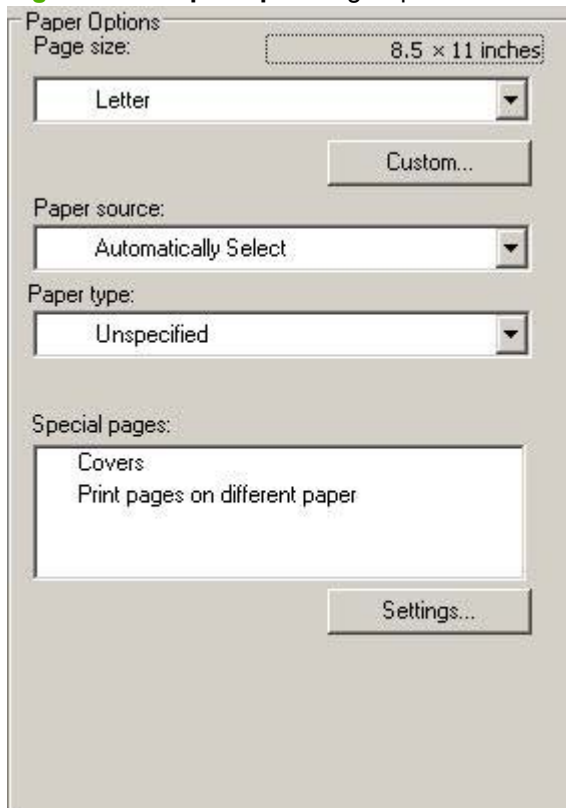
- [Paper Options](#)
- [Special pages](#)

- [Document preview image](#)
- [HP Digital Imaging](#)

Paper Options

The settings specified in the **Paper Options** group box on the **Paper/Quality** tab apply to all of the pages of the document. The following figure shows the **Paper Options** group box and the default selections.

Figure 4-6 Paper Options group box



The settings in the **Paper Options** group box are described in the following order:


- [Page size: on page 127](#)
- [Custom Paper Size on page 128](#)
- [Paper source: on page 129](#)
- [Paper type: on page 130](#)

Page size:

Page size: is a drop-down menu that lists all of the supported media sizes.

Move the cursor over the dimensions label to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Click the dimensions label to toggle between English and metric units.

Because media-size settings in most software programs override driver settings, use the driver to set media size only when printing from software programs that do not include a media-size setting, such as NotePad, or when producing a book or a booklet that does not require different media sizes.

 **NOTE:** Certain software programs can override the size command and specify different media sizes within a single document.

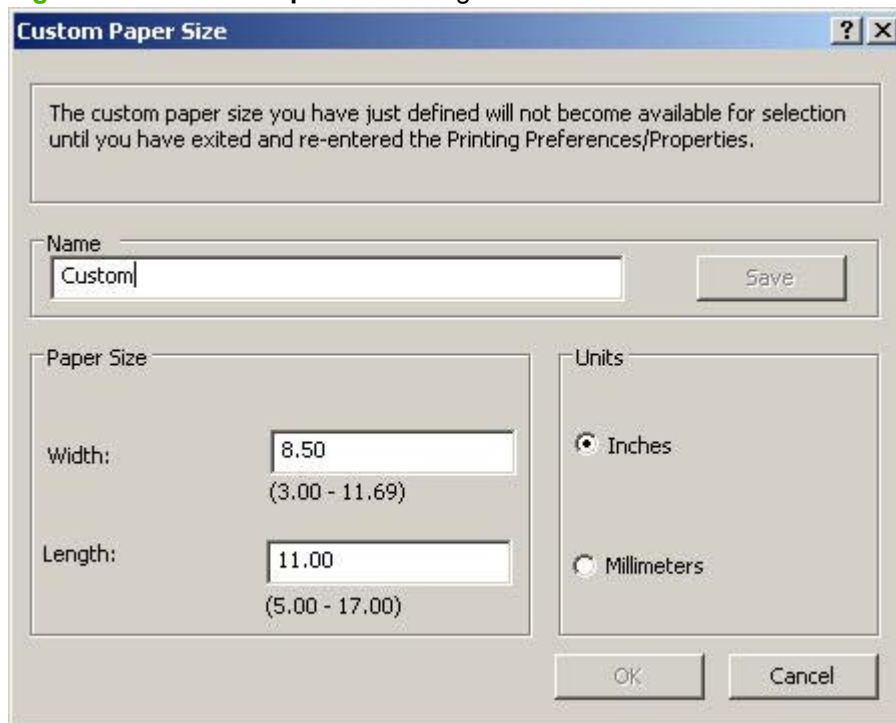
When you change the print-driver setting to a media size that is not currently loaded in the MFP, a control-panel message prompts you to load the media size or select another tray.

Custom Paper Size

The **Custom Paper Size** dialog box appears when you click **Custom...** on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

The following figure shows the initial appearance of the **Custom Paper Size** dialog box.

Figure 4-7 Custom Paper Size dialog box



Name

Use the **Name** text box to type a new name for a custom media size.

The name that appears in the **Name** text box depends on the following conditions:

- If a saved custom media size has been selected from the drop-down menu on the **Paper/Quality** tab, the **Name** text box shows the name of the selected custom media size.
- If a standard media size has been selected on the **Paper/Quality** tab, the **Name** text box shows the default name of "Custom."
- If a new name has been typed into the **Name** text box for the purpose of saving a new size or renaming an existing size, then that new name will remain in the text box until the new size is saved or the dialog box is closed.

If you type a new name into the **Name** text box, but then do not click **Save**, you can change the width and height values without losing the name. However, if you close the dialog box without clicking **Save**, any unsaved name or size values are lost without warning.

Paper Size

Change the width and height values by typing numeric strings into the edit boxes in the **Paper Size** group box.

Any entry that is greater than the maximum limits of the width and height edit box is rounded down to the maximum valid entry, while any entry that is smaller than the minimum limits of the width and height edit box is rounded up to the minimum valid entry.

If units are in millimeters, the custom media-size range minimum is the limit rounded up to the nearest whole millimeter. The custom media-size range maximum is the limit rounded down to the nearest whole millimeter. Any non-numerical entry reverts to the last valid entry. Width and height entries are validated when the focus has changed.

The resolution of each edit box is 1 millimeter or 1/10 of an inch, depending on the current measurement units.

Units

To change measurement units, click one of the options in the **Units** group box (either **Inches** or **Millimeters**).

Custom width and height control limits

The minimum media size for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is 76.2 x 127 mm (3 x 5 inches) and the maximum is 215.9 x 355.6 mm (8.5 x 14 inches). The following table summarizes media size limits for each media-handling MFP.

Table 4-1 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — PCL 6 custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	76.2 mm (3.0 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127.0 mm (5.0 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Duplexing unit	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)

Paper source:

The **Paper source:** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories that are installed. Any optional source trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.

The **Paper source:** drop-down menu can contain the following options, depending on what has been installed on the MFP:

- **Automatically Select**
- **Printer Auto Select**
- **Manual Feed in Tray 1**
- **Tray 1**
- **Tray 2**
- **Tray 3**
- **Tray 4**

The default setting is **Automatically Select**. When this is selected, the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP uses the source tray that supports the selected media size. For the other options, make sure the correct media size is loaded in the source tray. For information about media sources, see [Media attributes on page 282](#).

Paper type:

The **Paper type:** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supports. When you use the default setting, **Unspecified**, the MFP uses the default media type, which is usually **Plain**.

No mechanism exists for manually adding custom media types through the driver. Custom types can be added only by using the bidirectional communication mechanism, so they must already exist in the MFP when the bidirectional query occurs. If bidirectional communication is enabled, an updated list of media types is returned. If bidirectional communication is not enabled, the driver looks for custom media types that have been saved from a previous bidirectional communication query, and uses those. Otherwise, no custom media types are available through the driver.

The following standard types appear in the list:

- **Unspecified**
- **Plain**
- **Preprinted**
- **Letterhead**
- **Transparency**
- **Prepunched**
- **Labels**
- **Bond**
- **Recycled**
- **Color**
- **Light (60–75 g/m²)**
- **Intermediate (90–104 g/m²)**

- **Heavy (105–120 g/m²)**
- **Extra Heavy (120–163 g/m²)**
- **Cardstock (164–220 g/m²)**
- **Rough (90–105 g/m²)**
- **Glossy (75–120 g/m²)**
- **Heavy Glossy (120–160 g/m²)**
- **Extra Heavy Glossy (160–220 g/m²)**
- **Tough Paper**
- **Envelope**
- **User Type 1**
- **User Type 2**
- **User Type 3**
- **User Type 4**
- **User Type 5**

The default setting is **Unspecified**, and the program selects the media type. Before selecting a different setting, make sure that the correct media type is loaded in the tray that is specified in the **Paper source:** setting.

If the print-driver setting is changed to a media type that is not currently loaded in the MFP, a control-panel message prompts you to load the media type or select another tray.

Caution symbols may appear next to some paper types in the selection list. This means that there is another setting that may be in conflict with the selected paper size. For example, if “print on both sides” is selected in the Finishing tab, then the Transparency paper type will have a Caution sign next to it because transparencies can only be printed on a single side.

Special pages

To specify special pages to be used, click the **Settings** button under **Special Pages**.

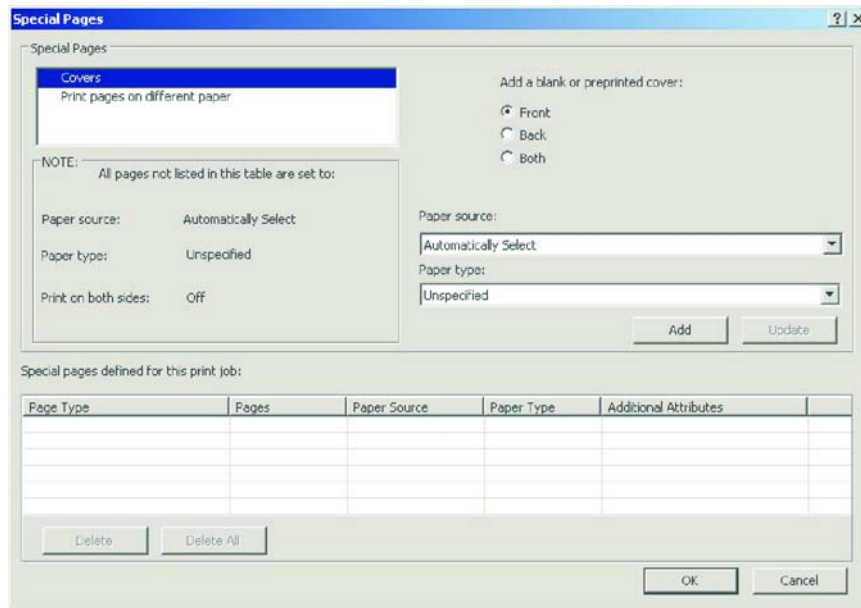
Covers

To use specify cover settings, click **Covers** on the **Special Pages** window.

Use the **Covers** options to include a blank or preprinted cover on a document, or to include a front/back cover from a source tray that is different from the one used for the remainder of the document.

The following figure shows the **Covers** setting and options.

Figure 4-8 **Covers** options — Front, Back, or Both



The following are the **Covers** options:

- **Cover type.** Select which cover is customized: **Front**, **Back**, or **Both**
- **Paper source.** The **Paper Source** setting specifies the source tray to use for adding a front and/or back cover to the document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type.** The **Paper Type** setting specifies the media size to use for front and/or back covers. Changes made to the **Paper Type** setting here override any previous **Paper Type** settings using the same paper source.

NOTE: The **Back Cover** options are not available when the **Booklet Printing Layout** setting is enabled on the **Finishing** tab. The back cover setting is unavailable, because this page would be printed in the middle of a booklet.

NOTE: The same size of media will be used for the entire print job.

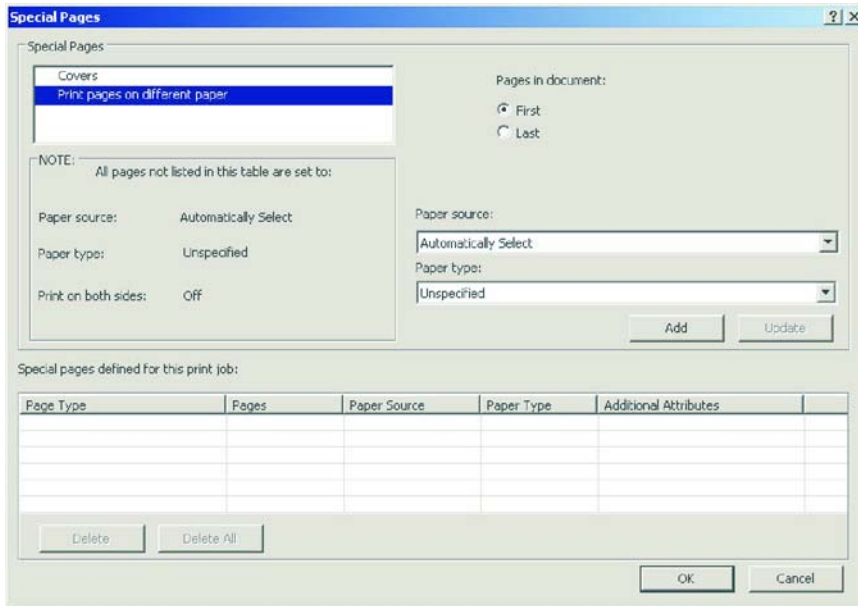
When you change the type and source of the media and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Print pages on different paper

Use the **Print pages on different paper** options to select an alternative media type or source for the first or last page of a document.

The following figure shows the **Print pages on different paper** settings and options.

Figure 4-9 Print pages on different paper — First, or Last



The following are the **Print pages on different paper** options:

- **Pages in document.** Select which pages are customized: the **First** page, or the **Last** page.
- **Paper source.** The **Paper source** setting specifies the source tray to use for printing a document. The list of source trays depends on the MFP accessories that are installed. Any optional trays that are installed through the **Device Settings** tab also appear here.
- **Paper type.** The **Paper type** drop-down menu shows all of the media types that the MFP supports.

 **NOTE:** The same type of media is used for the entire print job.

When you change the type and source of the media and covers, the settings remain configured until you close the software program.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-10 Document preview image



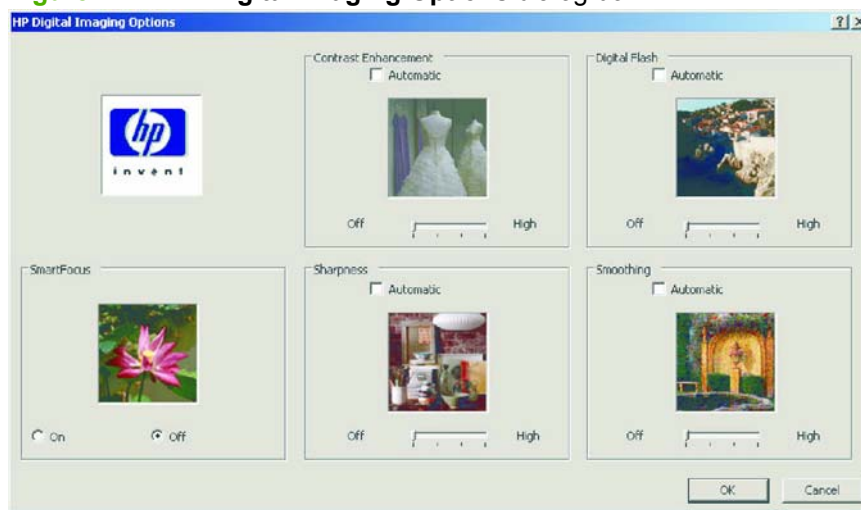
HP Digital Imaging

On the **Paper/Quality** tab, click the **HP Digital Imaging** button to open the **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box.

NOTE: The **HP Digital Imaging** settings should be used only for high-resolution images (600 dpi or higher) that are printed on photograph-quality paper. These settings are not recommended for text.

The **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-11 HP Digital Imaging Options dialog box



The following settings can be adjusted on the **HP Digital Imaging Options** dialog box:

- **Contrast Enhancement.**

Increases image contrast for a more visually pleasing result. This filter is useful with flat images (images in which much of the content is compressed into a small dynamic range of pixel values). Flat images may result from low lighting, environmental haze, or camera or scanner limitations.

- **Digital Flash.**

Adjusts lighting levels to reveal areas in shadow. The filter locates dark areas and brings out detail without degrading other features.

- **SmartFocus.**

Increases the apparent resolution of lower resolution images. Many images that are downloaded from the Internet or from digital cameras can be compressed because of size restrictions and might exhibit pixilation artifacts when printed. SmartFocus upscales the image to the printer resolution without accentuating these artifacts.

- **Sharpness.**

Improves the sharpness of an image by making the edges more prominent. The filter detects regions that contain significant variations in pixel value along a number of different vectors (which denotes edges) and then applies a filter to enhance detail.

- **Smoothing.**

Decreases noise artifacts that are often created by digital cameras or scanners. The filter locates areas that contain abrupt changes in pixel value compared to surrounding pixels (which denotes noise) and then applies a filter to smooth the output.

Effects tab features

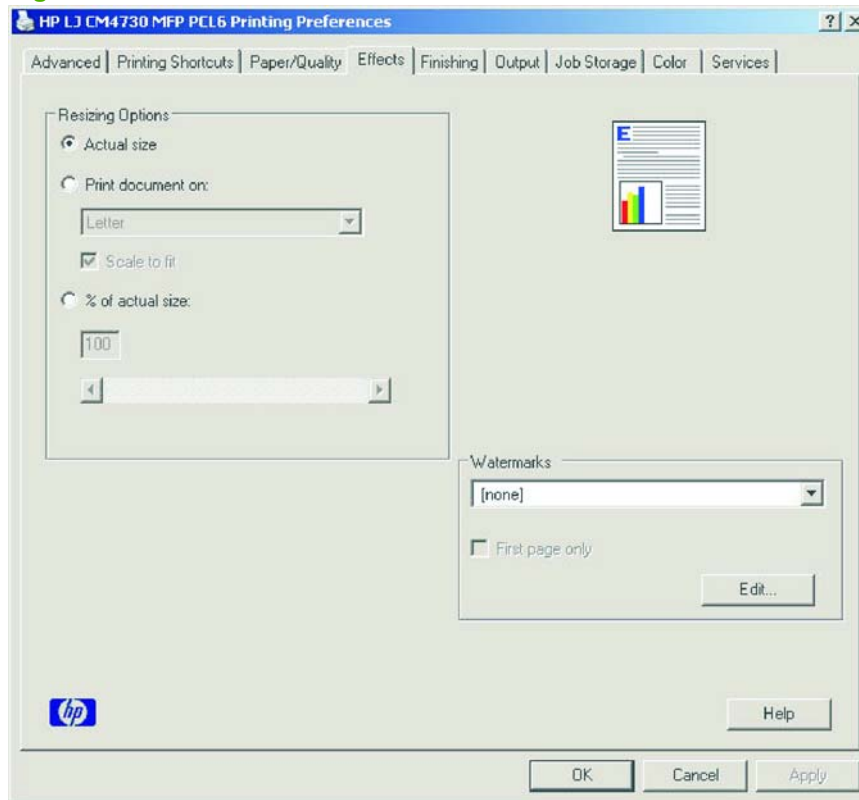
To gain access to the **Effects** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) and **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Effects** tab.

Use the **Effects** tab to create unique media effects such as scaling and watermarks.

The following figure shows the **Effects** tab.

Figure 4-12 Effects tab



The **Effects** tab contains the following options:

- [Resizing Options](#)
- [Document preview image](#)
- [Watermarks](#)

Resizing Options

The **Resizing Options** group box consists of the following options:

- **Actual size** (default)
- **Print document on**
- **Scale to fit**
- **% of actual size**

Actual size

Actual size is the default setting. It prints the document without changing the document size.

Print document on

Click **Print document on** to format the document for one media size and then print the document on a different media size, with or without scaling the image to fit the new media size.

Print document on is disabled by either of the following conditions:

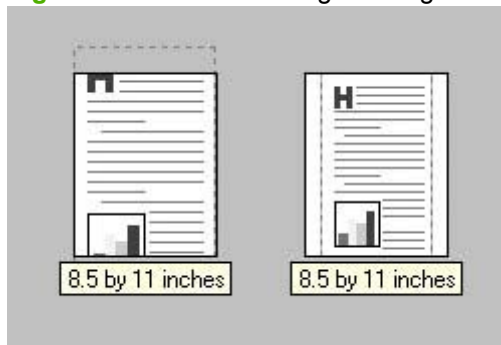
- The **% of actual size** value is not 100.
- The **Pages per sheet** value (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

When **Print document on** is selected, the drop-down menu shows the media sizes on which you can print. The list contains all of the standard media sizes that the selected media source supports and any custom sizes that have been created. When **Print document on** is selected, **Scale to fit** is automatically selected. Clear this check box if you do not want the document reduced or enlarged to fit on the selected media.

Scale to fit

Scale to fit specifies whether each formatted document page is scaled to fit the target media size. By default, **Scale to fit** is selected when **Print document on** is selected. If **Scale to fit** is turned off, each document page is centered at full size on the target media. If the document size is larger than the target media size, the document image is clipped. If it is smaller, it is centered within the target media. The following figure shows preview images for a Legal-size document being printed on Letter-size media.

Figure 4-13 Preview images – Legal on Letter; **Scale to fit** off (left) and on (right)



A dashed gray line to shows the boundaries of the formatted page size in relation to the target page size.

% of actual size

The **% of actual size** option provides a slider bar for scaling the percentage setting. The default setting is 100%. Actual size is defined as the media size that is selected within the driver or within the software program. A software setting overrides a print-driver setting.

The limits of the range are from 25% to 400%, and any values outside the range are adjusted to those limits as soon as you click outside of the option or press the **Tab** key.

The value in the edit box changes as the slider-bar indicator is dragged, and the document preview image is updated to the new image scale. Each click on the arrows affects the scale by 1%. Each click on the slider bar affects the scale by 10%.

To achieve an exact value, use the slider-bar to approximate the exact value and then use the arrows to refine the value, or type the value into the entry box.

The following settings disable **% of actual size**:

- **Print document on** (on the **Effects** tab) is selected.
- **Pages per sheet** (on the **Finishing** tab) is not 1.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-14 Document preview image



Watermarks

Use the **Watermarks** feature to select a watermark, create a custom watermark (text only), or edit an existing watermark. The following watermarks are preset in the driver:

- **(none)**
- **Confidential**
- **Draft**
- **SAMPLE**

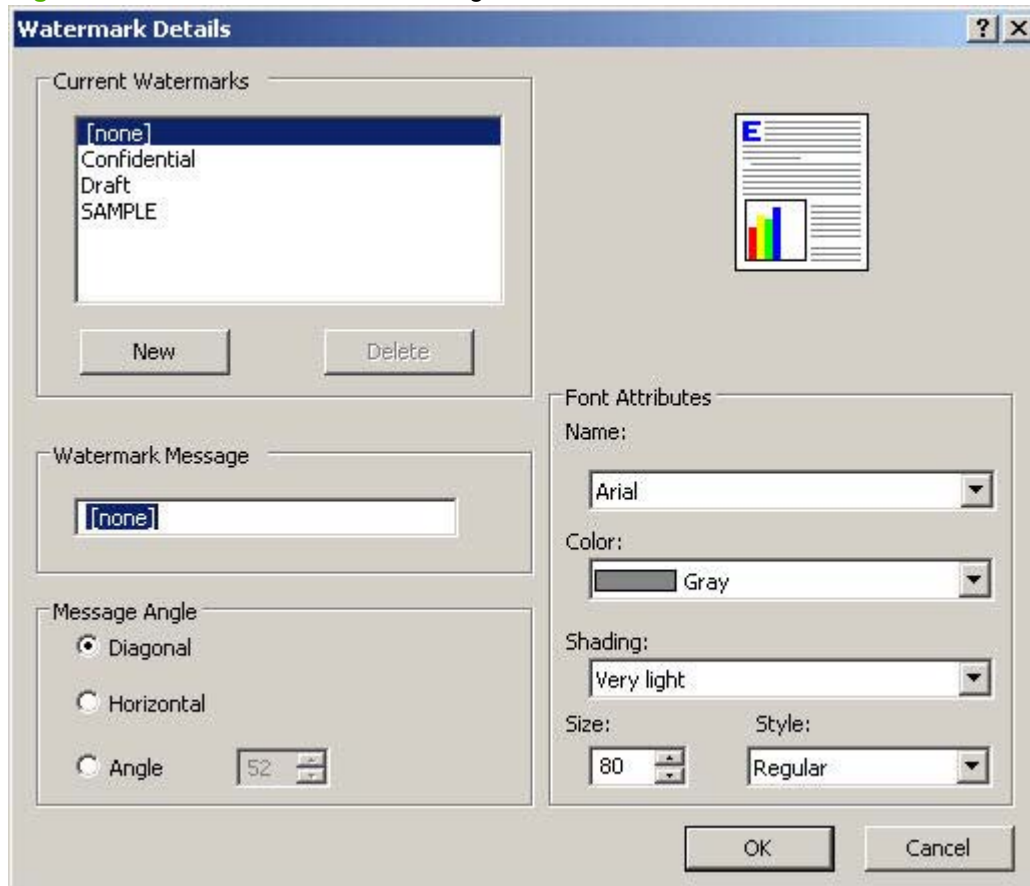
The drop-down menu shows alphabetically sorted watermarks that are currently available on the system plus the default "(none)", which indicates that no watermark is selected. Any selected watermark appears in the preview image.

When the **First Page Only** check box is selected, the watermark is printed only on the first page of the document. This check box is disabled when the current watermark selection is "(none)".

Watermarks are applied to logical pages. For example, when **Pages per sheet** on the **Finishing** tab is set to "4" and **First Page Only** is turned off, four watermarks appear on the page (one on each logical page).

Click **Edit** to open the **Watermark Details** dialog box, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-15 Watermark Details dialog box




The dialog box shows a preview image and provides options for creating a new watermark and controlling the message angle and font attributes.

Current watermarks

The **Current Watermarks** group box contains a list of all available watermarks.

To create a new watermark, click **New**. The new watermark appears as "**Untitled**" until you type a new name in the edit box. The name typed in the **Watermark Message** field appears in the **Current Watermarks** group box in the **Watermark Details** dialog box and in the **Watermarks** group box on the **Effects** tab.

To delete a watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and click **Delete**. When prompted, click **OK** to delete, or click **Cancel** to keep the watermark.

 **NOTE:** When the limit of 30 watermarks is reached in the **Current Watermarks** list, the **New** button is disabled.

To edit an existing watermark, select the watermark in the **Current Watermarks** list and change the **Watermark Message** or other settings.

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box. However, clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Watermark Message

The **Watermark Message** matches the watermark name unless more than one watermark has the same message. For example, several different watermarks might contain the message DRAFT, each with a different typeface or font size. When this occurs, the name is appended with a space, a pound sign, and the appropriate sequential number to make the name unique (for example, **Draft #2**, **Draft #3**, and so on).

Message Angle

Use the controls in the **Message Angle** group box to print the watermark in different orientations on the page. All settings center the watermark message within the page; each setting affects only the angle of the message. The following settings are available:

- **Diagonal.** This default setting places the text along a line that spans the lower-left to upper-right corners of the page.
- **Horizontal.** This setting places the text along a line that spans the mid-left and mid-right edges of the page.
- **Angle.** This setting places the text at the specified angle across the page. Click the arrows to select the desired angle.

Font Attributes

Use the options in the **Font Attributes** group box to change the font and the shading, size, and style of the font.

The **Font Attributes** group box contains the following options:

- **Name.** The **Name** drop-down menu lists fonts that are currently installed on the system. The default is language-dependent.

- **Color.**

The following colors are available:

- **Gray (default)**
- **Red**
- **Yellow**
- **Green**
- **Cyan**
- **Blue**
- **Magenta**

- **Shading.**

The following shades are available:

- **Lightest**
- **Very Light (default)**
- **Light**
- **Medium Light**
- **Medium**
- **Medium Dark**
- **Dark**
- **Very Dark**
- **Darkest**

These values represent the intensity of the gray that is used. Select **Light** to produce a lightly saturated gray watermark. Select **Lightest** to produce the lightest shade of watermark. Select **Darkest** to produce a black watermark.

- **Size.**

Font sizes from 1 to 999 points are available. The default point size is language-dependent.

- **Style.**

The following settings are available:

- **Regular (default)**
- **Bold**
- **Italic**
- **Bold Italic**

Default watermark settings

The following table shows **Font Attribute** settings for new and preset watermarks.

Table 4-2 Font Attribute settings for new and preset watermarks

Setting	New watermark	Preset watermark
Name	Arial	Varies by language
Color	Gray	Gray
Shading	Very Light	Very Light
Size	80	Varies by language
Style	Bold	Bold

Click **OK** to accept all of the changes that are made in the **Watermark Details** dialog box.

Clicking **Cancel** does not cancel all of the changes. If you make changes to a watermark and then select a different watermark or click **New**, all of the changes are saved, and only the current, unsaved changes can be canceled.

Finishing tab features

△ **CAUTION:** Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Finishing** tab features.

See [Mopier Mode on page 175](#) for more information.

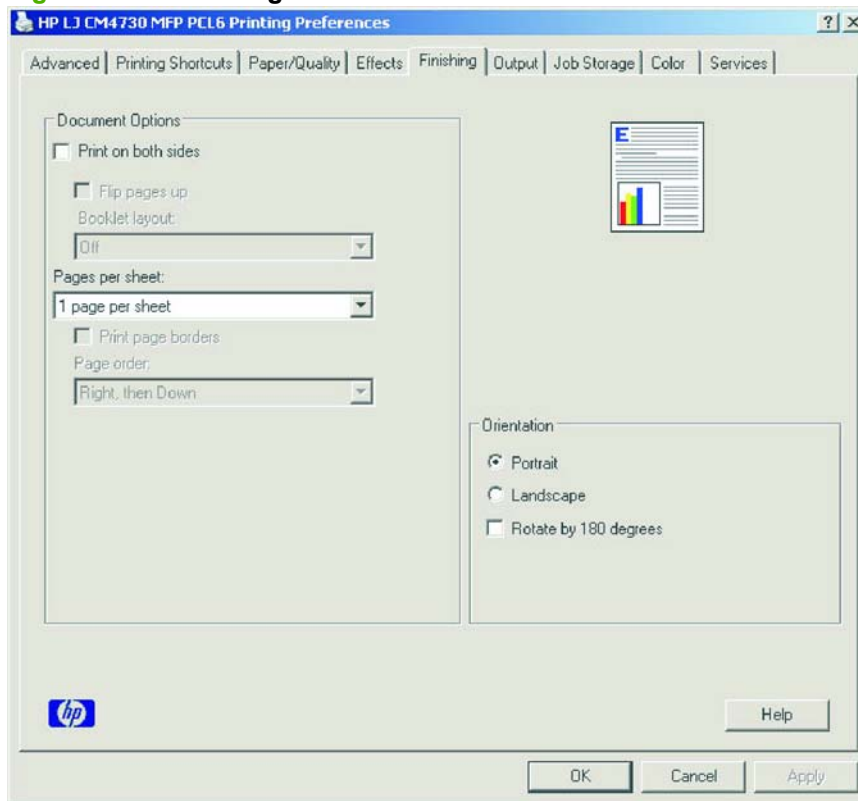
To gain access to the **Finishing** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows XP) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Finishing** tab.

Use the **Finishing** tab to print booklets and control the media output.

The following figure shows the **Finishing** tab.

Figure 4-16 Finishing tab



The **Finishing** tab contains the following options:

- [Document options](#)

- [Document preview image](#)
- [Orientation](#)

Document options

The **Document Options** group box contains the following options:

- [Print on both sides](#)
- [Flip pages up](#)
- [Booklet layout](#)
- [Pages per sheet](#)
- [Print page borders](#)
- [Page order](#)

Print on both sides

The default setting for **Print on both sides** is off (not selected). **Print on both sides** is available when the following conditions exist:

- **Type is:** on the **Paper/Quality** tab is set to any media type *except* the following:
 - **Labels**
 - **Transparency**
 - **Envelope**
 - **Tough Paper**
- **Size is:** is set to any media size *except* the following:
 - **Envelope #10**
 - **Envelope DL**
 - **Envelope C5**
 - **Envelope B5**
 - **Envelope Monarch**

Topics:

- [Automatically print on both sides](#)
- [Manually print on both sides](#)

Automatically print on both sides

The duplexing unit in the MFP prints on two sides of a sheet of paper when the **Print on Both Sides** option is specified in the print job.

Models with a duplexer installed support smart duplexing. Smart duplexing increases printing performance by preventing one-page print jobs or single-sided pages of a duplexed print job from going through the duplexing unit.

All media types support the smart duplexing feature, except for media types that cannot be printed on both sides (such as labels, transparencies, and envelopes) and the following media types:

- Prepunched
- Preprinted
- Letterhead

When the media type is set to **Unspecified**, the smart duplexing feature is disabled.

To achieve the best print quality when printing on the second side of the page, the MFP makes adjustments to its print modes. The MFP uses a group of settings (such as fuser temperature and print speed) to create an image that has the best possible quality for the selected media. This group of settings is known as print mode. Print-mode adjustments for the second side of a duplexed page are automatic.

Manually print on both sides

Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box to print on the second side of the media for HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP models that do not have a duplexing unit installed. Use this setting on all HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP models for media types that the automatic duplexing unit does not support, such as thick media.

Manually printing on the second side of a page is available in the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, or PS emulation drivers. If a duplexing unit is installed and manual duplexing is enabled in the driver, the MFP automatically prints on both sides of media types that are supported for automatic duplexing (Letter, A4, Legal, and 8.5 x 13 only), and forces manual printing on both sides for media types that are not supported.

To make the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box available in the document options, select the **Allow Manual Duplexing** option on the **Device Settings** tab on the **Properties** print-driver tabs.

To print on both sides manually while using media that is supported for automatic duplexing, select and apply the **Not Installed** setting on the **Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)** option on the **Device Settings** tab.

Select the media type that you are using for the print job. The following media types have different print modes when you manually print on the second side:

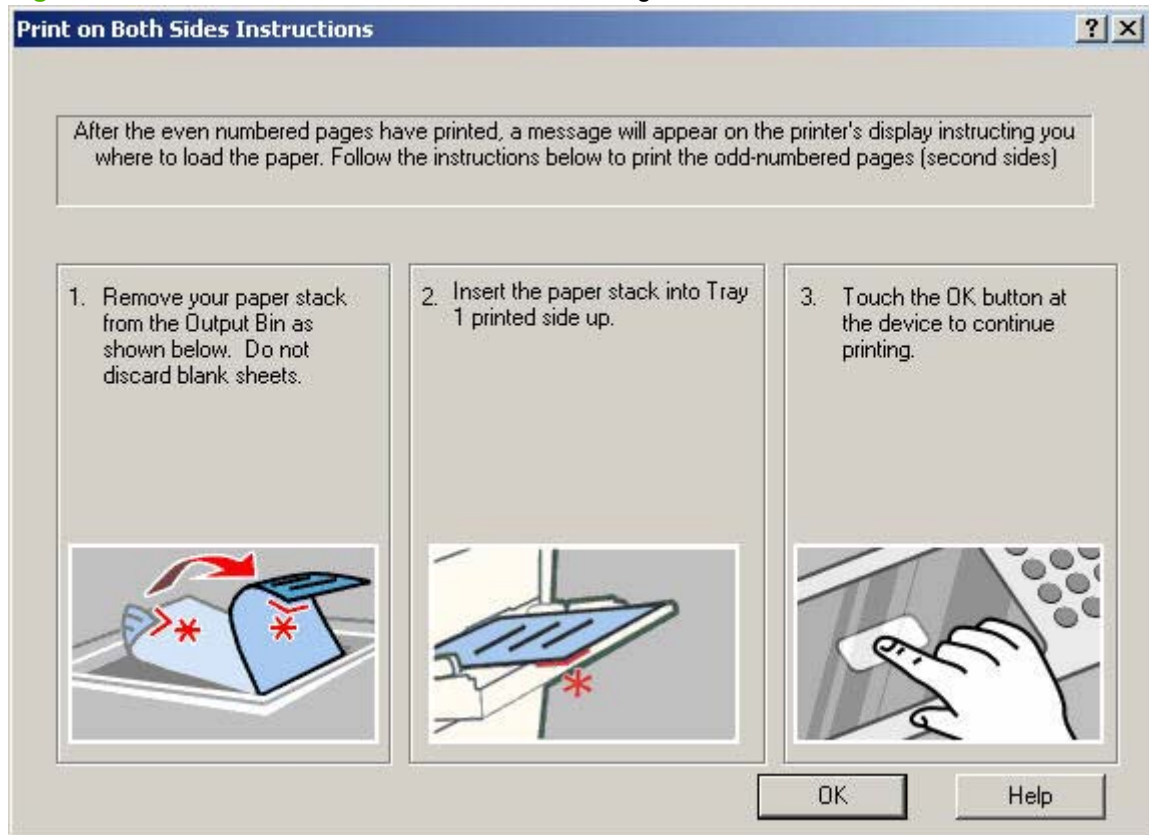
- Plain
- Preprinted
- Letterhead
- Prepunched
- Bond
- Recycled
- Color
- Rough

Cardstock can be manually printed on the second side, but no change occurs to the print mode. Transparencies and labels should not be manually printed on the second side.

To print a multiple-page document, follow these steps:

1. Select the **Print on Both Sides (Manually)** check box.
2. Click **OK**. The even-number pages of the document print.
3. When the control panel shows the **MANUALLY FEED** message, an instructional dialog box opens on your computer. Insert the stack of media (on which the even-number pages have been printed) as indicated in the following figure.

Figure 4-17 Print on Both Sides Instructions dialog box



When you have completed the steps in the dialog box, the second half of the print job prints on the back side of the sheets in the stack of media. The driver does not require the program to specifically support odd- and even-page printing, because the driver coordinates this function.

Flip pages up

Use the **Flip pages up** check box to specify the duplex-binding option. By default, this check box is available only when **Print on both sides** is selected.

The following table demonstrates the results of selecting this check box, depending on the media orientation selected on the **Finishing** tab.

Table 4-3 Page orientation

Orientation (Finishing tab)	Flip Pages Up selected	Flip Pages Up not selected
Portrait	Short-edge binding	Long-edge binding
Landscape	Long-edge binding	Short-edge binding

When **Print on Both Sides** is selected, the document preview image changes to show a spiral binding along either the left edge or the top edge of the page. In addition, a folded-over corner appears in the lower-right portion of the preview image, indicating that printing occurs on the back side. An arrow on the folded-over corner points in the direction that the pages would be flipped if they were bound together.

Short-edge binding is for print jobs with pages that read by flipping over like the pages of a calendar. Long-edge binding is for print jobs with pages that read by turning like the pages of a book.

Booklet layout

The **Booklet layout** drop-down menu, available when **Print on both sides** is selected, offers choices that are based on the current media size. The default setting for the **Booklet printing** drop-down menu is **Off**. The other settings have the following format, where **[paper size]** depends on the media size that is set on the **Paper/Quality** tab:

- **Left Edge Binding**
- **Right Edge Binding**

Selecting **Left Edge Binding** or **Right Edge Binding** changes the document preview image to show the location of the binding. If the **Pages per sheet** setting is on the default setting of 1, it automatically changes to **2 pages per sheet**. Changing the **Pages per sheet** setting manually to 4, 6, 9, or 16 pages per sheet disables the booklet setting.

Topics:

- [Book and booklet printing](#)
- [Print a booklet](#)

Book and booklet printing

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supports book and booklet printing.

A book is a print job that consists of at least two pages. It can have a different media type for the front cover, first page, other pages, last page, or back cover. Use the settings on the **Paper/Quality** tab

(available when you select the **Settings** under **Special Pages**) to select the following printing options for the book:

- **Covers:**
 - First
 - Last
 - Both
- **Print pages on different paper**
 - First
 - Last

A booklet is a print job that places two pages on each side of a sheet that can then be folded into a booklet that is half the size of the media. Use the **Booklet layout** drop-down menu on the **Finishing** tab to control booklet settings.

Print a booklet

Complete the following steps to print a booklet in most software programs.

1. Click **File**.
2. Click **Print**.
3. Click **Properties**.
4. Click the **Finishing** tab.
5. Select the **Print on both sides** check box.
6. In the **Booklet layout** drop-down menu, select the type of booklet printing that you want (for example, **Right Edge Binding**).
7. Click **OK** in the print driver.
8. Click **OK** in the print dialog box to print.

Pages per sheet

Use the **Pages per sheet** option to select the number of pages to print on a single sheet of media.

If you print more than one page per sheet, the pages appear smaller and are arranged on the sheet in the order that they would otherwise be printed. The **Pages per sheet** drop-down menu provides six settings:

- **1 page per sheet** (default)
- **2 pages per sheet**
- **4 pages per sheet**
- **6 pages per sheet**
- **9 pages per sheet**
- **16 pages per sheet**

 **NOTE:** Selecting an option other than **2 pages per sheet** makes booklet printing unavailable.

Print page borders

Related options indented beneath the **Pages per sheet** edit box are **Print page borders** and **Page order**, which become active when **Pages per sheet** is greater than 1.

Print page borders sets a line around each page image on a printed sheet to help visually define the borders of each logical page.

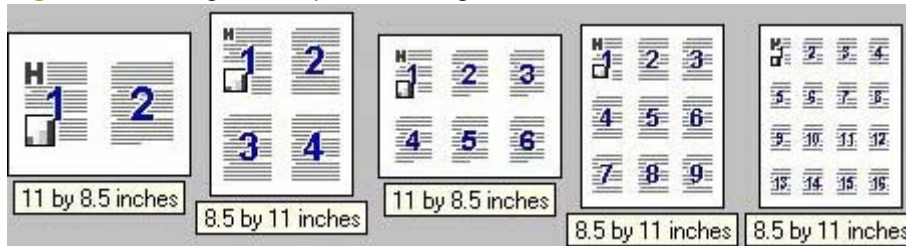
Page order

The **Page order** drop-down menu contains four selections:

- **Right, then Down**
- **Down, then Right**
- **Left, then Down**
- **Down, then Left**

The preview document image changes to reflect changes in these settings. The following figure shows examples of each setting on letter-size paper respectively: **2 pages per sheet**, **4 pages per sheet**, **6 pages per sheet**, **9 pages per sheet**, and **16 pages per sheet**.

Figure 4-18 Page-order preview images



Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.


Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-19 Document preview image



Orientation

Orientation refers to the layout of the image on the page, and does not affect the way media feeds into the MFP.

 **NOTE:** Because most programs establish page orientation, the driver options are useful only for the few software programs that do not set an orientation.

The **Orientation** group box contains the following options:

- **Portrait.** The top edge of the document is the shorter edge of the media. This is the default orientation.
- **Landscape.** The top edge of the document is the longer edge of the media.
- **Rotate by 180 degrees.** This creates a landscape or portrait orientation in which the image is rotated 180°. This setting is useful for printing on prepunched media. It does not change the document preview image.

Toggle orientation between portrait and landscape by clicking the document preview image.

Output tab features

To gain access to the **Output** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Output** tab.

The **Output** tab appearance can vary depending on the features installed. The following two figures show the **Output** tab with a stapler and an output bin installed, respectively.

Figure 4-20 Output tab—stapler installed

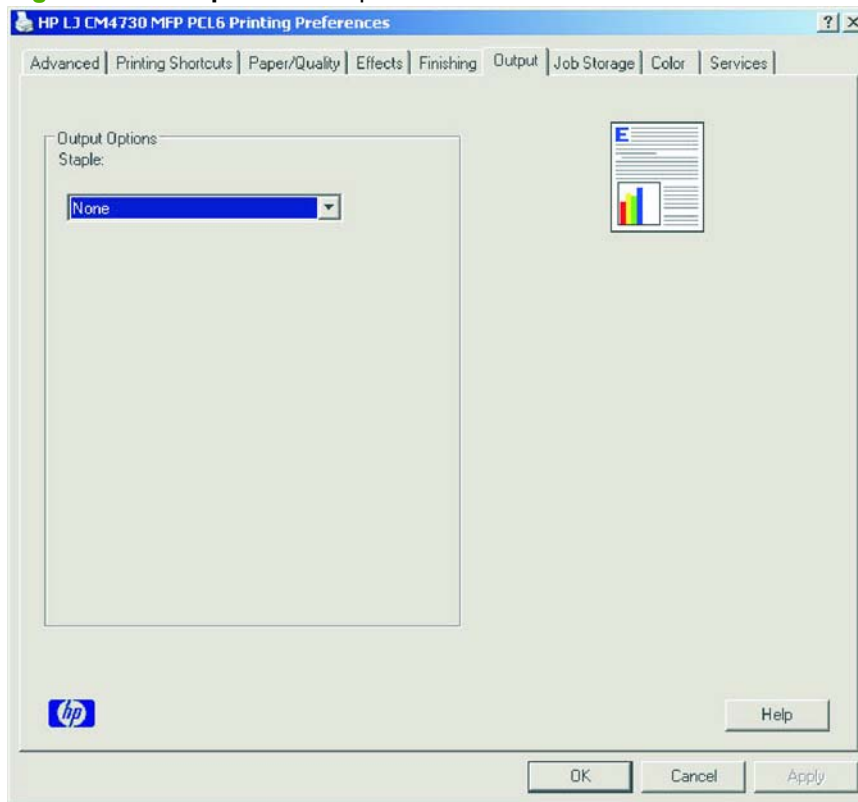
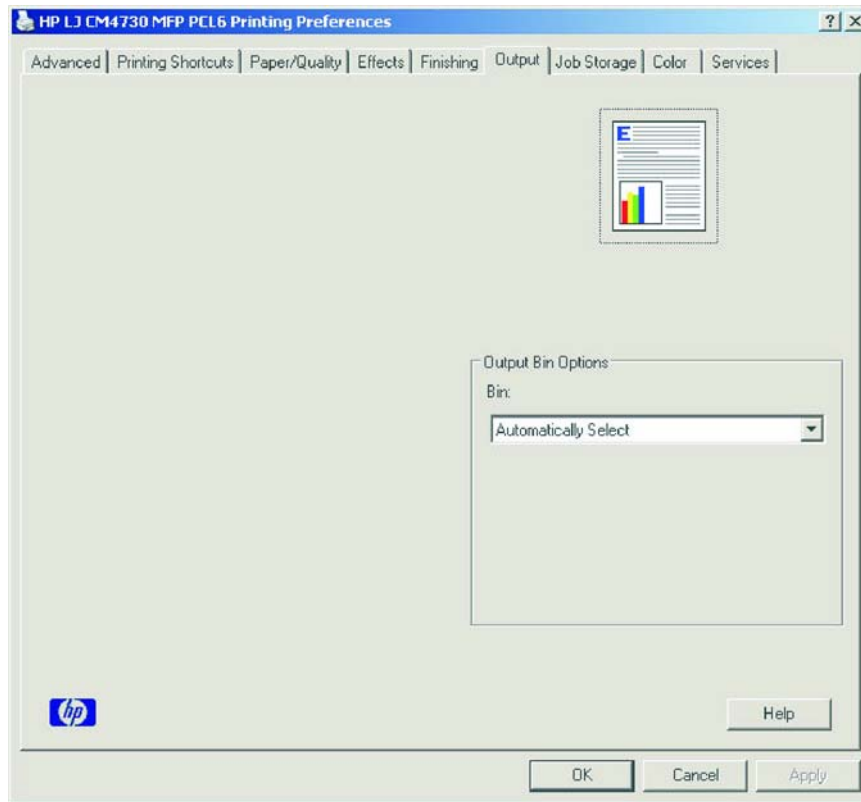


Figure 4-21 Output tab—output bin installed



The **Output** tab contains the following options:

- Output Options
- Output Bin Options
- Document preview image

Output Options

The **Output Options** group box contains the following:

Staple:

- **None** (default)
- **One Staple Angled (Max 30 Sheets)**

Output Bin Options

The **Output Bin Options** group box contains the following:

- **Automatically Select** (default)
- **Output Bin 1**
- **Output Bin 2**
- **Output Bin 3 (Highest Capacity)**

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. It is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-22 Document preview image



Job Storage tab features

To gain access to the **Job Storage** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Job Storage** tab.

Use the job-storage features to store print jobs in the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP memory for printing at a later time. These job-storage features are described in the following sections.

The **Job Storage** tab appears among the driver tabs only if the job-storage feature is enabled, and a hard disk is installed and configured.

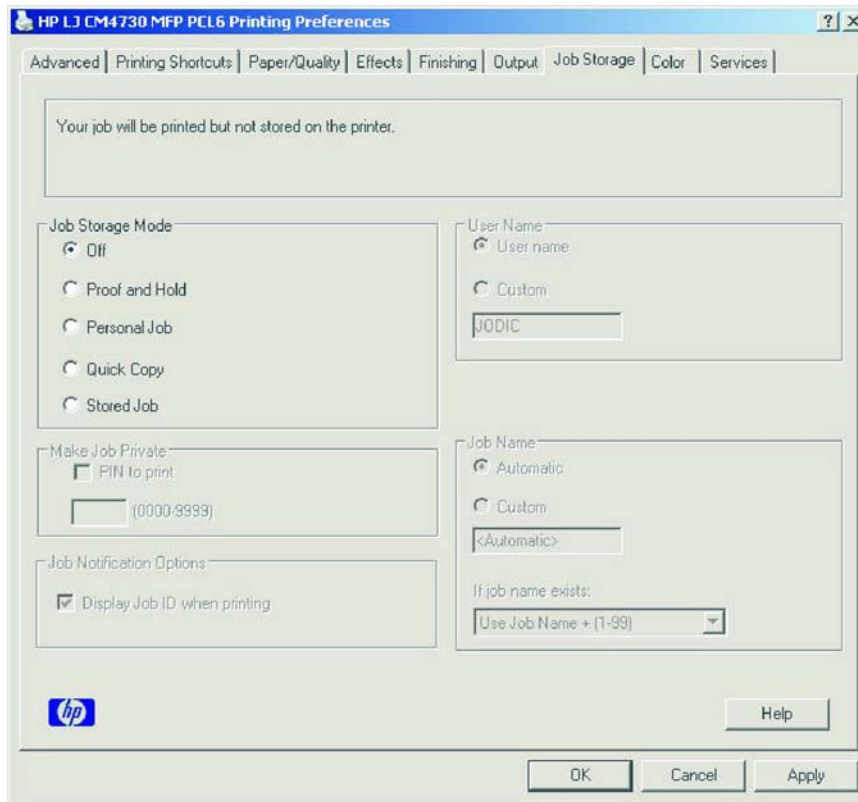
To disable the job-storage feature, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
7. Select **Job Storage**.
8. Select **Disabled** in the **Change 'Job Storage' Setting** dialog box that appears.

 **NOTE:** When the job-storage feature is disabled, the **Job Storage** driver tab is not visible.

The following figure shows the **Job Storage** tab.

Figure 4-23 Job Storage tab



The **Job Storage** tab contains the following options:

- [Status group box on page 155](#)
- [Job Storage Mode on page 155](#)
- [Make Job Private on page 157](#)
- [Job Notification Options on page 157](#)
- [User Name on page 158](#)
- [Job Name on page 158](#)

Status group box

The unlabeled group box on the **Job Storage** tab contains a status message about the destination of a print job. The status information changes depending on the selections that are made on the **Job Storage** tab.

Job Storage Mode

Use the **Job Storage Mode** options on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP to store documents at the device and then control their printing at the device control panel.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP offers the following **Job Storage Mode** options:

- [Off](#)
- [Proof and Hold](#)

- [Personal Job](#)
- [Quick Copy](#)
- [Stored Job](#)

Off

When selected, job storage is disabled. The print job will not be stored in the device.

Proof and Hold

To use the **Proof and Hold** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

Proof and Hold stores the print job in memory and prints only the first copy of the job, allowing you to check the first copy. If the document prints correctly, print the remaining copies at the control panel. Set the number of proof-and-hold print jobs that can be stored in the device at the control panel.

After it is released for printing, the proof-and-hold job is immediately deleted from the device. If more copies are needed, reprint the job from the software program. If you send a second proof-and-hold job that has the same user name and job name as an unreleased, the second job overwrites the existing one. Proof-and-hold jobs are deleted when the device is turned off.

The device configuration holds a maximum of 500 proof-and-hold jobs, and the default is 32. When this preset limit is reached, the new document overwrites the longest-held document.

The Quick Copy Job Limit setting affects all temporary jobs (those that will be lost if the device is power cycled). The Quick Copy Job Limit is a maximum for all of these jobs in any combination, but not individually. The Quick Copy Job Limit range is 1 to 300 with a default of 32.

Personal Job

To use the **Personal Job** option, the Job Storage feature must be enabled.

When **Personal Job** is selected, the print job is sent to the device but is not printed until a selection is made on the device control panel. Selecting **Personal Job** activates the **PIN** group box. The print job can be printed only after the correct PIN is typed at the control panel. After the job prints, it is immediately deleted from the device. This feature is useful when printing sensitive or confidential documents should not remain in an output bin after printing.

The Personal Job/PIN coupling has a PIN restriction of four ASCII numeric characters (0 through 9). Any non-numeric characters are removed immediately. When more than four characters are typed, the characters past the fourth are truncated. The field temporarily accepts fewer than four digits in the string, but when the edit field loses focus, zeroes pad the left end until the PIN contains exactly four digits. The default initialized value for the PIN is 0000 for **Personal Job**.

After it is released for printing, the private job is immediately deleted from the device. If more copies are needed, reprint the job from the software program. Sending a second private job that has the same user name and job name as an existing private job (when the original job has not been released for printing) overwrites the existing job, regardless of the PIN. Private jobs are deleted when the device is turned off.

The Quick Copy Job Limit setting affects all temporary jobs (those that will be lost if the device is power cycled). The Quick Copy Job Limit is a maximum for all of these jobs in any combination, but not individually. The Quick Copy Job Limit range is 1 to 300 with a default of 32.

Quick Copy

To use the **Quick Copy** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

After the job prints, use the device control panel to print more copies of the job without scanning.

Quick Copy Jobs are lost if the device is turned off. Quick Copy Jobs are not pin protected.

The Quick Copy Job Limit setting affects all temporary jobs (those that will be lost if the device is power cycled). The Quick Copy Job Limit is a maximum for all of these jobs in any combination, but not individually. The Quick Copy Job Limit range is 1 to 300 with a default of 32.

Stored Job

To use the **Stored Job** option, the job-storage feature must be enabled.

The job is stored in the device and is printed when the job is requested from the device control panel. After the job prints, a copy remains in storage that can be reprinted. Use this storage for forms and other common or shared documents.

The **PIN to print** option can be used to assign a PIN to access the stored jobs. These jobs are stored on the device hard disk and will not be lost if the device is turned off. Stored jobs remain on the device until deleted at the device control panel.

The maximum number of stored jobs is limited by device memory. No more than 300 jobs is recommended.

Make Job Private

A PIN is required when **Personal Job** is selected.

The **PIN to print** check box is selected, but not available. Type a four-digit PIN number in the box provided. The stored job is sent to the MFP, where the user must type the four-digit PIN on the control panel to retrieve the stored job.

Job Notification Options

Clicking a **Job Storage Mode** option activates the **User Name** and **Job Name** options. The **Display Job ID when printing** check box is selected by default. The **Display Job ID when printing** option opens a pop-up dialog box on the desktop when the stored job is printed. The dialog box shows the user name and job name that are associated with the stored print job, as well as the MFP name, port, and location.

The following figure is an example of the Job Notification dialog box.

Figure 4-24 Job Notification dialog box — Job Storage Identification



User Name

Use the **User Name** settings to help identify the job at the MFP control panel. The following are the **User Name** settings:

- **Windows User Name.** This option associates the Windows user name with the stored print job. The Windows user name automatically appears in the text field below the **Windows User Name** options.
- **Custom.** Use this option to type a custom name for the stored print job. Clicking **Custom** makes the text field below the option available. The **Custom** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z and 0 through 9 because the name appears on the MFP control-panel display. Any typed character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character beyond 16 is removed.

Job Name

Use the **Job Name** options to specify a name to identify the job at the MFP control panel. The following are the **Job Name** settings:

- **<Automatic>.** This option, which is the default selection, automatically generates the job name that is associated with the stored print job. The file name of the print job is used if it is available to the print driver. Otherwise, the software program name or a time stamp is used for the job name.
- **Custom.** Use this to type a custom job name for the stored print job. When you click the **Custom**, the text field below the option becomes available. In those languages for which **<Automatic>** cannot be translated without the use of invalid characters, the driver uses a string of three dashes. The acceptable characters for job name and user name vary for each operating system. The string must be of a length and type that can appear on the MFP control-panel display.

The **Job Name** field can contain no more than 16 characters, and is limited to A through Z (uppercase or lowercase) and 0 through 9 so that the name can appear on the MFP control-panel display. Any typed character in an ASCII code of fewer than 32 or more than 126 characters is removed from the edit field, along with all of the characters that follow it. Any character beyond 16 is truncated.

When the dialog box is closed, or as soon as the focus is removed from the control (that is, when the **TAB** key is pressed or another control is selected), an empty string is replaced with **<Automatic>**.

If Job Name Exists. When storing a print job, create a print-job name or allow the MFP software to assign one automatically. If a print job that has the same name already exists, the new print job overwrites the existing print job. To eliminate the chances of a new print job overwriting an old print job because both have the same name, select **Use Job Name + (1-99)**. When the print-job name exists, the MFP software assigns a number between 1 and 99 to the end of the print job name to make it unique. Select **Replace Existing File** to always have the MFP software overwrite an existing print job that has the same print job name.

Using job-storage features when printing

Clicking the print icon in the software program toolbar prints the job without using job-storage features.

To use job-storage features when printing, follow these steps:

1. Click **File** and then click **Print** from the software program. The **Print** dialog box appears.
2. Click **Properties**. The document **Properties** dialog box appears.
3. Click the **Job Storage** tab.
4. Select the job-storage options by clicking the appropriate option button, and then complete any required fields.
5. Click **OK**.

Topics:

- [Releasing a job-storage print job](#)
- [Deleting a job-storage print job](#)

Releasing a job-storage print job

After sending a print job that uses the job-storage feature, release the job to print from the device control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. In the **Retrieve** tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. The folder that contains the stored jobs opens.
3. Touch the appropriate job.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.

4. To print job, press the **Select** button.

Deleting a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the device memory. Do this from the device control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch appropriate document.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.

4. Touch **Delete**.
5. A message appears: **Do you want to delete this stored job?**
Touch **Yes**. The document is deleted.

Or, do the following:

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch appropriate document.
4. Touch **Delete**.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is deleted.

Color tab features

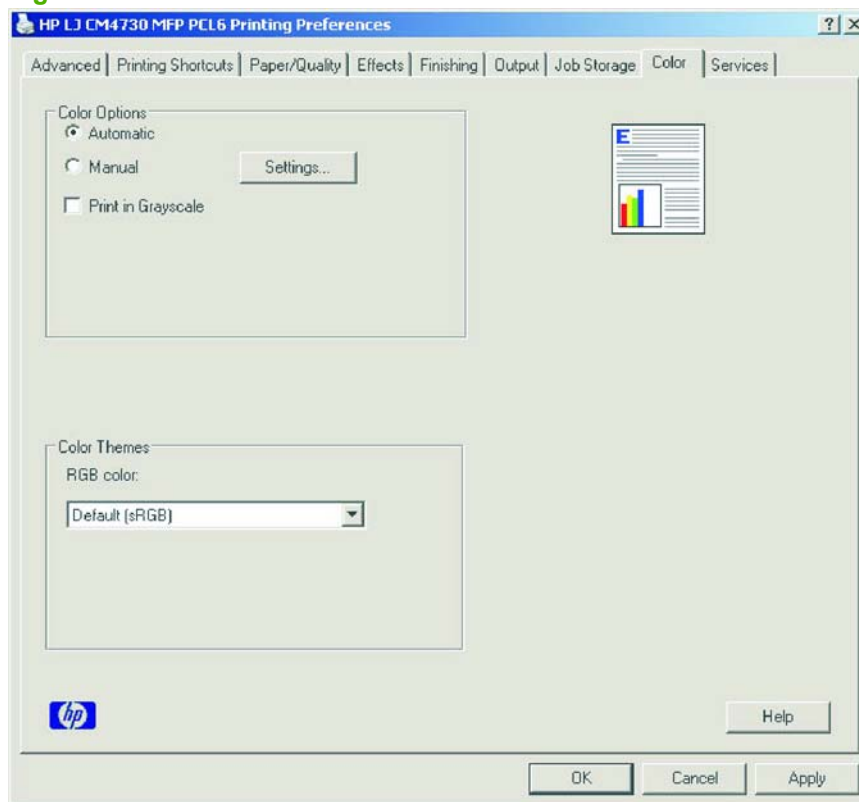
To gain access to the **Color** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Color** tab.

Use the **Color** tab to specify predefined color-option settings or to fine-tune the color treatments and halftoning. Color output can also be converted to grayscale.

The **Color** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-25 Color tab



The **Color** tab contains the following sets of controls:

- [Color Options](#)
- [Color Themes](#)
- [Document preview image](#)

Color Options

Use the **Color Options** group box to adjust the independent color controls. The settings affect the print job color rendering and print quality. The **Color Options** group box contains the following controls:

- **Automatic** option (default)
- **Manual** option
- **Settings** button (that opens the **Color Settings** dialog box)
- **Print in Grayscale** check box

Automatic

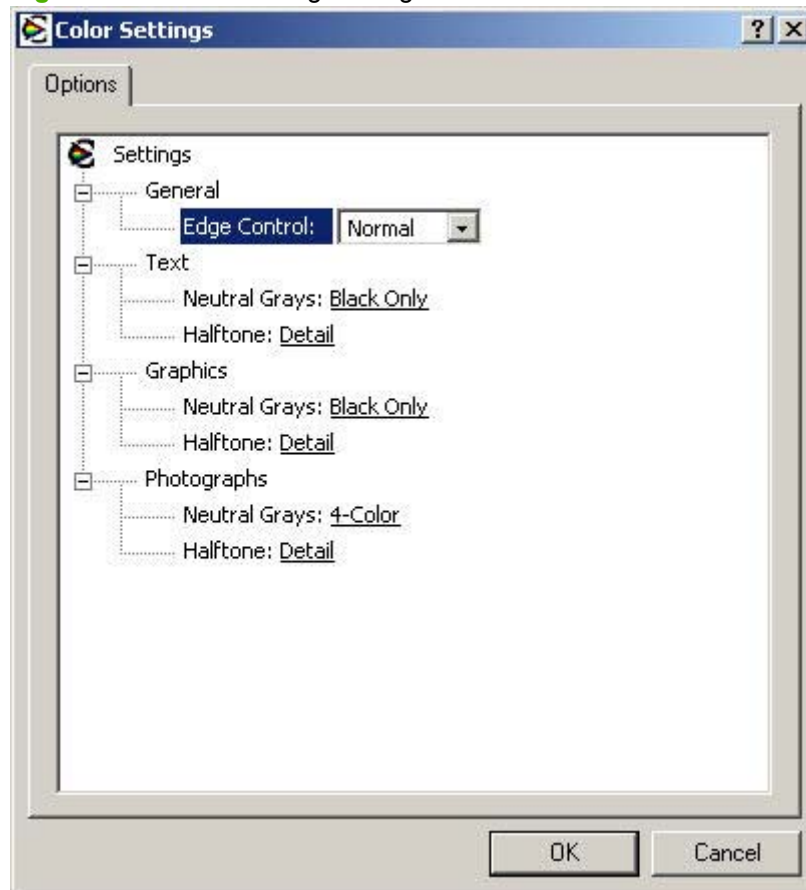
Use the **Automatic** option for default color settings that automatically fine-tune the printed output. The **Automatic** default color settings provide high-quality output for most color printing needs.

Manual

To change the default color settings, select the **Manual** option, and then click the **Settings** button. The **Color Settings** dialog box appears.

To change the settings, make your selections by using the drop-down menus in the **Color Settings** dialog box, and then click **OK**. The following figure shows the **Color Settings** dialog box with "Custom" settings.

Figure 4-26 Color Settings dialog box



The **Color Settings** dialog box contains the following controls:

- **General**
 - **Edge Control**
- **Text**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Graphics**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**
- **Photographs**
 - **Neutral Grays**
 - **Halftone**

General

Use the **General** setting group to control **Edge Control** settings for all color printing.

Edge Control determines how edges are rendered. **Edge Control** consists of three components: Adaptive Halftoning, Trapping, and Color Resolution Enhancement technology (C-REt). Adaptive Halftoning increases the edge sharpness. Trapping reduces the effect of color plane misregistration by slightly overlapping the edges of adjacent objects. C-REt increases the apparent resolution by placing each dot for the smoothest edges.

The **Edge Control** option offers four settings:

- **Off.** The **Off** setting turns Trapping, Adaptive Halftoning, and C-REt to **Off**.
- **Light.** The **Light** setting provides minimal trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On** and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Normal.** The **Normal** setting provides the default trapping settings. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.
- **Maximum.** The **Maximum** setting provides the most trapping. Adaptive Halftoning is set to **On**, and C-REt is set to **On**.

Neutral Grays

The **Neutral Grays** drop-down menu controls the selection of a MFP-dependent color table that is embedded in the product firmware. The options are **Black Only** or **4-Color**. You can adjust the **Neutral Grays** setting independently for text, graphics, or photographs.

- **Black Only.** This option generates neutral colors (grays and black) by using only black toner. This option guarantees that neutral colors do not have a color cast. **Black Only** is the default setting for the **Text** and **Graphics** components.
- **4-Color.** This option generates neutral colors by combining all four colors of toner, which produces smoother gradients and transitions to non-neutral colors. It also produces the darkest possible black. **4-Color** is the default setting for **Photographs**.

Halftone

The **Halftone** setting controls the selection of a product-dependent halftone algorithm that is embedded in the product firmware. Halftoning is a method by which the printer mixes the four primary colors (cyan, magenta, yellow, and black) in varying proportions to create millions of colors. The **Halftone** options affect the resolution and clarity of the color on the printed page. You can select **Halftone** settings for text, graphics, and photographs independently.

The following Halftone options are available:

- **Detail.** This is the default option; it is useful for text and graphics that require sharp distinctions among lines or colors, or for images that contain a pattern or a high level of detail. Choose this option for sharp edges and detail.
- **Smooth.** This option provides better results for large, solid-filled print areas. It also enhances photographs by smoothing out fine color gradations. Choose this option for uniform and smooth area fills.

Color Themes

The Color Themes group box contains the following settings:

- [Default \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Image Optimization \(sRGB\)](#)
- [Adobe RGB \(1998\)](#)
- [None](#)
- [Custom Profile](#)

Default (sRGB)

Select **Default (sRGB)** for most printing needs. This setting instructs the printer to interpret RGB color as sRGB, which is the accepted standard of Microsoft and the World Wide Web Consortium (W3C). Colors are matched to optimize the RGB colors on the screen and to provide vivid images and graphics.

Image Optimization (sRGB)

Select **Image optimization (sRGB)** to enhance documents in which the content is mainly bitmap images, such as .GIF or .JPG files. This setting instructs the printer to use the best color matching for rendering sRGB bitmap images. This setting affects only raster data; it has no effect on text or vector-

based graphics. Using glossy media in combination with this setting provides the maximum enhancement.

Adobe RGB (1998)

Select **AdobeRGB (1998)** for documents that use the Adobe RGB color space rather than sRGB. For example, some digital cameras capture images in Adobe RGB, and documents that are produced with Adobe Photoshop® use the Adobe RGB color space. When printing from a professional software program that uses Adobe RGB, turn off the color management in the software program and allow the printer software to manage the color space.

None

Select **None** to instruct the printer to print RGB data in raw MFP mode. To render documents correctly when this option is selected, you must manage color within the software program or the operating system.

△ **CAUTION:** Use this option only if you are familiar with the procedures for managing color in the software program or the operating system; otherwise, color quality can be compromised.

Custom Profile

Custom Profile. Select **Custom Profile** when you want to duplicate the printed output from other printers or for using special effects, such as sepia tones. This setting instructs the printer to use a custom input profile to more accurately predict and control color output.

The default Custom Profile is an emulation of the color table used on the HP Color LaserJet 4650. The printer holds only one custom profile at a time, so when you download and install another color table, it erases the default color table and installs the new one.

You can download custom profiles from the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

See [International Color Consortium profiles on page 38](#) and [PANTONE color profiles on page 39](#) for more information.

Document preview image

The document preview image is a line-drawn image of a page that represents graphics and text. The document preview image is always oriented so that the contents of the page are right-side-up.

Move the cursor over the document preview image to change the cursor from an arrow to a gloved hand. Toggle between portrait and landscape page orientation by clicking the image.

Figure 4-27 Document preview image



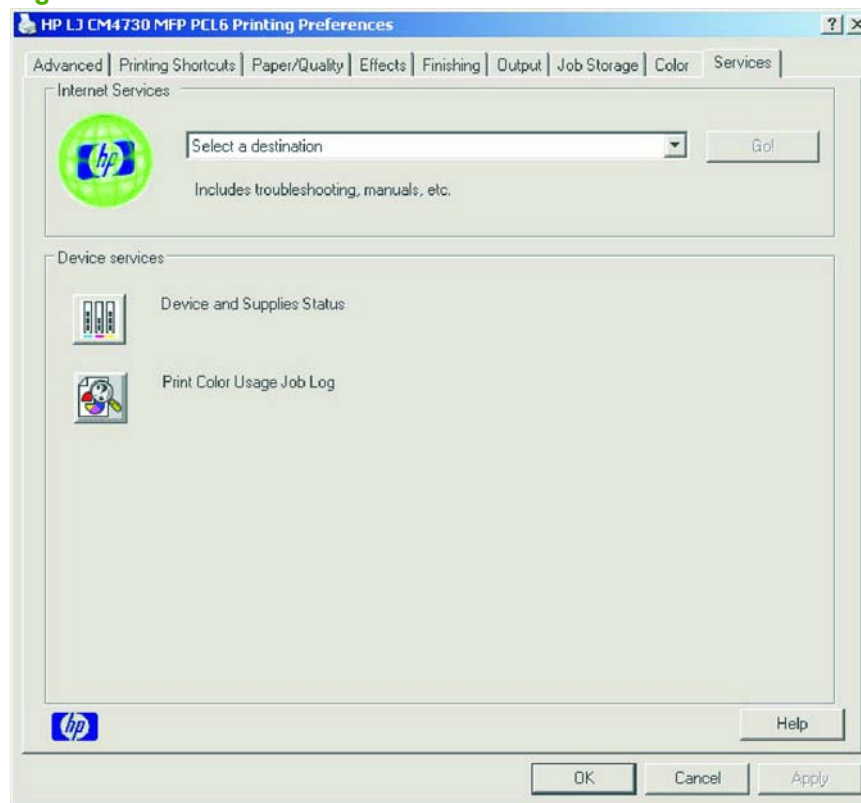
Services tab features

To gain access to the **Services** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) and **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Printing Preferences**.
6. Click the **Services** tab.

The **Services** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-28 Services tab



The **Services** tab contains the following features:

- [Internet Services](#)
- [Device services](#)

Internet Services

The **Internet Services** group box contains the **Select a destination** drop-down menu with the following selections:

- **Online diagnostic tools.** Opens the HP Instant Support Web site, which contains interactive tools and contacts for troubleshooting.
- **Support and troubleshooting.** Opens the product page for the HP Business Center.
- **Product manuals.** Opens a Web page to view or download HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP MFP manuals.
- **Check for driver updates.** Checks the print drivers to see whether the correct and most up-to-date print drivers are installed.
- **Color printing access/usage.** Opens the Color Access Control (CAC) page, which provides tools and information to facilitate printing in color. Information on the CAC page include the following:
 - **Maximize color value.**
 - **Monitor color printing by user or application.**
 - **Easily control who as access to color printing.**
 - **Bill internal departments for color printing.** (using third-party applications)
- **Shop for supplies.** Opens the HP SureSupply Web page and shop online for HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supplies.

If you have Internet access, select any of these items and click **Go!** to open the corresponding HP Web page.

Device services

The **Device services** section provides two click-able icons:

- **Device and Supplies status.** Opens the **Device Status** screen of the HP EWS.
- **Print color usage and job log.** Prints the **Color Usage Job Log** for the MFP, which includes printer information, usage totals, and the MFP job log.

Device Settings tab features

On the printer Properties, only the **Device Settings** tab and **About** tab are unique to the device; all other tabs are part of the operating system.

The **Device Settings** tab is in the Properties window for the print driver. To gain access to the Device Settings tab, follow these steps:

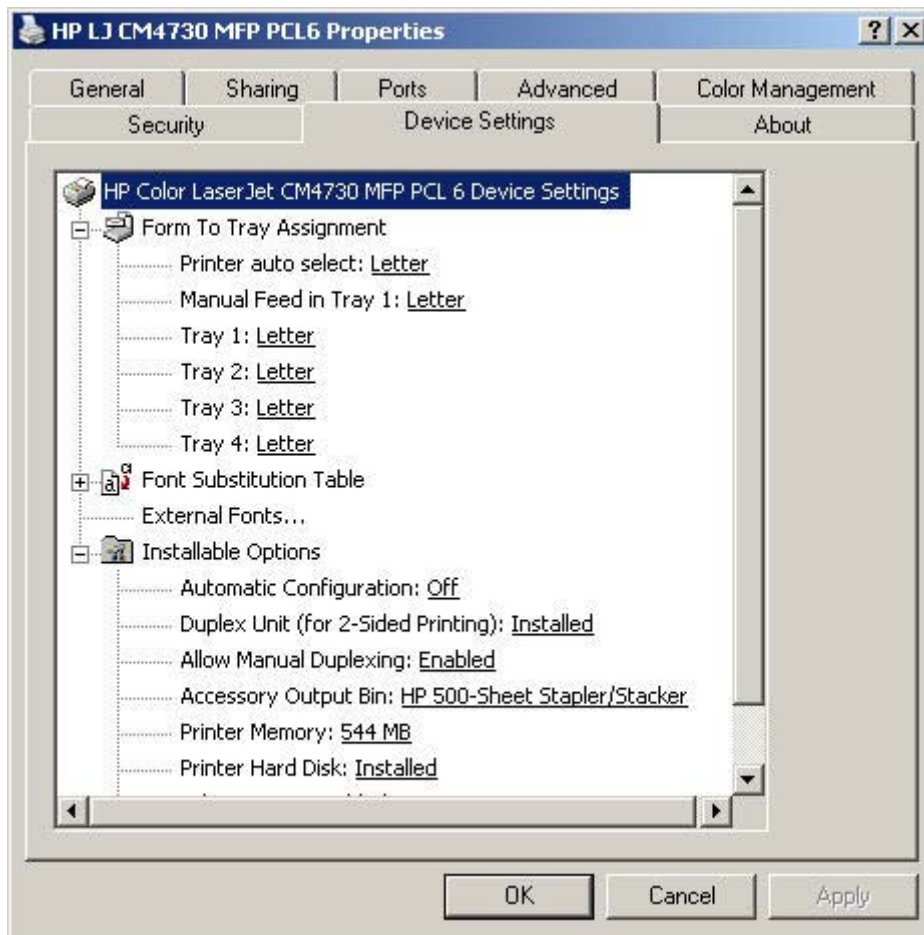
1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Device Settings** tab.

The **Device Settings** tab contains controls for media-handling devices and controls for managing the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Available options depend on the driver and the particular feature.

The following figure shows the **Device Settings** tab for the HP PCL 6 driver.

Figure 4-29 HP PCL 6 driver Device Settings tab



The following figures shows the **Device Settings** tab for the PS Emulation driver.

Figure 4-30 PS Emulation driver **Device Settings** tab, 1 of 2

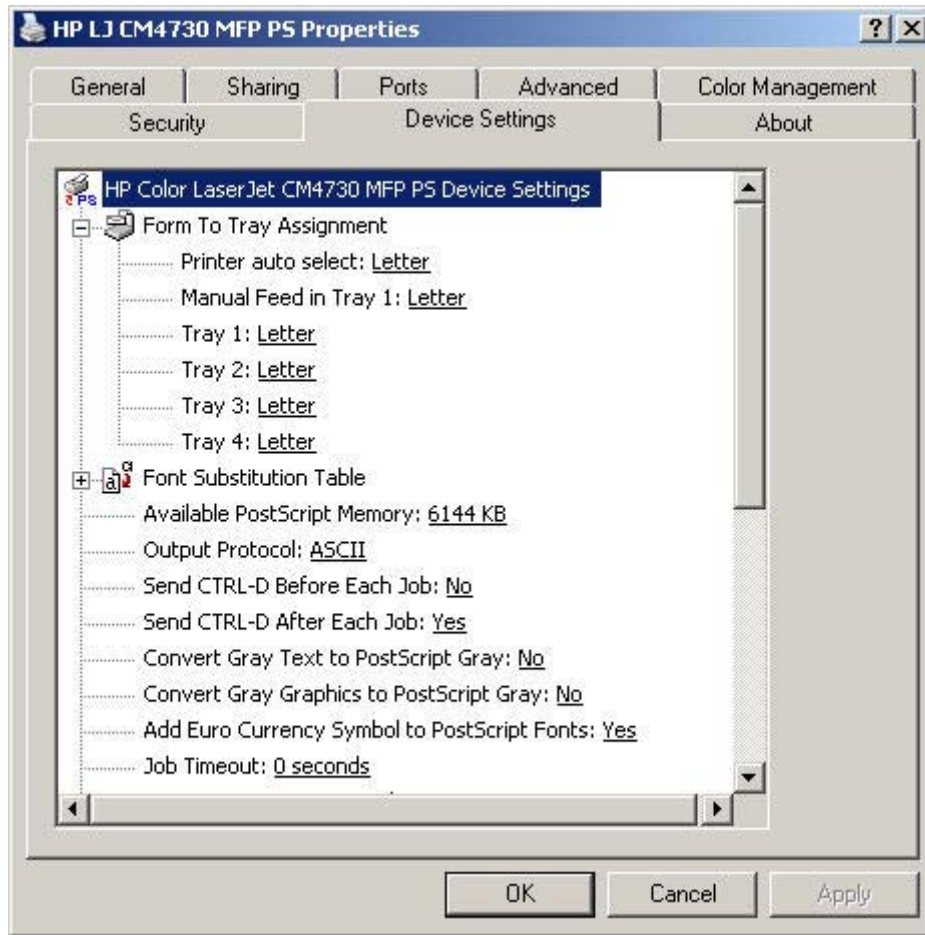
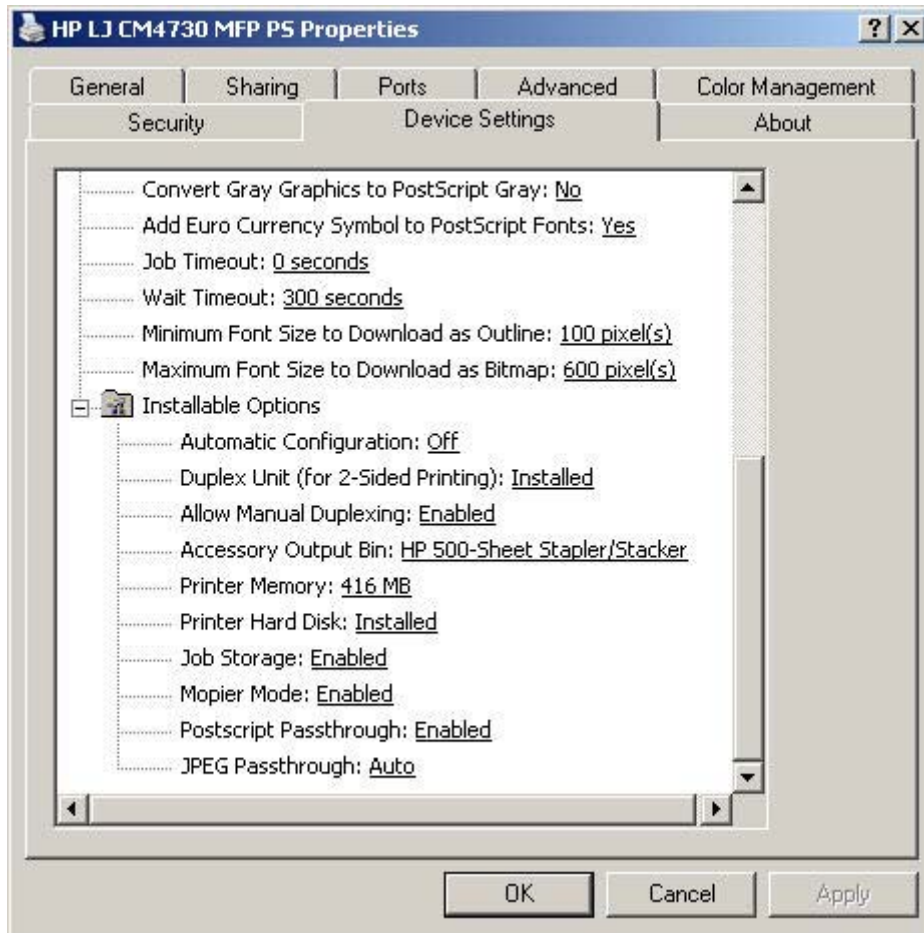


Figure 4-31 PS emulation driver **Device Settings** tab, 2 of 2



The **Device Settings** tab contains the following controls:

- [Form to Tray Assignment on page 171](#)
- [Font Substitution Table on page 172](#)
- [External Fonts on page 172](#)
- [Installable Options on page 174](#)

Form to Tray Assignment

A network administrator can use **Form to Tray Assignment** to specify the media size in each input tray.

Network administrators can use the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting to specify, in the driver, the media size that is loaded into each available input tray. The use of forms constrains the choices that are available in the media-size list on the **Paper/Quality** tab in the **Printing Preferences** driver tabs. This constraint prevents (or reduces the likelihood of) tying up the MFP with media-mount messages that occur when users request sizes or types that are not available.

The trays listed in the **Form to Tray Assignment** setting include standard trays and optional accessory trays. Generally, items that are installed separately have a separate **Installable Options** setting.

The input trays listed here are also listed as media sources on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Configuring the trays

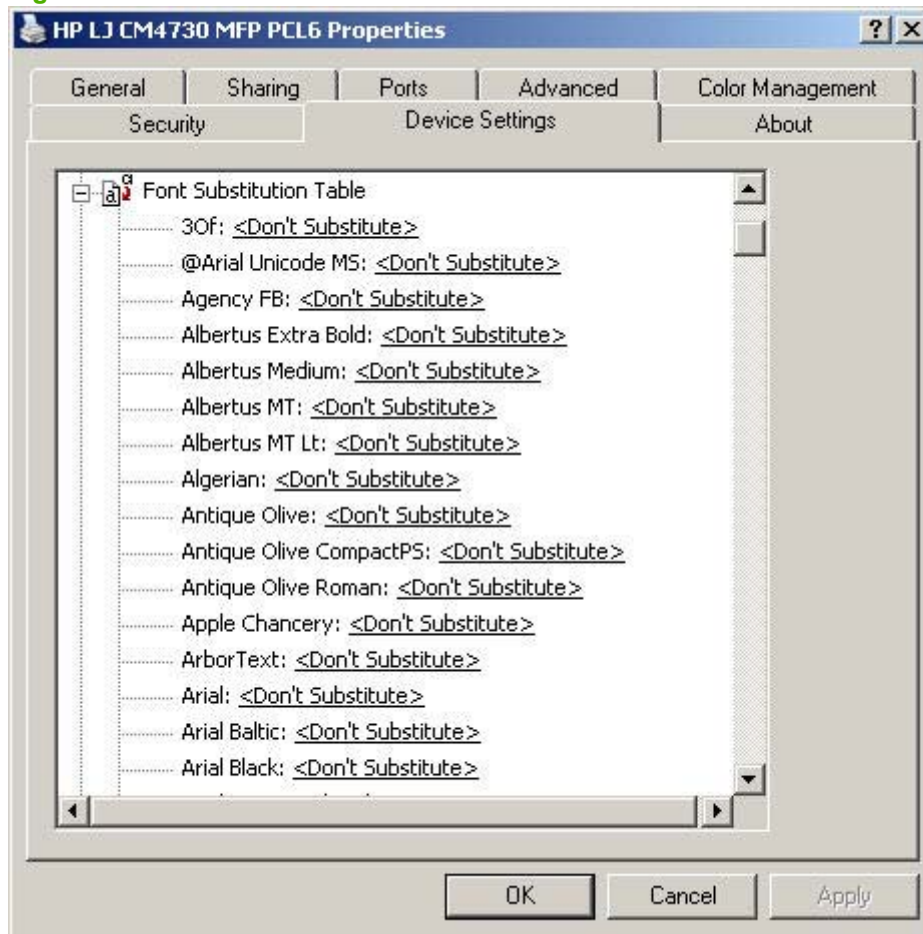
1. Select the appropriate tray in the **Form to Tray Assignment** list.
2. Use the drop-down menu to select the media size (or form) that is loaded in that tray.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 for the remaining trays.
4. Click **OK** to enable the settings, or, if necessary, click **Cancel** to reconfigure all the trays and remove the size and type constraints that have been imposed on the **Paper/Quality** tab.

Font Substitution Table

Use the **Font Substitution Table** settings to install and remove external fonts for the MFP. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **Font Substitution Table** option to open a list of fonts, as show in the following figure. Use the settings to change the TrueType-to-printer font mappings.

Figure 4-32 Font Substitution Table



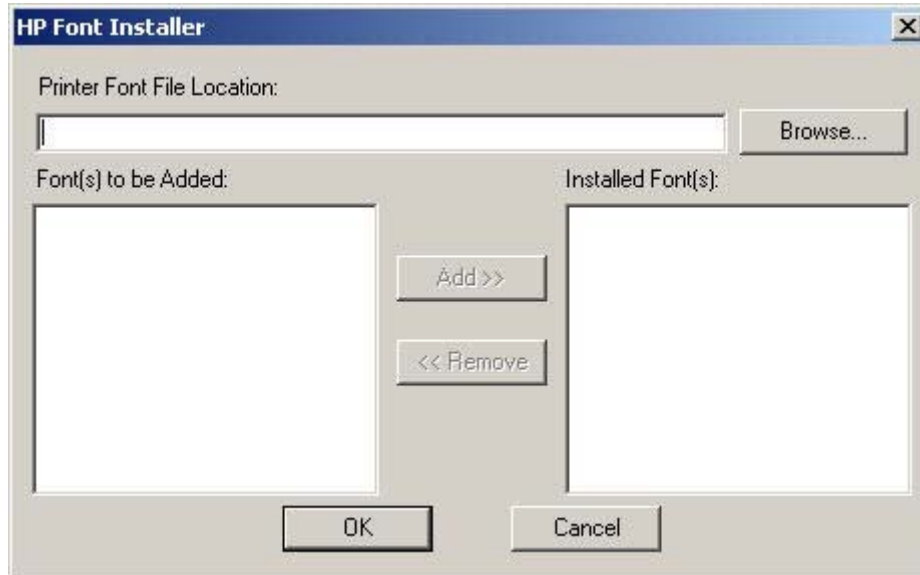
External Fonts

NOTE: The External Fonts option is available only in the HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers. It is not available in the PS Emulation driver.

Use the **External Fonts** option to install and remove external fonts for the MFP. External fonts can be soft fonts or DIMM fonts.

Click the **External Fonts** option to make the **Properties** button available. Click **Properties** to open the **HP Font Installer** dialog box, which is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-33 HP Font Installer dialog box



Topics:

- [Installing external fonts](#)
- [Removing external fonts](#)

Installing external fonts

Follow these steps to install external fonts.

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the name of the MFP.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
7. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
8. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears.
9. Type the name and path of the font metric file in the **Printer Font File Location** text box, or click **Browse** to locate the file on the computer. The font file names appear in the **Font(s) to be Added** window.

10. Select the fonts to add, and then click **Add**. The fonts are installed and the file names appear in the **Installed Font(s)** window.
11. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Removing external fonts

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the name of the MFP.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **Device Settings** tab.
7. Click the **External Fonts** option. The **Properties** button appears.
8. Click **Properties**. The **HP Font Installer** dialog box appears. The external fonts that are installed appear in the **Installed Fonts** window.
9. Select the fonts to remove, and then click **Remove**. The fonts are removed.
10. Click **OK** to close the **HP Font Installer** dialog box.

Installable Options

Topics:

- [Automatic Configuration on page 174](#)
- [Duplex Unit \(for 2-Sided Printing\) on page 175](#)
- [Allow Manual Duplexing on page 175](#)
- [Accessory Output Bin on page 175](#)
- [Printer Memory on page 175](#)
- [Printer Hard Disk on page 175](#)
- [Job Storage on page 175](#)
- [Mopier Mode on page 175](#)

Automatic Configuration

Use the **Device Settings** tab to tell the driver about the hardware configuration of the MFP. If bidirectional communication is enabled in a supported environment, set up this tab by selecting the **Update Now** setting in the **Automatic Configuration** setting. The default setting is **Off**. After an automatic configuration, the setting returns to **Off** after the changes are made.

If the computer environment does not support bidirectional communication, the **Update Now** setting is unavailable, the options on this tab must be manually configured.

If more than one driver is installed for the MFP (for example, the default HP PCL 6 and PCL 5 drivers), the Update Now feature works automatically only on the driver on which it is activated. The other driver will not be updated, and might show the default setting for the specific MFP model.

Duplex Unit (for 2-Sided Printing)

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP comes with a duplex unit installed. This setting is enabled (**Installed**) by default.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supports smart duplexing. The MFP uses the smart duplexing feature to detect information on both sides of the print job pages and only runs the pages through the duplexing unit if printable information appears on the second side of the page.

Allow Manual Duplexing

Select **Allow Manual Duplexing** to print on both sides of any size and most types of media (except transparencies, envelopes, and labels). To use this feature, reinsert the media stack into the input tray to print the second side. The MFP pauses while the user makes this adjustment.

This setting is enabled by default.

Accessory Output Bin

- **HP 3-bin Mailbox – Mailbox Mode:** When configured for the mailbox mode, the 3-bin mailbox stacks print media in each bin as determined by the print job specifications. For example, one user might have all jobs delivered to the bottom bin, and another user might have all jobs delivered to the top bin.
- **HP 3-bin Mailbox – Stacker Mode:** When configured for stacker mode, the 3-bin mailbox fills the bottom output bin (bin 3) and then fills the next highest bin.
- **HP 3-bin Mailbox – Function Separator Mode:** When configured for the function-separator mode, the 3-bin mailbox delivers print media to each bin as specified by the job type. For example, all copy jobs might be delivered to the top bin, and all faxes might be delivered to the middle bin.

Printer Memory

This option matches the setting to the amount of memory that is installed in the MFP. The driver generates ranges of memory that can be selected, up to the maximum that the MFP can accept. The driver can use this information to manage how the print driver uses the MFP memory.

Printer Hard Disk

This option indicates whether or not the hard disk is installed. Generally, the hard disk is installed by default.

Job Storage

When **Job Storage** is enabled, the MFP can store print jobs so that you can gain access to those print jobs later at the control panel.

Mopier Mode

-
- △ **CAUTION:** Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Finishing** tab features.
-

The multiple-original print (mopy) function is an HP-designed feature that produces multiple, collated copies from a single print job. Multiple-original printing (mopying) increases performance and reduces network traffic by transmitting the job to the MFP once, and then storing it in memory. The remainder of the copies are printed at the fastest speed. All documents that are printed in mopier mode can be created, controlled, managed, and finished from the computer, which eliminates the extra step of using a photocopier.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP supports the transmit-once mopying feature when the **Mopier Mode**: setting on the **Device Settings** tab is **Enabled**.

Use the HP PCL 6, PCL 5, or PS emulation driver to perform mopying in one of two ways: either through the software or through the MFP hardware. When the mopier is enabled, mopying takes place through the MFP hardware by default. One copy of a multiple-page print job is transmitted once through the network to the MFP, together with a printer job language (PJM) command directing the MFP to make the specified number of copies.

When the mopier is disabled, mopying is not necessarily disabled. The driver can perform through the software rather than the MFP hardware (the mopying path that is disabled when you change the **Mopy Mode** setting to **Disabled**). However, sending a multiple-copy print job when the mopier is disabled eliminates the advantage of transmitting the print job once, because the job is sent through the network for each copy.

Mopier mode and collation

△ **CAUTION:** Disabling **Mopier Mode** disrupts functionality for the **Finishing** tab features.

Mopying and collating print jobs are independent but closely related functions. The print driver performs mopying, sending original print jobs to the MFP. The print driver or the document software program control collation. The mopying mode is selected by default in the driver, and can be disabled by changing the **Mopier Mode** setting on the **Device Settings** tab to **Disabled**.

Control collation through the print driver by selecting or clearing the **Collated** check box on the **Advanced** tab. Clear the check box, which is available only when the **Copy Count** option is set to more than 1 copy, to allow the software program to control collation.

To receive uncollated multiple copies of a print job, you must clear the **Collated** check box *and* make sure that the software program collation feature is not selected.

The following table shows the relation between mopier mode settings and collation settings in the software program and the driver. The first three columns show the settings. The last column, "Expected result", shows how a 3-page print job would appear.

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Disabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated
Disabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Disabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Not selected	Not selected	3 copies uncollated
Enabled	Not selected	Selected	3 copies uncollated

Table 4-4 Driver mopier mode and collation settings (continued)

Mopier mode	Application collation	Driver collation	Expected result
Enabled	Selected	Not selected	3 copies collated
Enabled	Selected	Selected	3 copies collated

PS Emulation driver Device Settings

The following controls are available and appear only in the PS Emulation driver **Device Settings** tab:

- [Available PostScript Memory](#)
- [Output Protocol](#)
- [Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job](#)
- [Send Ctrl-D After Each Job](#)
- [Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray](#)
- [Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray](#)
- [Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts](#)
- [Job Timeout](#)
- [Wait Timeout](#)
- [Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline](#)
- [Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap](#)
- [Postscript Passthrough](#)
- [JPEG Passthrough](#)
- [Installable Options](#)

Available PostScript Memory

This control specifies the amount of available postscript memory and provides a spin box for changing this value. The available postscript memory is a subset of the MFP's total physical memory. It is usually best to set the postscript memory to match the total RAM that appears on the configuration page.

To print a configuration page from the MFP control panel, follow these steps:

1. Touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Configuration page**.
5. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.

Output Protocol

This control specifies the protocol that the MFP uses for print jobs. The following options are available:

- **ASCII** (default)
- **TBCP**
- **Binary**

Click **ASCII** to send data in ASCII format (7-bit), which might take longer to print but can be sent through any I/O channel, such as a serial or network port.

Click **TBCP** (Tagged Binary Communications Protocol) to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Click **Binary** to send all data except special control characters in binary (8-bit) format. The binary formats can be sent over serial communications ports and are faster than sending data in ASCII format.

Send Ctrl-D Before Each Job

This control specifies whether the MFP is reset at the beginning of every postscript document. The default setting is **No**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that previous print jobs do not affect the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a MFP connected through serial ports, change **No** to **Yes**.

Send Ctrl-D After Each Job

This control specifies whether the MFP is reset at the end of every postscript document. The default setting is **Yes**. Pressing **Ctrl-D** resets the MFP to its default setting to ensure that future print jobs are not affected by the current print job. Using **Ctrl-D** might cause a print job to fail if the MFP is connected through a network. If the document fails to print when sent to a network MFP, change **Yes** to **No**.

Convert Gray Text to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in text to the gray that the driver provides. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No** (default)

Convert Gray Graphics to PostScript Gray

This control specifies whether to convert the true gray value (RGB) in graphics to the gray provided by the driver. The following settings are available:

- **Yes**
- **No** (default)

Add Euro Currency Symbol to PostScript Fonts

This control specifies whether to add the euro symbol to the MFP fonts. The following settings are available:

- **Yes** (default)
- **No**

Job Timeout

This control specifies how long the document can take to get from the computer to the MFP before the MFP stops trying to print the document. If you specify **0 seconds**, the MFP continues trying to print indefinitely. The default setting is **0 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Wait Timeout

This control specifies how long the MFP waits to get more postscript information from the computer. After the specified time passes, the MFP stops trying to print the document and prints an error message. When printing a very complicated document, increase this value. If you specify **0 seconds**, the MFP waits indefinitely. The default setting is **300 seconds**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767 seconds**.

Minimum Font Size to Download as Outline

This control specifies the minimum font size (in pixels) for which the driver downloads TrueType fonts as outline (Type 1) fonts. Any font smaller than the minimum setting is downloaded as a bitmap (Type 3) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **100 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Maximum Font Size to Download as Bitmap

This control specifies the maximum font size (in pixels) for which the driver will download TrueType fonts as bitmap (Type 3) fonts. Any font larger than the maximum setting will be downloaded as an outline (Type 1) font. Use this option to fine-tune the **Automatic** setting or override the **Send TrueType as Bitmap** setting for the **TrueType Font Download** option on the **Advanced** tab in **Document Defaults**. The default setting is **600 pixel(s)**. Use the spin box to change this value, up to a maximum of **32,767** pixels.

Postscript Passthrough

Postscript Passthrough is enabled by default, and must be enabled for most print jobs. Postscript passthrough provides additional capabilities for some software programs when printing to a postscript driver. Options such as **Watermarks**, **Pages per sheet** and **Booklet Printing** might not print correctly from some software programs with **Postscript Passthrough** enabled, because such programs send postscript information that the driver cannot control. Other programs might print using these options without problems. Select **Disabled** and print the document again if you encounter problems.

 **NOTE:** In some cases, disabling **Postscript Passthrough** can cause unexpected results within a software program.

JPEG Passthrough

The JPEG Passthrough setting contains the following options:

- **Disable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as bitmaps, resulting in faster printing.
- **Enable.** When this option is selected, images sent as JPEG are printed as JPEG (JPEG passthrough).
- **Auto.** (This is the default.) When this option is selected, the MFP connection type is automatically detected. For network (TCP/IP) connections, JPEG passthrough is disabled. For DOT4 and USB connections, JPEG passthrough is enabled.

Installable Options

About tab features

On the printer Properties, only the **Device Settings** tab and **About** tab are unique to the device; all other tabs are part of the operating system.

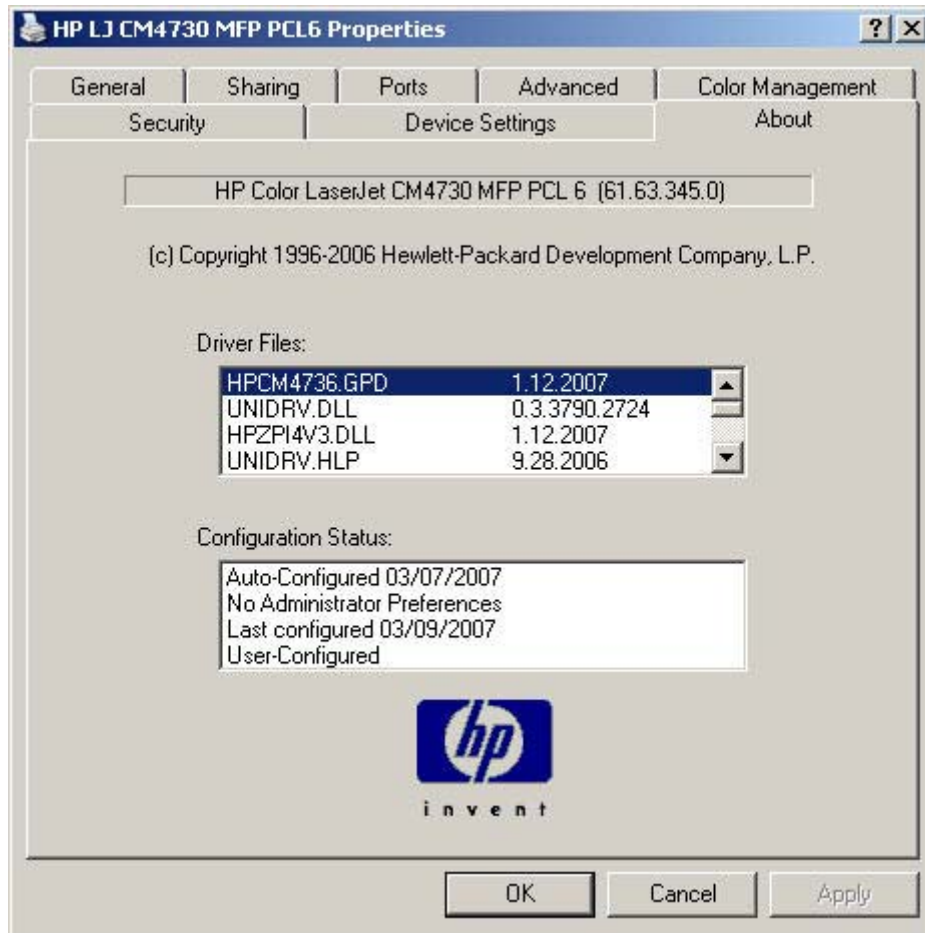
The **About** tab is in the **Properties** for the print driver.

To gain access to the **About** tab, follow these steps:

1. Click **Start**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Click **Printers** (Windows 2000) or **Printers and Faxes** (Windows XP Professional and Windows Server 2003) or **Printers and Other Hardware Devices** (Windows XP Home) or **Hardware and Sound** (Windows Vista).
4. Right-click the MFP name.
5. Click **Properties**.
6. Click the **About** tab.

The **About** tab provides detailed information about the driver. It contains an overall build number (in parentheses after the model name) together with specific information about each of the components. The information varies according to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP model number, driver, date, and versions. The **About** tab is shown in the following figure.

Figure 4-34 About tab



The **About** tab lists driver installation file names and their version numbers. The **About** tab also indicates whether the driver was autoconfigured, whether administrator preferences were set, the date the driver was last configured, and whether the configuration is default or user-defined.

To determine the latest version, compare the overall build number (in parenthesis after the model name) and the GPD number (in the Driver Files: field). If the overall build number has increased, this is the latest version of the driver.

If the overall build number is the same, check the version number of the GPD file. The driver that has the highest GPD version number is the latest driver.

Status Notification Popup (SNP)

The status notification popup (SNP) is a new feature added to all print drivers. The popup appears in the lower-right corner of the desktop to provide printer, print job, and supplies status information while printing. This feature can be disabled or customized by driver preconfiguration utilities.

For more information, see the following Web site: <http://www.hp.com/go/upd>.

5 Macintosh

Introduction

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP comes with printing software and installers for Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- [Macintosh printing-system software](#)
- [Macintosh install and uninstall instructions](#)
- [Macintosh HP Printer Utility](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server \(EWS\)](#)

Macintosh printing-system software

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software for Macintosh is composed of an HP-created postscript printer definition file (PPD) and a printer dialog extension (PDE) file that work together with the Macintosh OS print system. These files are used by the Macintosh OS print system to determine default print settings and also allows the user to select between the various print options and settings and are installed by the provided HP LaserJet Installer. Additionally, an HP-supplied Macintosh printer configuration utility is provided, which allows the user to access the MFP's embedded Web server (EWS) to allow for additional configuration and MFP status monitoring. The following are provided on the installation CD:

- The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh
- Install notes (Readme file)

The following major components are installed by the HP LaserJet Installer for Mac:

- HP LaserJet CM4730 PPD
- HP LaserJet CM4730 PDE
- HP USB EWS Gateway
- HP Device Configuration Utility
- HP Uninstaller for the HP Device Configuration Utility and HP USB EWS Gateway

Topics:

- [Hardware requirements](#)
- [Operating-system support](#)
- [Availability](#)

Hardware requirements

- PowerPC G3, G4, G5 or Intel Core processor
- 256 MB RAM
- 32 MB of available hard-disk space
- CD-ROM drive or Internet connection

Operating-system support

- Mac OS X v10.2.8, v10.3, v10.4 and later are supported.
- Mac OS 9 and Mac OS X classic are not supported.

Availability

This document provides information about the availability of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software and related software and firmware. Printing-system software on a CD is available from HP fulfillment centers.


Topics:

- [Printing-system software on the Web](#)
- [In-box printing-system software CDs](#)

Printing-system software on the Web

All software that is contained on the installation CD is also available on the Web.

Web deployment is the preferred method for obtaining the latest software. The Web site offers an option for automatic e-mail notification about new software releases.

 **NOTE:** This document describes drivers that are shipped with the printing-system software CD. This document does *not* describe any drivers that might be released for use by support personnel.

Topics:

- [Printing-system software](#)
- [Software component availability](#)

Printing-system software

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software is available for download at the following Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Software component availability

The following HP LaserJet software components are installed:

- HP LaserJet CM4730 PPD
- HP LaserJet CM4730 PDE
- HP USB EWS Gateway
- HP Device Configuration Utility
- HP Uninstaller for the HP Device Configuration Utility and HP USB EWS Gateway

In-box printing-system software CDs

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

Topics:

- [Macintosh partition](#)
- [CD versions](#)

Macintosh partition

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software CD is divided into two partitions, one for each of the following operating systems:

- MS Windows
- Macintosh

The HP Macintosh printing-system software files all reside in the Macintosh partition. The HP LaserJet Installer for Macintosh is at the root of the Macintosh CD Partition. The user manuals (in PDF format) are grouped by language and are in the Manuals directory on the Macintosh partition of the printing-system software CD.

CD versions

The software CD for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP contains the files for installing the printing-system software on the computer.

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP printing-system software CD is available in two versions, each of which contains printing-system documentation in various languages, as follows:

- **CD_ROW – Americas and Europe (part number CB480-60127):**

- AR = Arabic
- CA = Catalan (Català)
- CS = Czech (Cesky)
- DA = Danish (Dansk)
- DE = German (Deutsch)
- EN = English
- ES = Spanish (Español)
- FI = Finnish (Suomi)
- FR = French (Français)
- EL = Greek
- HE = Hebrew
- HR = Croatian
- HU = Hungarian (Magyar)
- IT = Italian (Italiano)
- NL = Dutch (Nederland)
- NO = Norwegian (Norsk)
- PO = Polish (Polski)
- PT = Brazilian Portuguese (Português)
- RO = Romanian
- RU = Russian (Russ)
- SK = Slovak
- SL = Slovenian

- SV = Swedish (Svenska)
- TR = Turkish (Turkçe)
- **CD_AP – Asia Pacific (part number CB480-60128):**
 - AR = Arabic
 - EN = English
 - ID = Indonesia (Bahasa)
 - ZHCN = Simplified Chinese
 - ZHTW = Traditional Chinese
 - JA = Japanese
 - KO = Korean
 - TH = Thai

Macintosh install and uninstall instructions

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP comes with software and installers for MS Windows and Apple Computer, Inc., Macintosh systems. This document provides procedures for installing and removing the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software for Macintosh operating systems.

Topics:

- [Macintosh component descriptions](#)
- [Install the Macintosh printing system](#)
- [Uninstall the Macintosh printing system](#)

Macintosh component descriptions

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD includes the following software for Macintosh computers:

- HP LaserJet CM4730 PPD
- HP LaserJet CM4730 PDE
- HP USB EWS Gateway
- HP Device Configuration Utility
- HP Printer Utility
- HP Uninstaller for the HP Device Configuration Utility and HP USB EWS Gateway

Topics:

- [HP LaserJet PPDs](#)
- [PDEs](#)
- [HP Embedded Web Server](#)
- [Install notes \(Readme file\)](#)
- [Online help](#)

HP LaserJet PPDs

In Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later, the PPDs are installed in **Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate localized folder.

The PPDs, in combination with the driver, provide access to the MFP configuration settings and installable options. These settings are usually configured during the installation process by using Apple Mac OS X tools such as Print Center, Printer Setup Utility, and Print & Fax. For more information, see [Table 5-1 Adding a MFP in Macintosh operating systems on page 192](#).

PDEs

Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) are code plug-ins (for Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later only) that provide access to MFP features, such as number of copies, duplexing, and quality settings.

HP Embedded Web Server

Mac OS X supports the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS). Use the HP EWS to perform the following tasks:

- View the MFP status and change device settings.
- View and change network settings for the MFP.
- Print information pages for the MFP.
- View the MFP event log.

The HP EWS is accessed by using a Web browser such as Safari. The HP USB EWS Gateway software allows the Web browser access to the MFP if the MFP is connected using a USB cable. The HP EWS can also be opened by choosing the **Utility** button in the Macintosh Print Center or Printer Setup Utility, or through the HP Device Configuration utility.

Install notes (Readme file)

This text file contains information about basic MFP installation and OS support.

Online help

The help system is in English only, and can be viewed through a browser or in the Macintosh OS Help Center.

Install the Macintosh printing system

On a Macintosh computer, the installation procedures are basically the same for a network administrator, a network client, and a single user. Install the software on any computer that has access rights to the MFP. The computer user must also have administrative rights on the computer in order to install the software.


Topics:

- [General installation for Macintosh operating systems](#)
- [Detailed Mac OS X installation](#)
- [Printer setup](#)


General installation for Macintosh operating systems

1. If you are connecting the MFP to a network, connect the network cable to the MFP network port. If you are connecting the MFP to a computer using the USB cable, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.


2. Insert the Macintosh printing-system software CD into the CD-ROM drive.

 **NOTE:** If the CD screen does not open automatically, double-click the **hp LaserJet** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the CD-ROM window.

3. Double-click the **HP LaserJet v... .app** icon.

 **NOTE:** The **Continue** button appears only after you type the "admin" password in the **Authenticate** dialog.

4. The main **Installer** dialog appears. Click **Install** and then follow the onscreen instructions to complete the software installation.

 **NOTE:** When you are installing the printing-system software, be patient. The installer must perform an initial search of the computer for up to 1 minute. During this time the installer might appear to be stalled.

5. When software installation is complete, click **Quit**.
6. Continue with the steps for setting up a MFP.

The software program that you use to finish setting up the MFP varies by operating system. The following table shows the print setup tools that are available.

Table 5-1 Adding a MFP in Macintosh operating systems

Operating System	Print Center	Printer Setup Utility	Print & Fax
Mac OS X V10.2.8	x		
Mac OS X V10.3		x	x
Mac OS X V10.4		x	x


Detailed Mac OS X installation

Topics:

- [Main Install dialog sequence](#)

Main Install dialog sequence

This section provides information about the Macintosh installation dialog-box sequence for the Easy Install (the typical installation option).

 **NOTE:** If you are installing the MFP using a network connection, you can connect the MFP to the network before installing the software, but if you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, install the software *before* connecting the USB cable.

1. Insert the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD in the CD-ROM drive.
2. If the CD screen does not open automatically when the CD is put into the CD-ROM drive, double-click the **HP LJ** CD-ROM icon on the desktop to open the installer folder.

The **hp LaserJet** dialog opens.

3. In the HP LaserJet Software screen, double-click the **HP LaserJet.app** icon. This begins the install process.

The **Authenticate** dialog appears.

Figure 5-1 Authenticate dialog (sample)




4. Type the correct “admin” name and password and click **OK** to continue.

 **NOTE:** Click **Cancel** to exit the installation.

The installer startup screen appears.

Figure 5-2 HP LaserJet for Macintosh installer startup-screen (sample)



 **NOTE:** Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.

5. Click **Continue**. The **Read Me** dialog appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-3 HP LaserJet Installer Read Me dialog (sample)



6. Do one of the following:

- Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog for the default MFP and print a copy of the readme.
- Click **Save...** to open the system **Save** dialog and save the readme to disk.

- Click **Continue** to continue the installation. The **License** dialog appears.

Figure 5-4 License dialog (sample)



7. Do one of the following:

- Click **Print...** to open the **Page Setup** dialog for the default MFP and print a copy of the license agreement.
- Click **Save...** to open the system **Save** dialog and save the license agreement to disk.
- Read the software-license agreement and then click **Continue** to continue the installation. A dialog appears, asking you to accept the license agreement, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-5 Agree dialog (sample)



8. Do one of the following:

- Click **Disagree** to decline the agreement, end the installation process, and close the installer.

- Click **Agree** to accept the agreement. The **Easy Install** dialog appears, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-6 Easy Install dialog (sample)



The default option in the drop-down menu at the top of the screen is **Easy Install**. You can also choose **Custom Install** in the same menu, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-7 HP LaserJet Installer dialog (custom install; sample)



The **Custom Install** screen displays all of the options that are available on the printing-system software CD. Use the check boxes on the list to install the components that you want to install.

The **Configuration** installation option installs the HP EWS Configuration Utility, which is used to access the HP EWS program. For more information, see [HP Embedded Web Server \(EWS\) on page 231](#).

The **Print** installation option installs the print-system files. The printing-system files are installed in the System/Library folder on the Macintosh hard drive.

Click **Go Back** to return to the previous screen.


Click the ? icon to the right of each item in the list to open a screen that describes the component.

- Click **Install** to start the installation on the selected disk. The **Installing** screen appears, as shown in the following figure. If installed, the HP Device Configuration Utility is installed under the Application directory in a directory labeled **HP EWS Device Configuration**. An uninstaller utility for the HP Device Configuration Utility is also installed in this directory.

Figure 5-8 Installing dialog (sample)



- The **Installing** dialog shows installation progress. No action is required unless you want to stop the installation.

 **NOTE:** Click **Stop** to interrupt the install file copy process.

The **Finish Up** dialog appears, stating that the installation was successful, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-9 Finish Up dialog (sample)



Click **Quit** to exit the installer.

Click **Continue** to return to the HP LaserJet Installer.

Printer setup

After installing the printing-system software in Macintosh operating systems, the MFP must be set up.

Topics:

- [Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 or later](#)
- [Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3](#)
- [Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8](#)
- [Troubleshooting the printer setup](#)

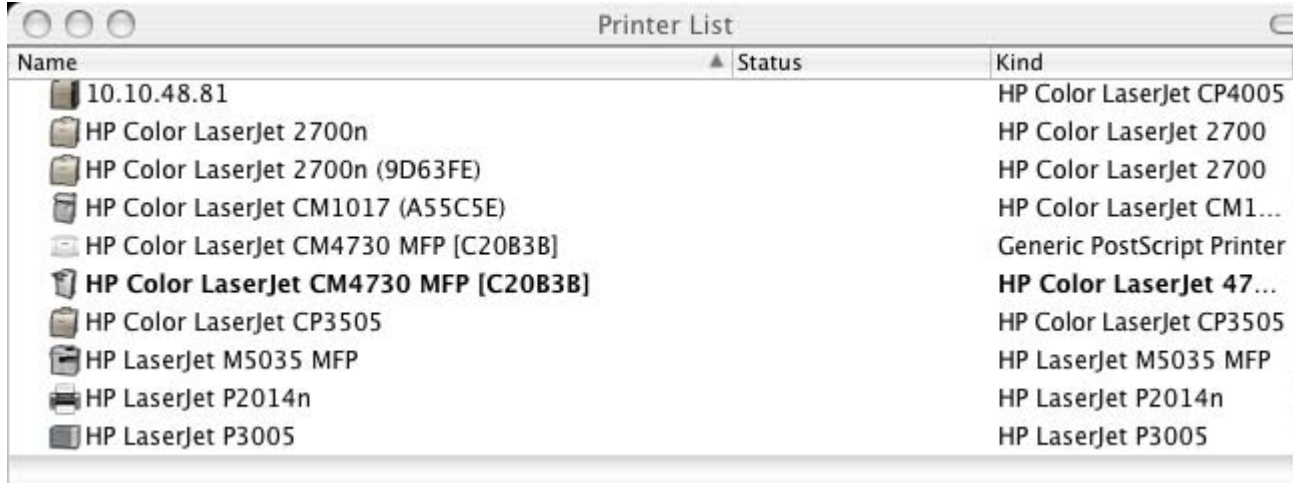
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.4 or later)

Carry out these steps *after* the software installation is complete.

1. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP and the computer. Turn on the MFP. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the MFP and the MFP is on.

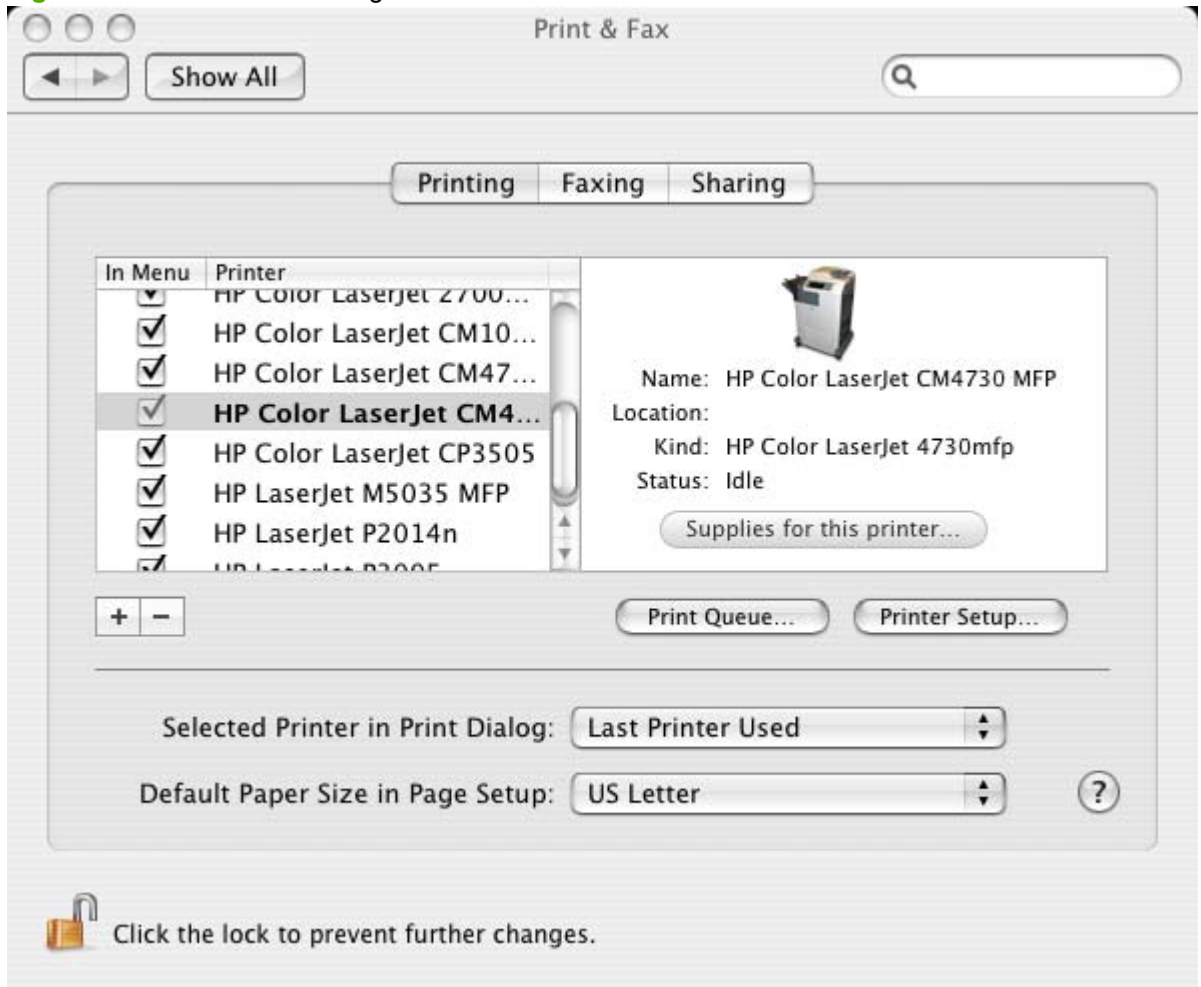
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**. The **Printer List** appears. It looks similar to the one shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-10 Printer list screen



You can also configure the MFP using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences** (from the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**).

Figure 5-11 Print & Fax dialog




3. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, verify that the MFP appears on the MFP list. The **Kind** column in the MFP list, or the **Kind** field in the **Print & Fax** screen, should display **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP**. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the device does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208](#).

If you are installing the MFP using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** in the **Printer List** (or the **+** button in the Print & Fax utility) to open the **Printer Browser** screen.
5. You can use either Bonjour or IP Printing for the network connection.

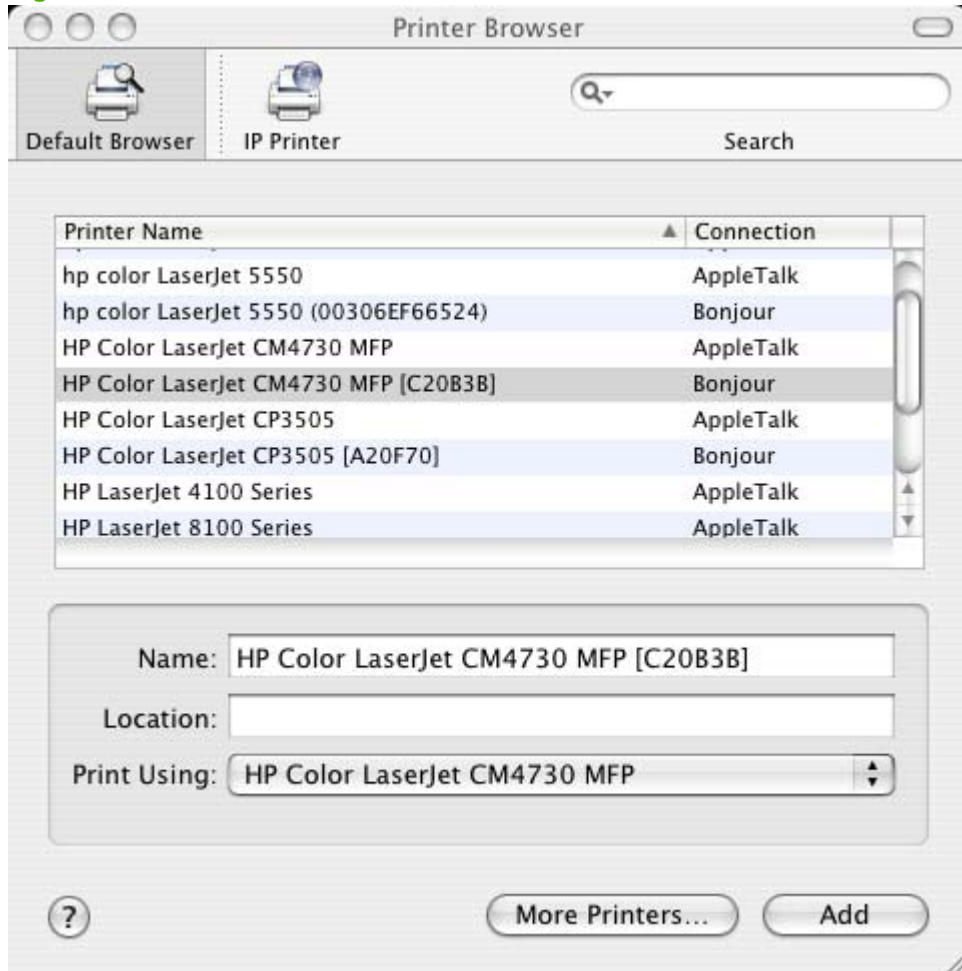
 **NOTE:** Bonjour is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the MFP is installed on your local network.

IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the MFP on a different network.


If you are using Bonjour, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **Default Browser** tab.

Figure 5-12 Default Browser tab



- b. Select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP from the list. The software verifies that the MFP is connected to the network and the **Print Using** field is automatically populated with the correct PPD for the device.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, print a configuration page and match the Bonjour Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the MFP you are installing. (See [Print the configuration page on page 261.](#))

NOTE: If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP does not appear in the list, verify that the MFP is on and connected to the network, then try turning the MFP off and then on again. If the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP** PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** pull-down list, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208.](#)

If you want to use the IP Printing method, carry out the following steps:

- a. Click the **IP Printer** tab.

Figure 5-13 Printer Browser – IP Printer tab



- b. Choose **HP Jet Direct – Socket** from the **Protocol** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP MFP.
- c. Print the configuration pages.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.
 - iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
- d. On the first configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Address** field on the add printer screen.
- e. The **Name**, **Location**, and **Print Using** information will automatically be filled in. If the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP** PPD does not appear in the **Print Using** field, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

6. Click **Add**. The **Installable Options** screen appears.

Figure 5-14 Installable Options screen



7. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Not Installed** (default)
 - **hp 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**
8. If the MFP has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
9. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size** (default)
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
10. After selecting the installable options, click **Continue**. The MFP name appears in the **Printer List** and the setup is complete.

Figure 5-15 Printer List screen

Name	Status	Kind
10.10.48.81		HP Color LaserJet CP4005
HP Color LaserJet 2700n		HP Color LaserJet 2700
HP Color LaserJet 2700n (9D63FE)		HP Color LaserJet 2700
HP Color LaserJet CM1017 (A55C5E)		HP Color LaserJet CM1...
HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP [C20B3B]		Generic PostScript Printer
HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP [C20B3B]		HP Color LaserJet 47...
HP Color LaserJet CP3505		HP Color LaserJet CP3505
HP LaserJet M5035 MFP		HP LaserJet M5035 MFP
HP LaserJet P2014n		HP LaserJet P2014n
HP LaserJet P3005		HP LaserJet P3005

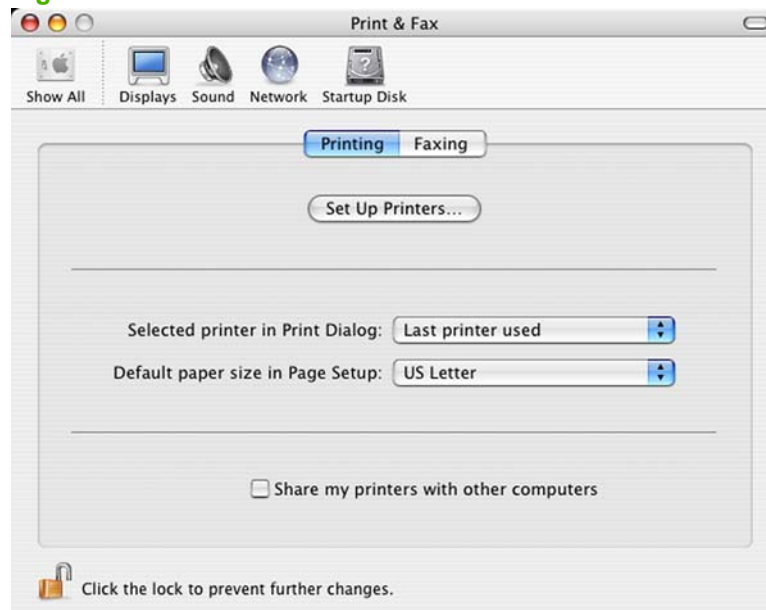
Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.3

1. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP MFP and the computer. Turn on the MFP. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the MFP and the MFP is on.

2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility**.

You can also configure the MFP using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences** (from the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**).

Figure 5-16 Print & Fax screen



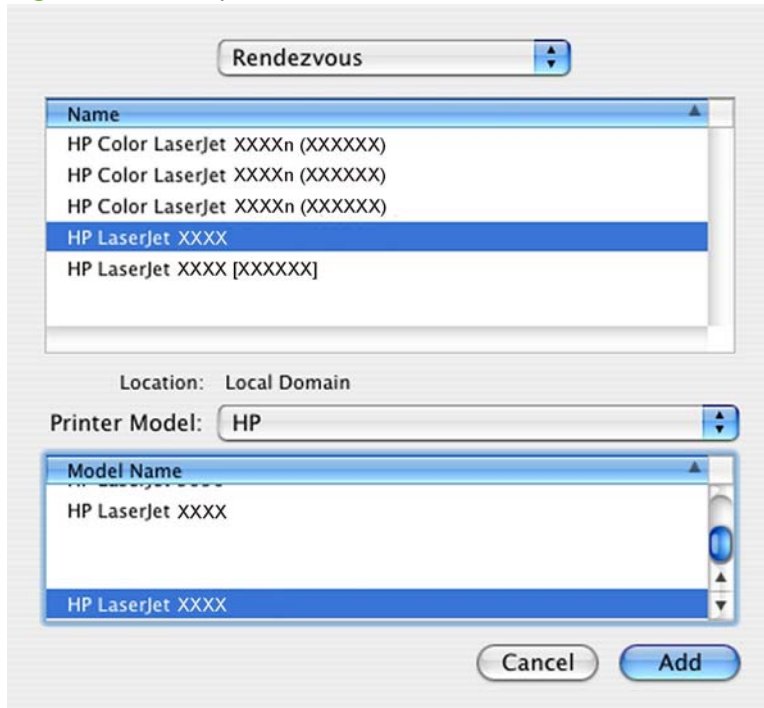
3. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, verify that the MFP appears on the MFP list. (In the Print & Fax screen, click the **Set Up Printers...** button to see the MFP list.) The **Kind** column in the MFP list same change as before should display **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP**. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

If the MFP does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** field, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208](#).


If you are installing the MFP using a network connection, continue with the following steps.

4. Click **Add** (or the **Set Up Printers...** button in the Print & Fax screen, and then **Add**) to open the add printer screen.

Figure 5-17 Add printer screen




5. Select the network connection protocol in the top pull-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.


 **NOTE:** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the MFP is installed on your local network.


IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the MFP on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the MFP you are installing. (See [Print the configuration page on page 261.](#))

 **NOTE:** If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP does not appear in the list, verify that the MFP is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the MFP off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208.](#)


 **NOTE:** If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a .PPD file, click the **Printer Model** pull-down menu, select **HP**, and then select the .PPD file that you want to add. If the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Series** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Choose **Socket/HP Jet Direct** from the **Printer Type** pull-down menu. This is the recommended setting for HP devices.
 - b. Print out the MFP configuration pages.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - i. Touch **Administration**.
 - ii. Touch **Information**.
 - iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
 - v. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.
 - c. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer Address** field on the add printer screen.
 - d. Select the **Printer Model** and select HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP in the **Model Name** list. If the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP Series** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.
6. Click **Add**. The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP appears in the **Printer List**.
 7. To configure installable options such as a duplexing unit or optional paper tray, click **Show Info?** on the MFP list and choose **Installable Options** in the pull-down menu.
 8. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Not Installed** (default)
 - **hp 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**
 9. If the MFP has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
 10. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size** (default)
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
 11. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Set up a printer with Mac OS X V10.2.8

1. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, connect the USB cable between the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP and the computer. Turn on the MFP. If you are installing using a network connection, verify that the network cable is connected to the MFP and the MFP is on.
2. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Print Center**. The **Printer List** screen appears.
3. If you are installing the MFP using a USB connection, verify that the MFP appears on the device list. The **Kind** column in the MFP list should display **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP**. If this is the case, the setup is complete.

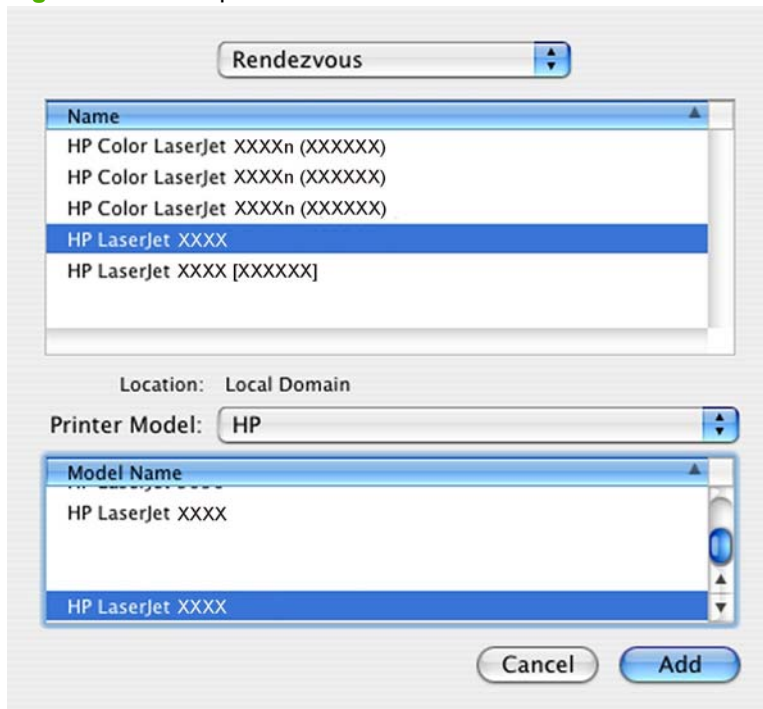
 **NOTE:** If the **Kind** column does not appear in the MFP list, go to the **View** menu, and choose **Columns** and then **Kind**.

If the MFP does not appear, or if the correct information does not appear in the **Kind** column, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208](#).

If you are installing the MFP using a network connection, continue with the following steps.


4. Click **Add** to open the add MFP screen.

Figure 5-18 Add printer screen



5. Choose the network connection protocol in the top drop-down menu. The two supported protocols are **Rendezvous** and **IP Printing**.


If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

 **NOTE:** Rendezvous is the easiest method and is the best method to use if the MFP is installed on your local network.


IP Printing *must* be used if you are installing the MFP on a different network.

If you are using Rendezvous, carry out the following step:

Select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP in the **Name** list. The **Printer Model** and **Model Name** are selected automatically.

 **NOTE:** If you are on a network that has more than one HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP MFP, print a configuration page and match the Rendezvous Printer Name to the name on the list to identify the MFP you are installing. (See [Print the configuration page on page 261.](#))

NOTE: If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP does not appear in the list, verify that the MFP is on and connected to the network. If it still does not appear, try turning the MFP off and then on again. Finally, turn the computer off and then on again, then restart the setup process. For more troubleshooting information, see [Troubleshooting the printer setup on page 208.](#)

 **NOTE:** If the automatic selection fails, or if you want to manually select a PPD file, click the **Printer Model** drop-down menu, choose **HP**, and then choose the PPD file that you want to add. If the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP** PPD does not appear in the **Model Name** list, turn the computer off and then on again and restart the setup process.

If you are using IP Printing, carry out the following steps:

- a. Print out the MFP configuration pages.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

- i. Touch **Administration**.
- ii. Touch **Information**.
- iii. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
- iv. Touch **Configuration Page**.
- v. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.

The MFP prints the configuration page.

- b. On the second configuration page, under **IPv4**, find the IP Address. Type this address into the **Printer's Address** field.
 - c. Choose **Printer Model** and then choose the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP in the **Model Name** list.
6. Click **Add**. The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP appears in the **Printer List**.
 7. Select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, go to the **Printers** menu, and choose **Show Info**.
 8. Choose **Installable Options** from the top drop-down menu.
 9. For the **Accessory Output Bins** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Not Installed** (default)
 - **hp 500-Sheet Stapler-Stacker**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Mailbox Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Stacker Mode**
 - **HP 3-Bin Mailbox-Function Separation Mode**

10. If the MFP has a duplex unit, select the **Duplex Unit** check box.
11. For the **Paper Matching** drop-down menu, select one of the following:
 - **Prompt User for correct size** (default)
 - **Nearest Size & Scale**
 - **Nearest Size & Crop**
12. Click **Apply Changes**, and then close the **Printer List** dialog.

Troubleshooting the printer setup

If the printer does not appear in the printer list after an installation:

Carry out each one of these solutions in the order given, and restart the setup process after each one to see if the issue has been resolved.

- Verify that the USB or network cable is connected between the MFP and the computer and that the MFP is powered on.
- Try disconnecting and reconnecting the cable. If the computer has more than one USB port, try a different USB port.
- Turn the MFP off and then back on again.
- Turn the computer off and then back on again.
- If you are using a USB hub on the computer, disconnect the other USB devices from the hub.

If the wrong PPD appears in the Kind column in the printer list after an installation:

1. Unplug USB cable.
2. Delete the print queue with the incorrect type (for example, Generic PostScript Printer).
3. Reinstall the MFP software.
4. Turn the computer off and then on again.
5. Reconnect the USB cable from the computer to the MFP.

If these steps do not resolve the problem, delete the incorrect print queue, click **Add**, choose the MFP from the list, and then browse manually for the **HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP** PPD.

Uninstall the Macintosh printing system

Follow these instructions to uninstall the Macintosh Printing System.

1. Browse to the folder containing the PPDs. In Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later, the PPDs are installed in **System/Library/Printers/PPDs/Contents/Resources:<lang>.lproj**, where **<lang>** is the appropriate language.
2. Choose the **HP Color LaserJet cm4730.gz** file and drag it to **Trash**.
3. Empty the **Trash**.
4. To uninstall the HP Device Configuration application and supporting files, go to **/Applications/HP EWS Device Configuration** and run the HP Uninstaller application.

Macintosh HP Printer Utility

The HP Printer Utility is a software program that gives you access to the MFP in Mac OS X.

The HP Printer Utility is available only in Mac OS X V10.2.8 or later. The HP Printer Utility does not work when it is installed by using the AppleTalk protocol. Use IP, Bonjour, Rendezvous, or USB to enable the HP Printer Utility.

Topics:

- [Access to the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Supplies Status](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [HP Support](#)
- [File Upload](#)
- [Update Firmware](#)
- [Duplex mode](#)
- [Trays Configuration](#)
- [Lock Resources](#)
- [Stored Jobs](#)
- [E-mail Alerts](#)
- [Network Settings](#)
- [Bonjour Settings](#)
- [Additional Settings](#)

Access to the HP Printer Utility

In Mac OS X V10.3, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. Switch to Finder.
2. Find and double-click **Printers**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

In Mac OS X V10.4, follow these steps to gain access to the HP Printer Utility:

1. Click **Go**.
2. Click **Utilities**.
3. Double-click **HP Printer Selector**. The **Select Printer** screen appears.

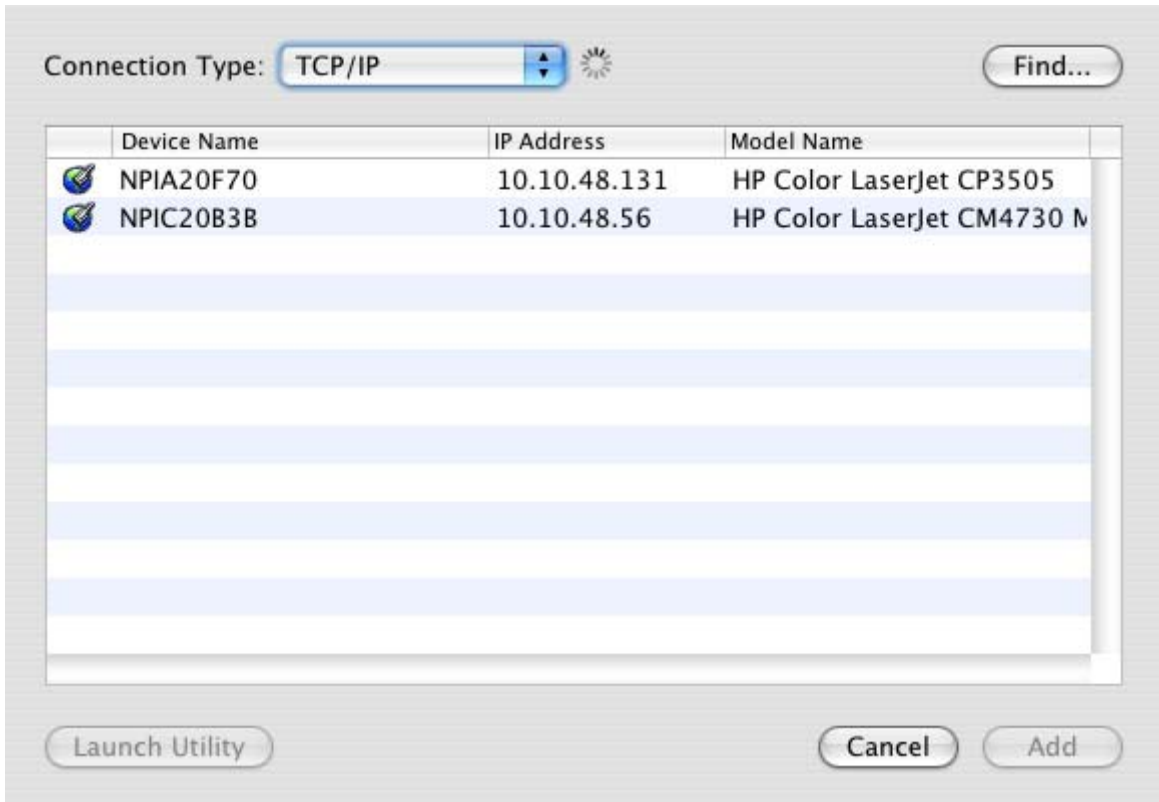
Figure 5-19 Select Printer screen – printer not selected



To open the HP Printer Utility directly, select the MFP and click **Launch Utility**.

If the MFP does not appear, click **More Printers...** The **Connection Type** screen appears, as shown in the following figure.

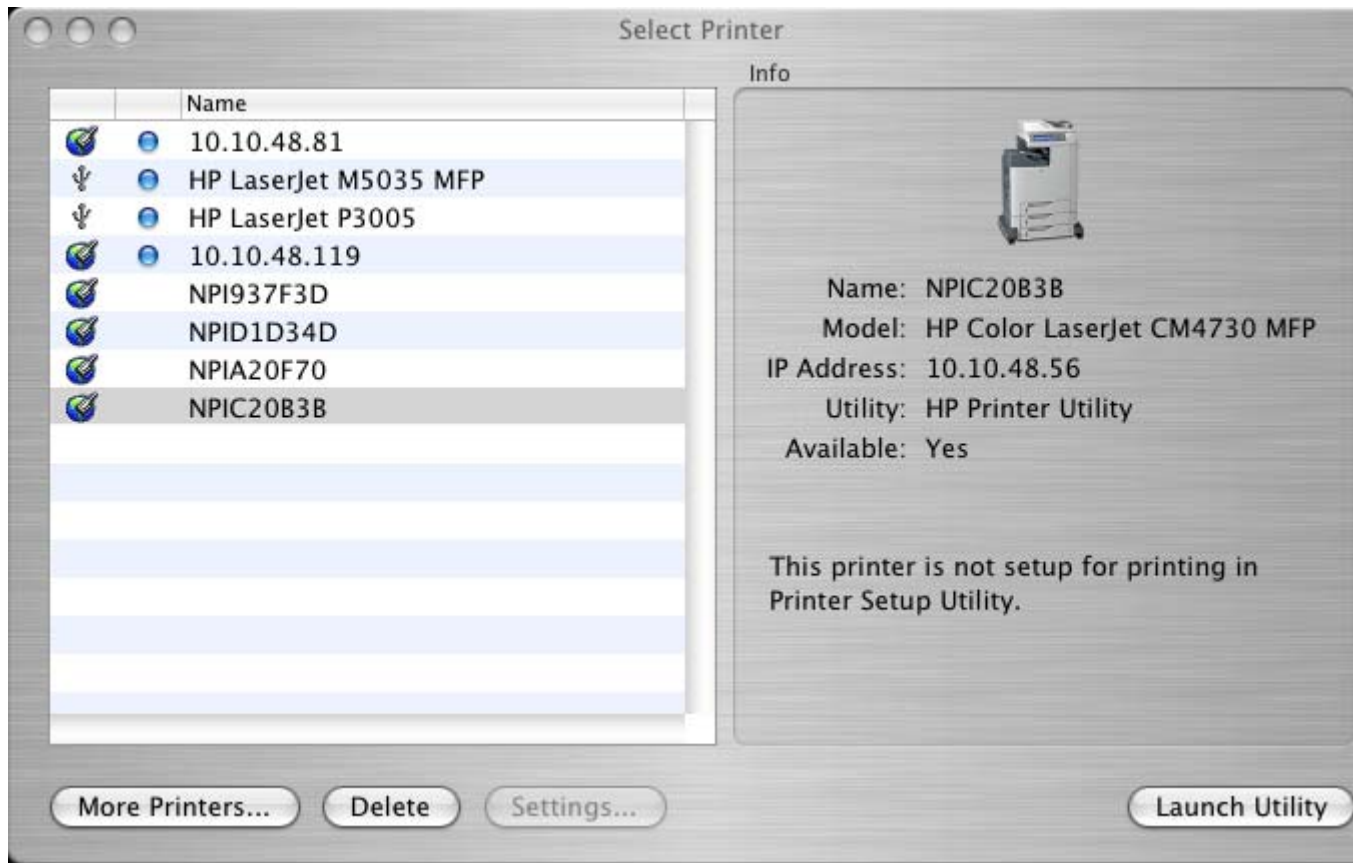
Figure 5-20 Connection Type screen



Choose the connection type (**USB** or **TCP/IP**). The MFP name appears under **Model Name**, as shown in the preceding figure.

On the **Connection Type** screen, click **Add**. The **Select Printer** screen appears, showing MFP information.

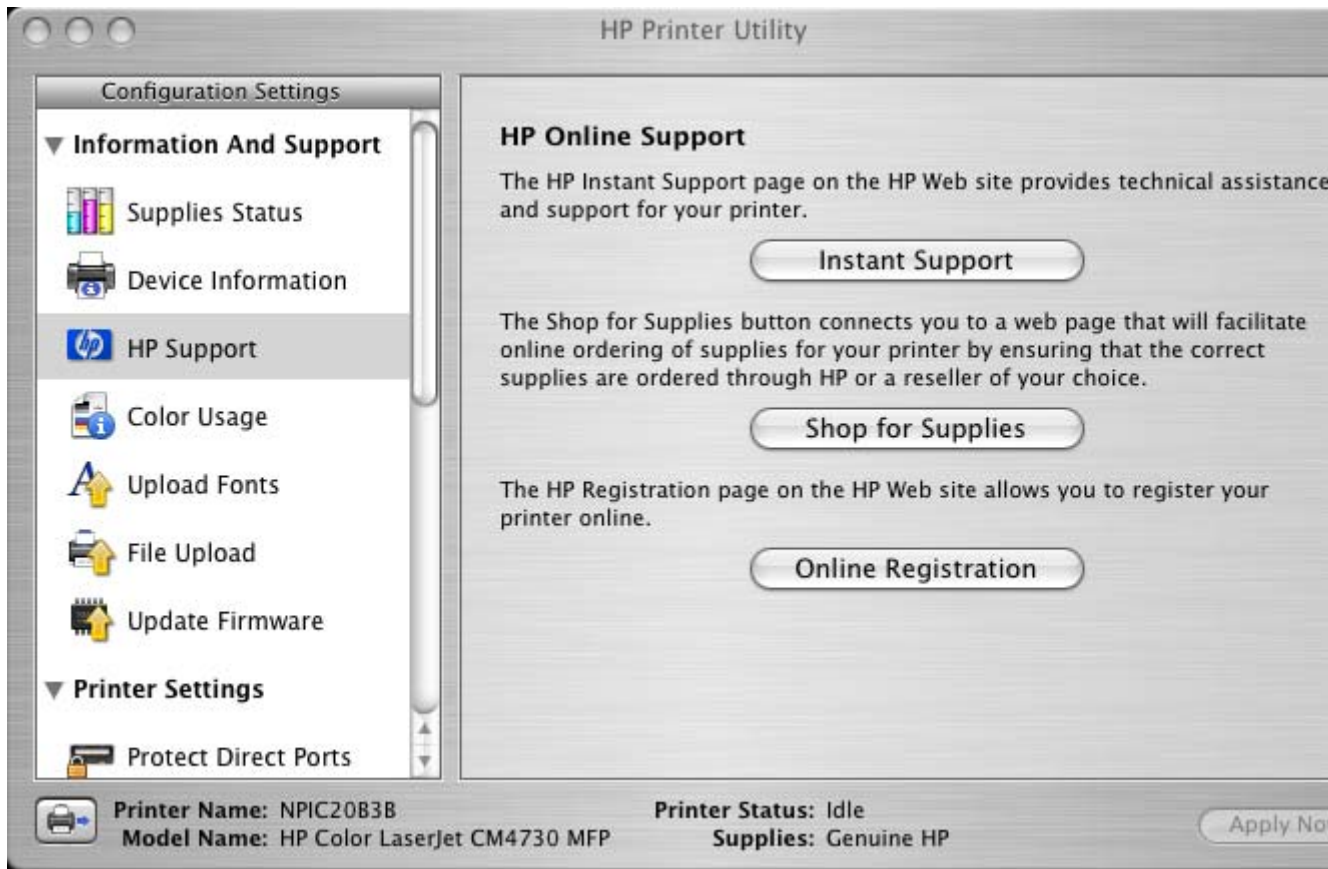
Figure 5-21 Select Printer screen – printer selected



On the **Select Printer** screen, click **Settings...** to open the **Device Status** screen in the HP EWS.

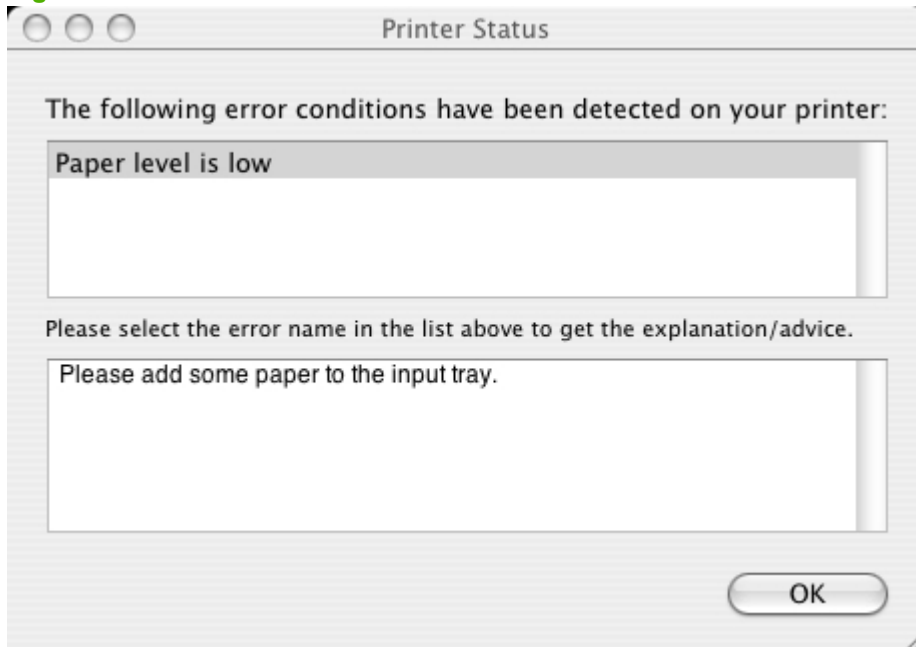
To open the HP Printer Utility, select the MFP and click **Launch Utility**.

Figure 5-22 Printer Utility



If the HP Printer Utility software detects a condition that might need attention, the **Printer Status** screen appears.

Figure 5-23 Printer Status screen



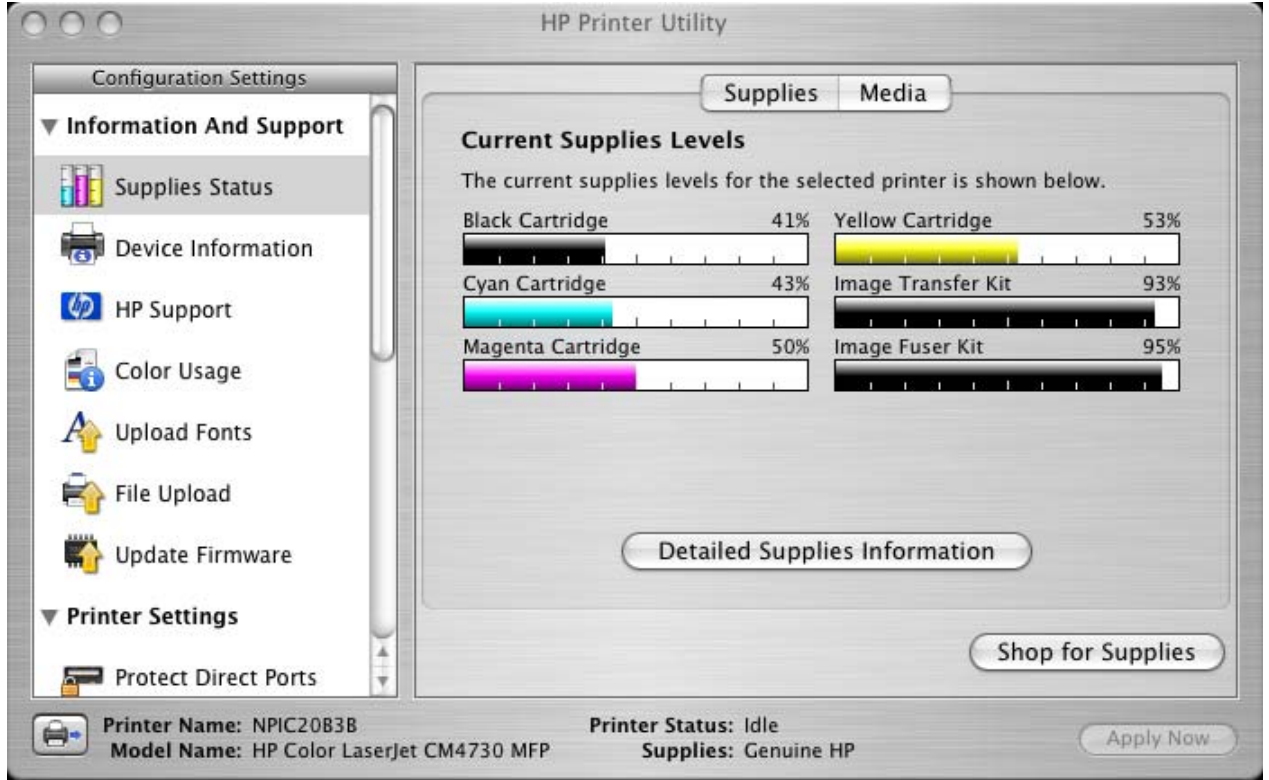
Address the condition and click **OK** to close the screen. The HP Printer Utility opens.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP Printer Utility.

Supplies Status

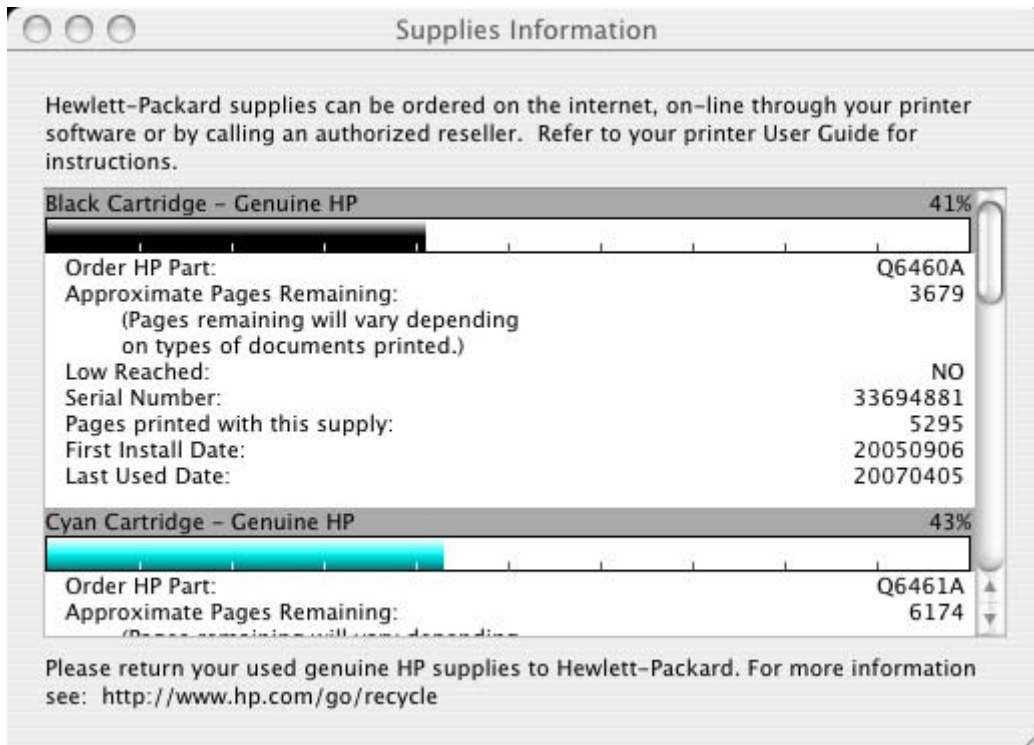
The HP Printer Utility opens to the **Current Supplies Levels** screen.

Figure 5-24 Current Supplies Levels screen



Click **Detailed Supplies Information...** to open the **Supplies Information** screen.

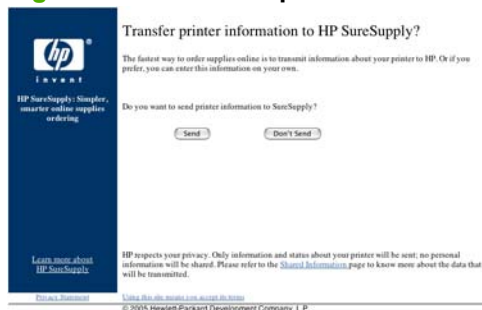
Figure 5-25 Supplies Information screen



Use the scroll button to see information about the print cartridges.

If you have Internet access and click **Shop for Supplies** (see [Figure 5-24 Current Supplies Levels screen on page 214](#)), a screen appears that explains the ordering process and describes the kind of information that can be sent about your MFP to facilitate the ordering of supplies.

Figure 5-26 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen



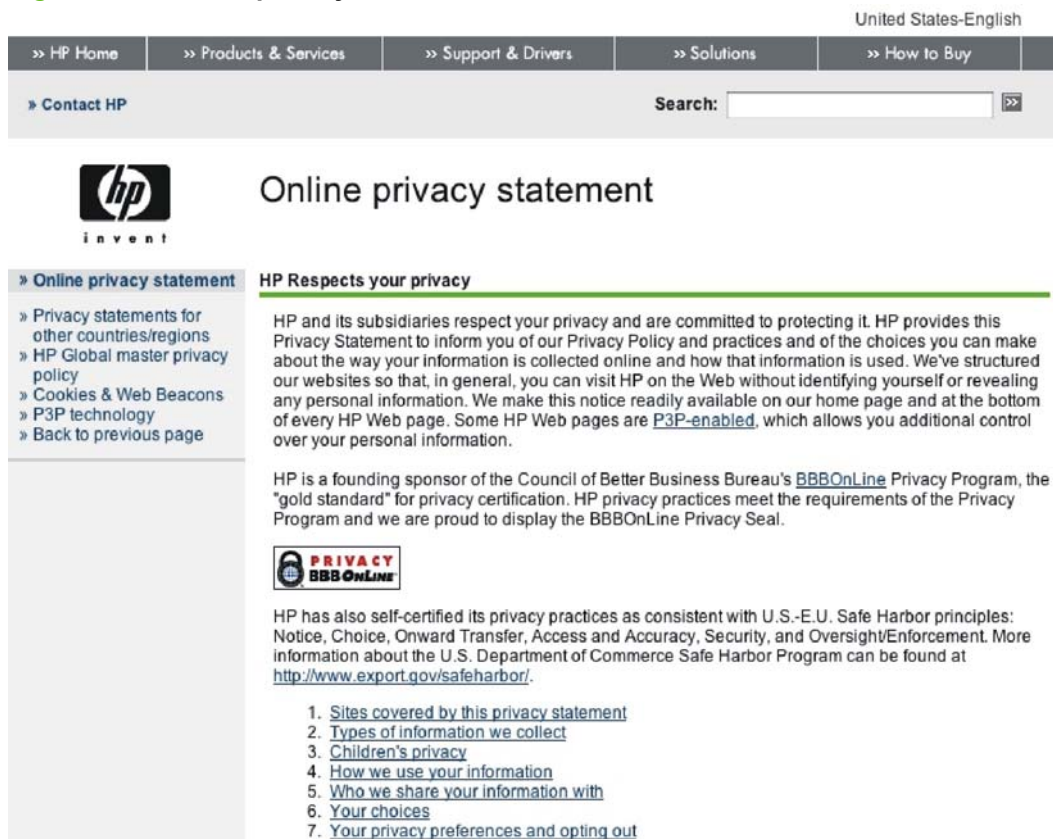
After either option is selected (**Send** or **Don't Send**), the Welcome to HP SureSupply Web page opens, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-27 Welcome to HP SureSupply screen



On the **Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply?** page, click the **Shared Information** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement, as shown in the following figure.

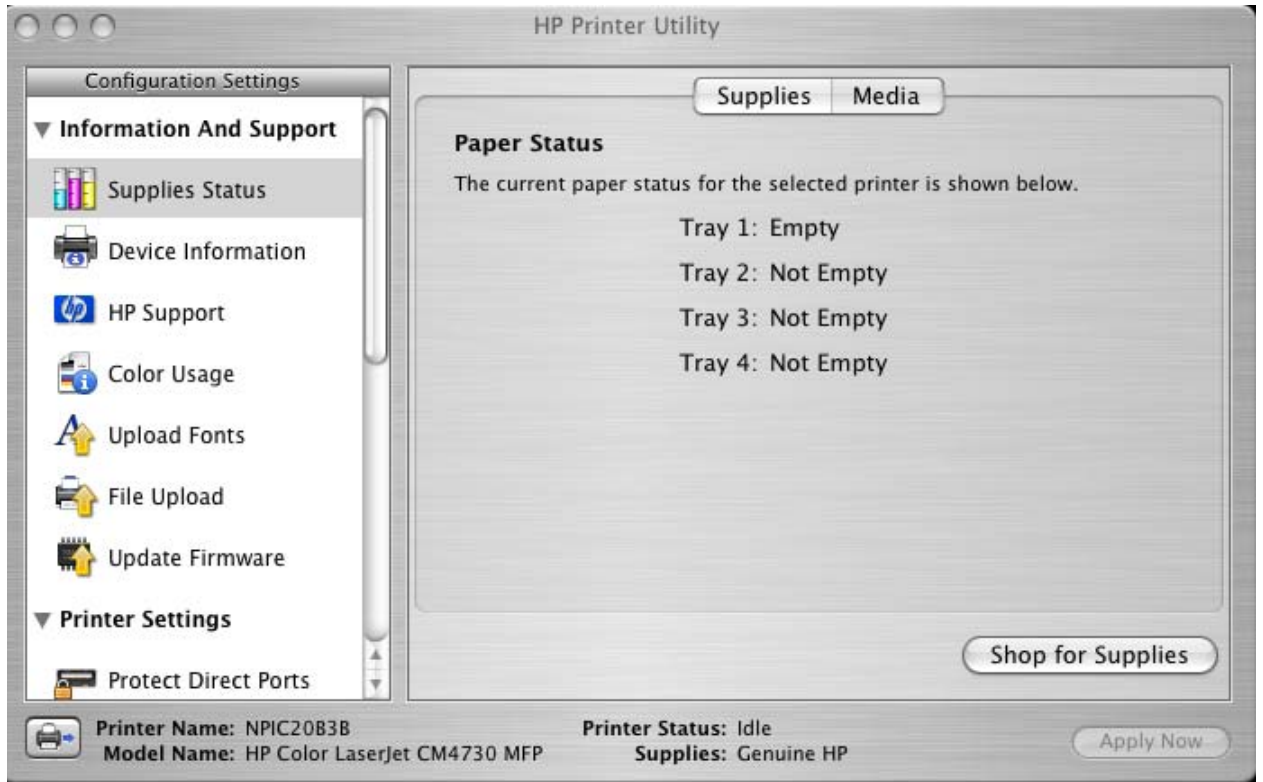
Figure 5-28 Online privacy statement screen



You can continue ordering supplies without sending MFP information by clicking the **Don't Send** link.

On the **Supplies Status** screen, click **Media** to see the status of the trays.

Figure 5-29 Paper Status screen

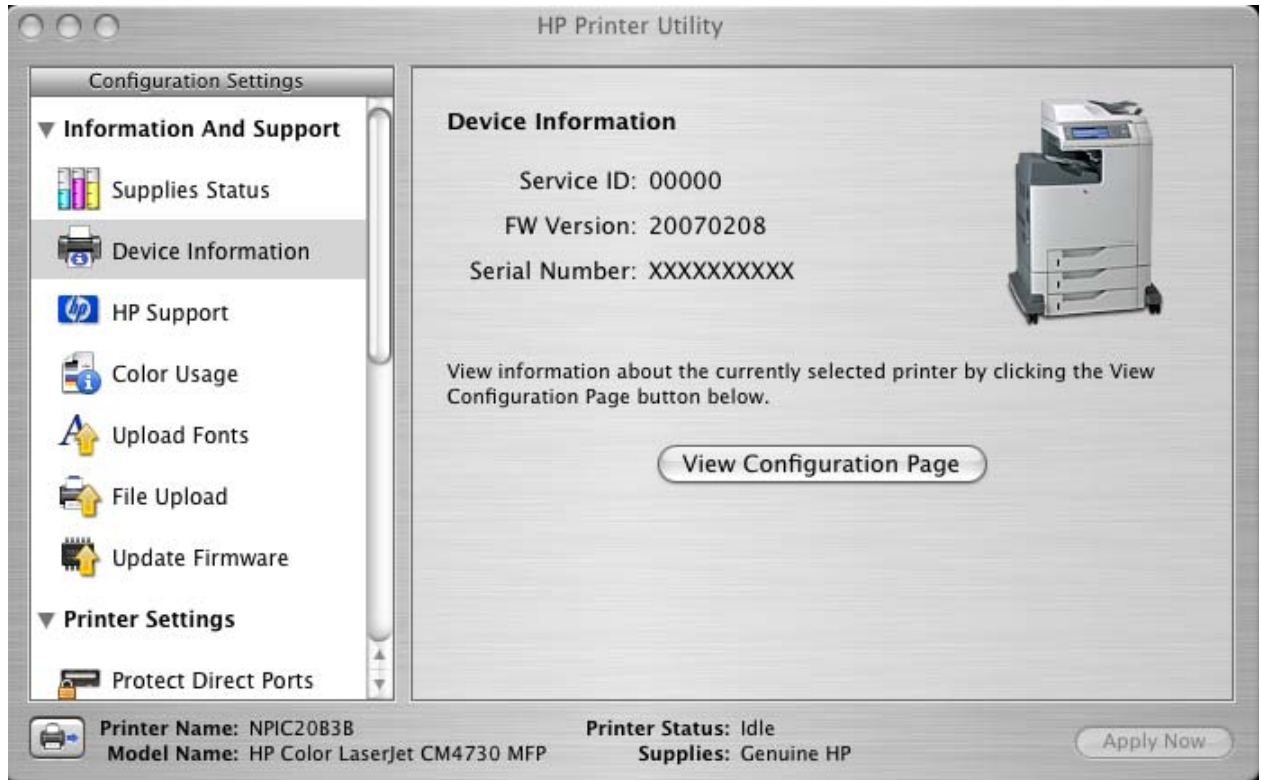


You can also order supplies from this screen by clicking **Shop for Supplies**.

Device Information

Click **Device Information** in the menu on the left to find the MFP service ID (if assigned), the firmware version, and the serial number.

Figure 5-30 Device Information screen



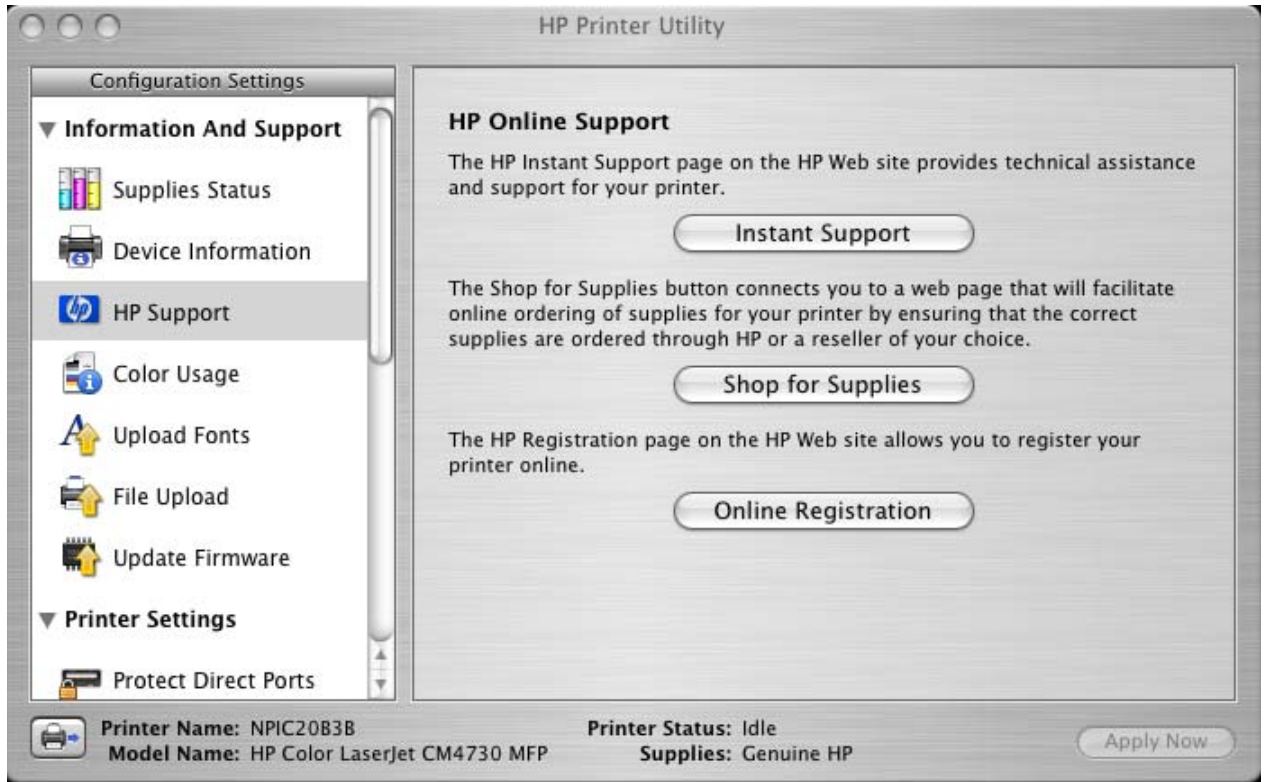
The MFP configuration page shows other settings; click **View Configuration Page** to see it.

Click the MFP icon in the lower-left corner to see information about another installed MFP. This action relaunches the HP Printer Utility so that you can select another MFP (see [Figure 5-44 Device Status screen on page 232](#)).

HP Support

Click **HP Support** to open the **HP Online Support** screen.

Figure 5-31 HP Online Support screen



If you have Internet access, you can connect to HP support pages over the Web from this screen. Click the **Instant Support** link to open the HP Instant Support Web page.

Figure 5-32 HP Instant Support link



Click the **Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement** link to open a screen that shows the HP privacy statement.

Click the **Product Support** link if you do not want to send information to HP but would like to receive generic product support.

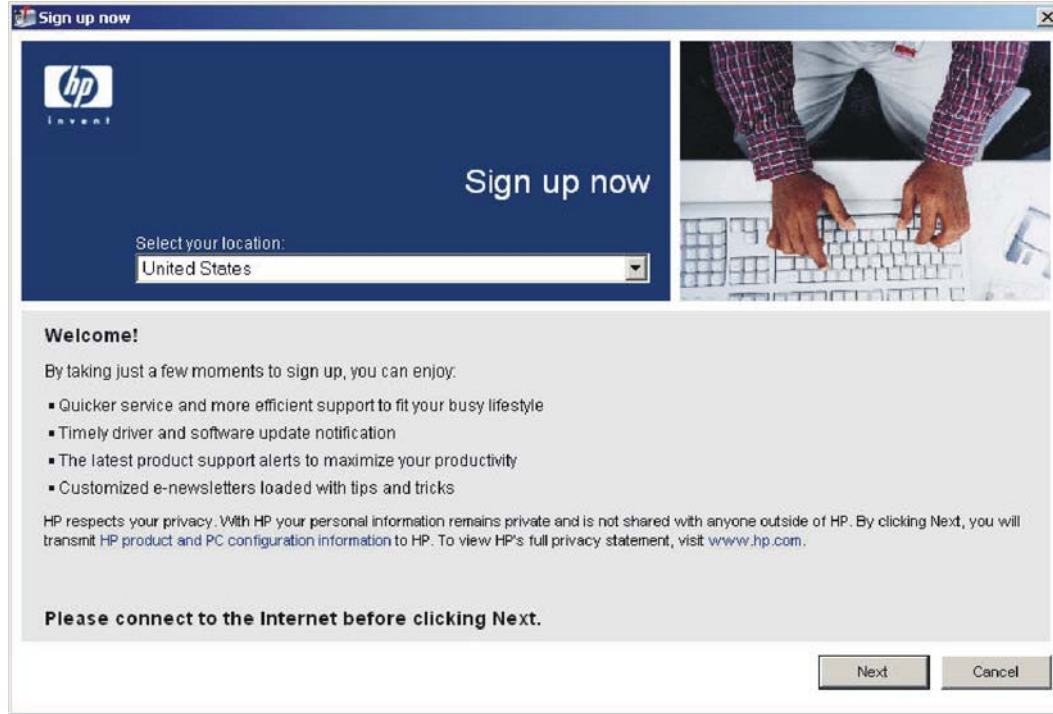
Click **Continue** to open a page where you can select the MFP and find further information about product support.

Click **Cancel** to return to the **HP Online Support** screen in the HP Printer Utility.

Click **Shop for Supplies** to open the Order Supplies Web page (see [Figure 5-26 Transfer printer information to HP SureSupply? screen on page 215](#)).

Click **Online Registration** to open the HP Registration Web page and register the MFP.

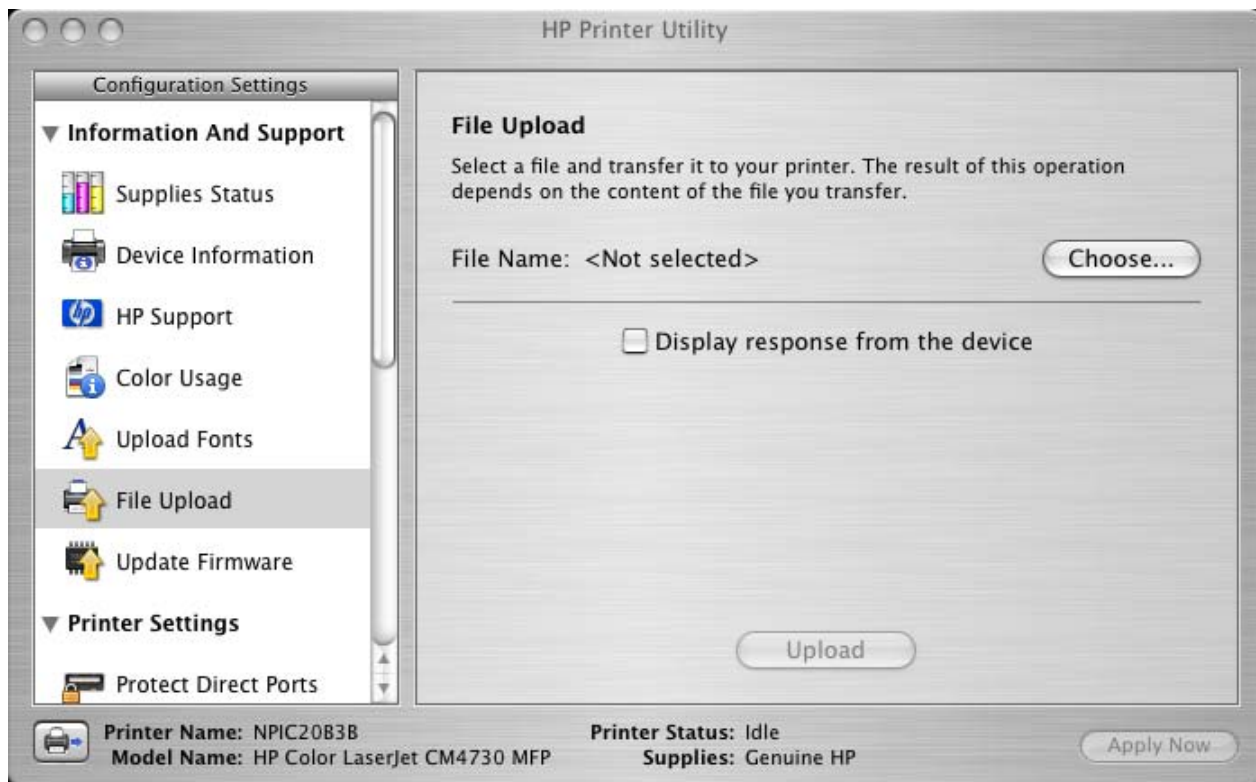
Figure 5-33 HP Registration Web page



File Upload

On the **Configuration Settings** menu, click **File Upload** to open the **File Upload** screen.

Figure 5-34 File Upload screen



The **File Upload** command is supported for file types that can be sent directly to the MFP without first being opened through a software program. Some files can be uploaded to the MFP, but some cannot.

Documents in the following file formats can be printed by using a command line. That is, they do not need to be opened in a software program that supports the file format (such as the Adobe Acrobat or Acrobat Reader programs for .PDF files), but can be sent directly to the MFP by using the **File Upload** command.

- HP LaserJet printer command language (.PCL)
- Portable document format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)

On the **File Upload** screen, click **Choose...** to open a navigation screen. Locate the file you want to upload and click **Open**.

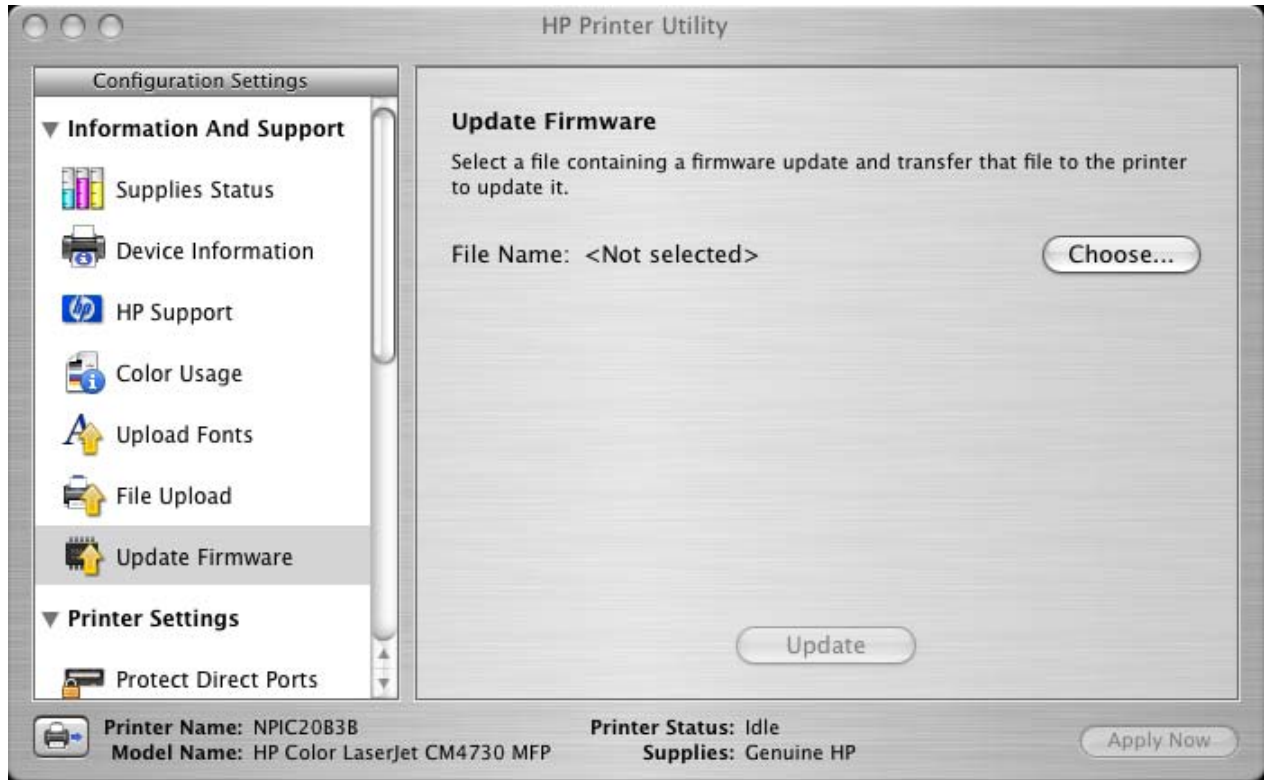
On the **File Upload** screen, click **Display response from the MFP** to see whether the upload was successful. If the file loads successfully, no message appears.

On the navigation screen, select the file and click **Open**. The file name appears in the **File Upload** screen of the HP Printer Utility. Click **Upload**.

Update Firmware

Choose **Update Firmware** to locate a firmware upgrade file and install it on the MFP. The **Update Firmware** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-35 Update Firmware screen

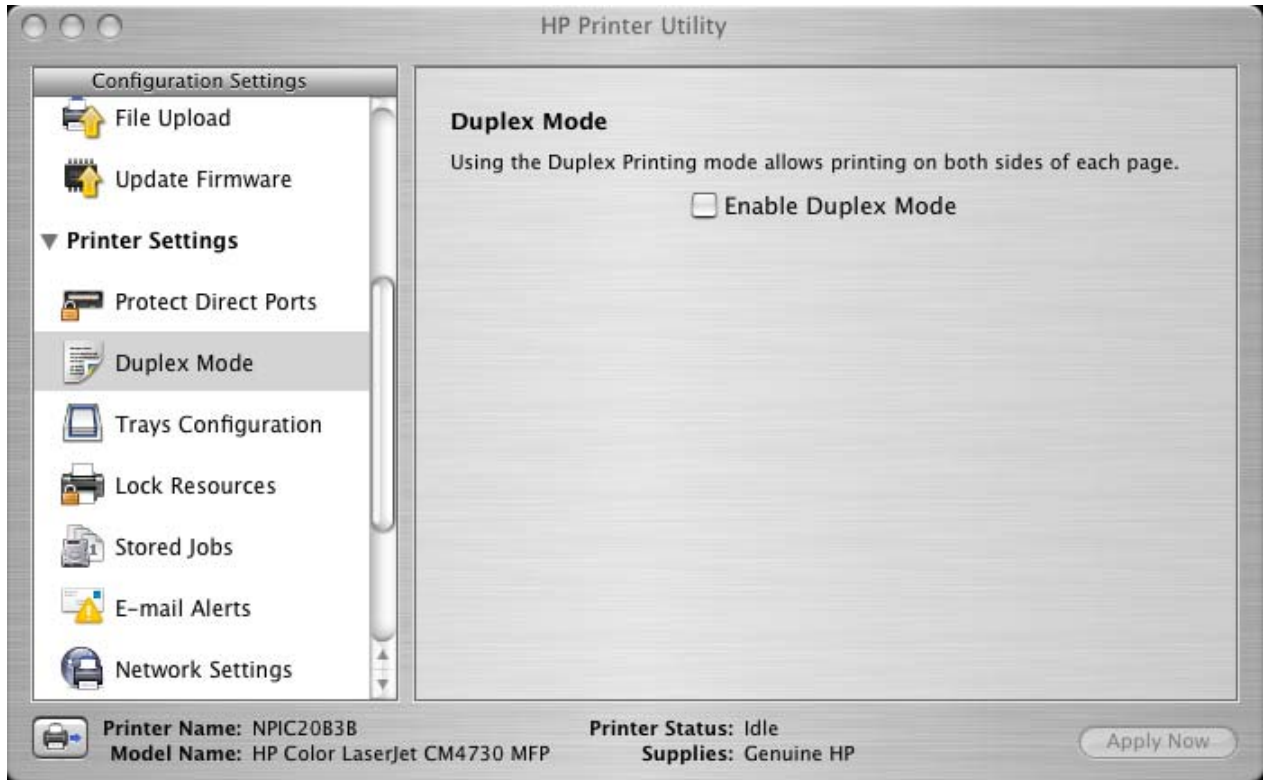


Click **Choose** to open a navigation screen. Browse to the firmware file and click **Open**. The **Update Firmware** screen shows the file name. Click **Update**.

Duplex mode

If a duplex unit is installed (HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP), the **Configuration Settings** menu includes a **Duplex Mode** setting. Click this setting to open the **Duplex Mode** screen, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-36 Duplex Mode screen

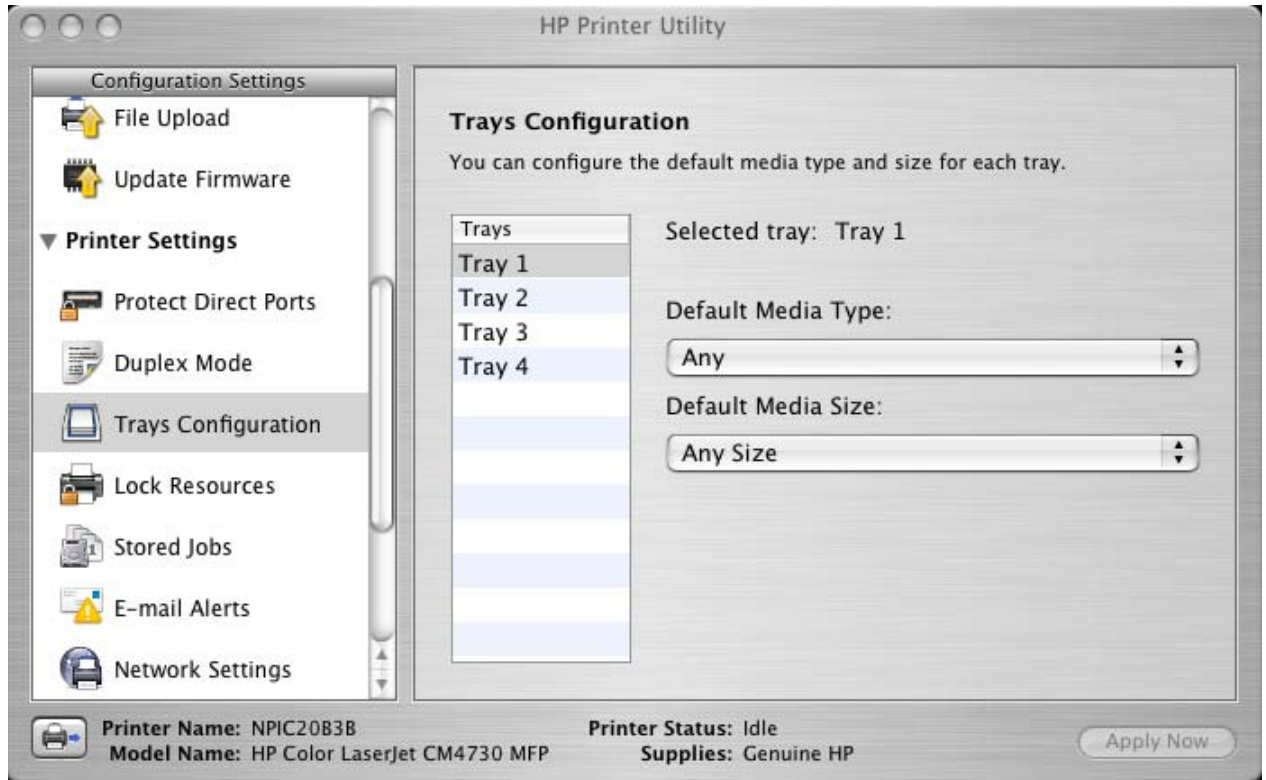


1. Choose **Duplex Mode** to open the **Duplex Mode** screen. (Only available on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.)
2. Select the **Enable Duplex Mode** check box. This box is clear by default.
3. Click **Apply Now** to enable printing on both sides of the page.

Trays Configuration

Under **Printer Settings**, choose **Trays Configuration** to open the **Trays Configuration** screen, as shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-37 Trays Configuration screen

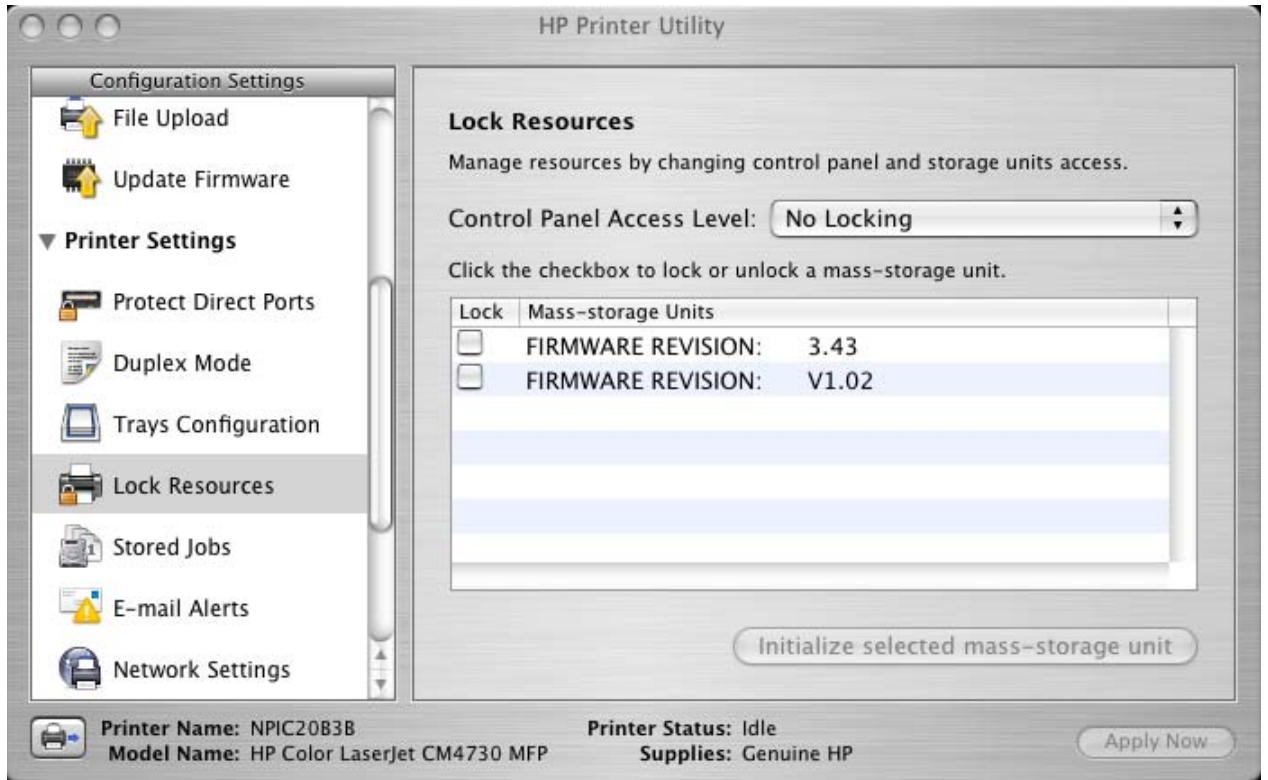


1. Choose **Trays Configuration** to change media size and type for each of the trays installed on your MFP.
2. To change the media size, select a tray and then choose a different media size in the **Default Media Size** drop-down menu.
3. To change the media type, select a tray and then choose a different media type in the **Default Media Type** drop-down menu.
4. Click **Apply Now** to save the settings.

Lock Resources

Select **Lock Resources** to lock certain features of the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP MFP. The **Lock Resources** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-38 Lock Resources screen



In **Control Panel Access Level**, choose one of the following settings:

- **No Locking** provides full control of the MFP.
- **Minimal Locking** provides control over paper-handling features.
- **Moderate Locking** blocks changes in the MFP configuration.
- **Maximal Locking** prevents users from changing MFP control-panel settings.

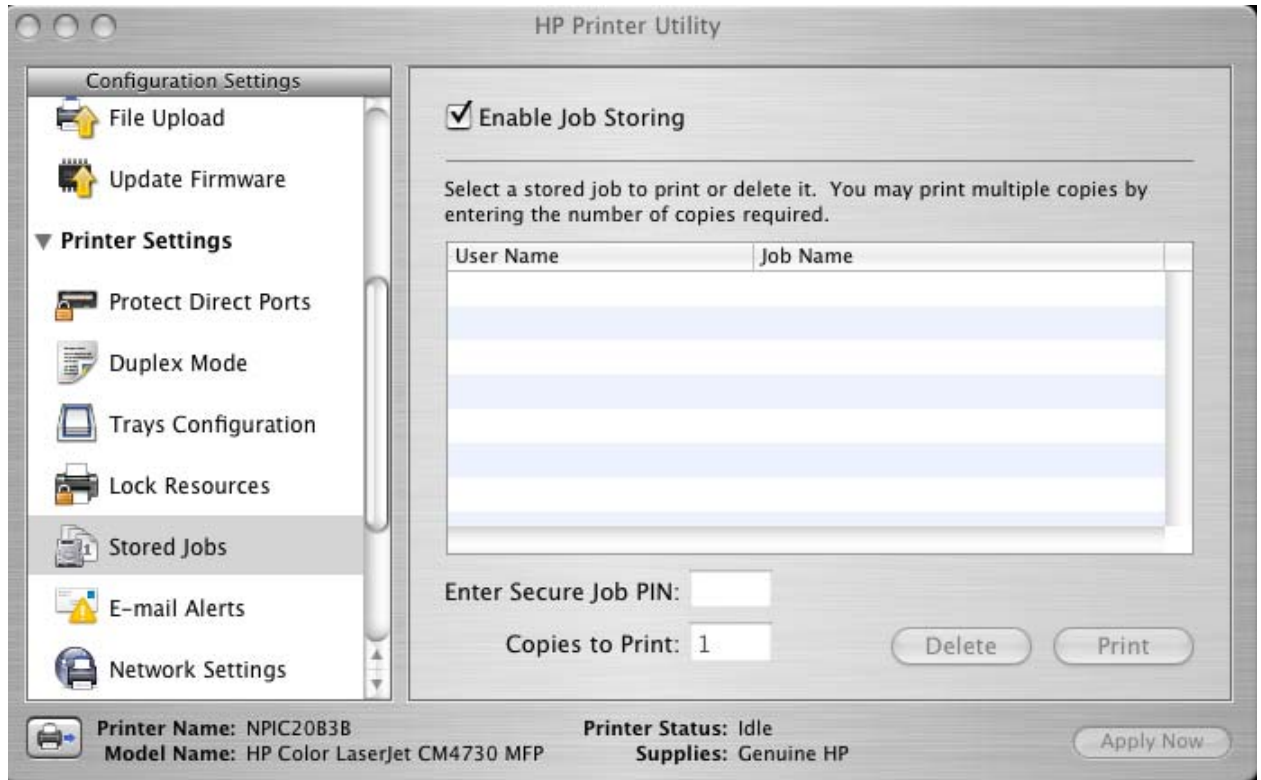
In the lower pane, select the **Lock** check box for the mass-storage unit that you want to lock.

⚠ **WARNING!** Click **Initialize selected mass-storage unit** *only* if you want to erase all data that is currently stored on the hard drive. *You cannot undo this action.*

Stored Jobs

Choose **Stored Jobs** to change the **Enable Job Storing** setting. This setting is selected by default. Click to clear the check box to disable the job-storing feature.

Figure 5-39 Enable Job Storing screen



You can type a PIN for your job in the **Enter Secure Job PIN** field.

Select the number of copies in the **Copies to Print** field.

Select a stored job and click **Print** to print the job.

Select a stored job and click **Delete** to delete the job.

Job-storage print jobs can also be released or deleted at the MFP control panel.

Topics:

- [Releasing a job-storage print job](#)
- [Deleting a job-storage print job](#)

Releasing a job-storage print job

After you send a print job that uses the job-storage feature, you can release the job to print from the MFP control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. In the **Retrieve** tab, touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen. The folder that contains the stored jobs opens.
3. Touch the appropriate job.

- If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. After the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.
4. To print job, touch **Print List**.

Deleting a job-storage print job

Sometimes it is necessary to delete a print job from the MFP memory. Do this from the MFP control panel.

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch the appropriate document.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is unlocked.

4. Touch **Delete**.
5. A message appears: **Do you want to delete this stored job?**

Touch **Yes**. The document is deleted.

Or, do the following:

1. Touch **Job Storage**.
2. Touch the appropriate folder on the left of the screen.
3. Touch appropriate document.
4. Touch **Delete**.

If a PIN is set for the stored job, type the correct PIN. Once the PIN is confirmed, the job is deleted.

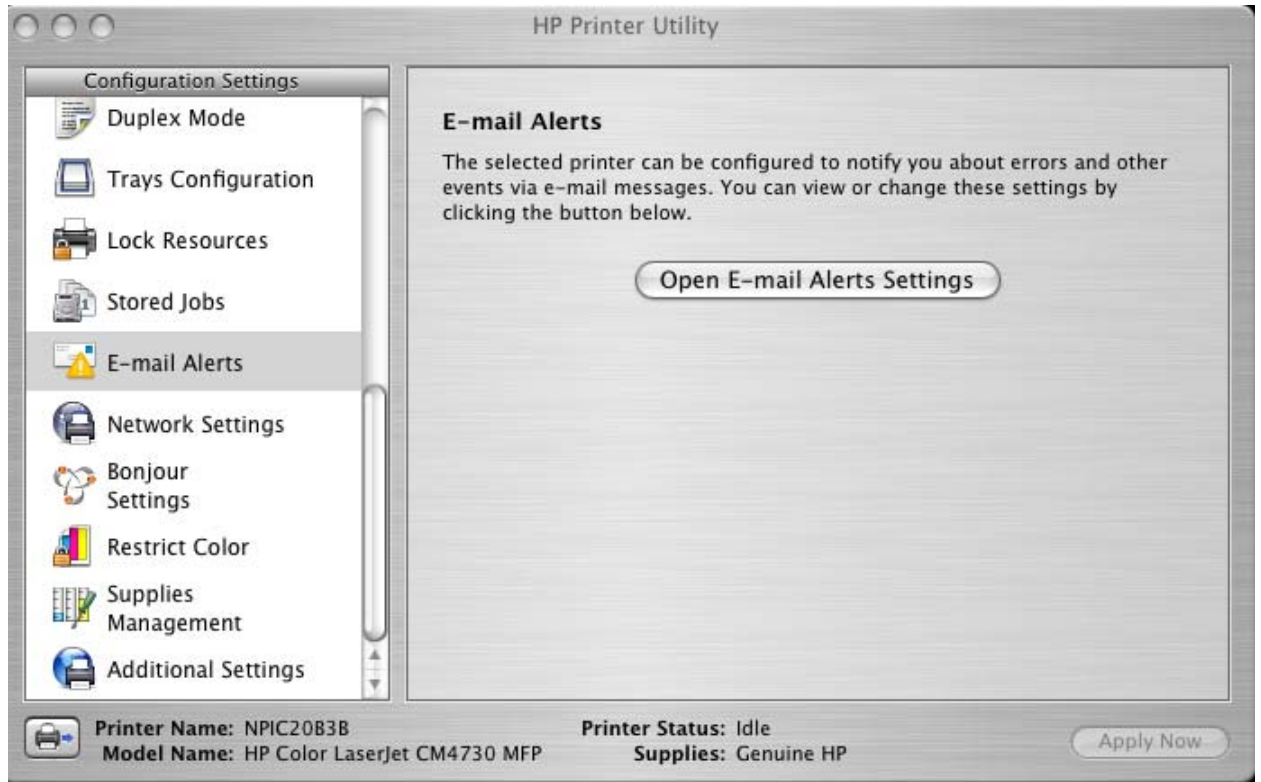
E-mail Alerts

The **E-mail Alerts** screen is available if the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the MFP is installed over a USB connection.

Choose **E-mail Alerts** to configure the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP to send e-mail notifications to users.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from the IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

Figure 5-40 E-mail Alerts screen

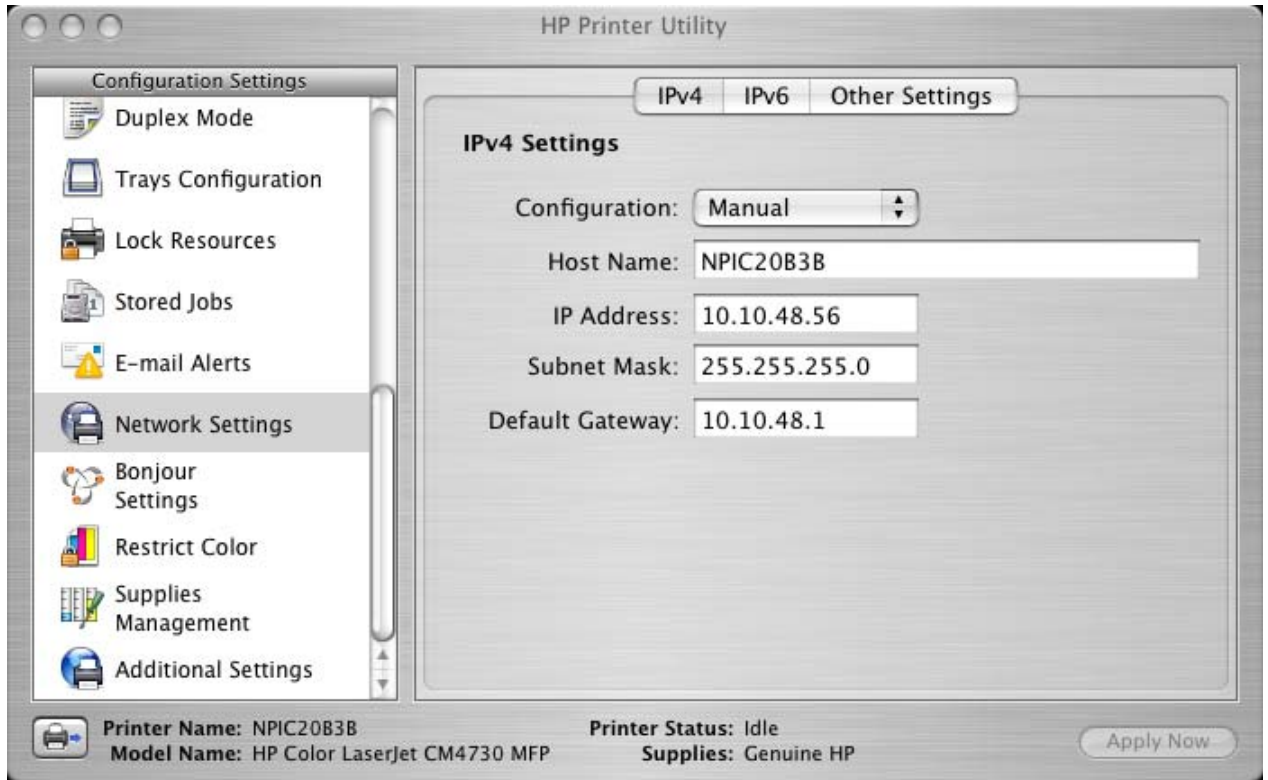


Click **Open E-mail Alerts Settings** to open the HP EWS. The HP EWS opens to the **Alerts** screen on the **Settings** tab, where you can set notifications to manage the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Network Settings

Network Settings is available if the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the MFP is installed over a USB connection.

Figure 5-41 Networking screen



Choose one of the following options in the **Configuration** drop-down menu:

- **DHCP**
- **BootP**
- **Manual**

You can also use this screen to modify the following settings:

- **Host Name**
- **IP Address**
- **Subnet Mask**
- **Default Gateway**

To save new settings, click **Apply Now**.

To view and change other network settings, click **Additional Network Settings**. The HP EWS Networking screen opens.

If a user name and password have been set, you might need to obtain them from your IT administrator. For more information, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

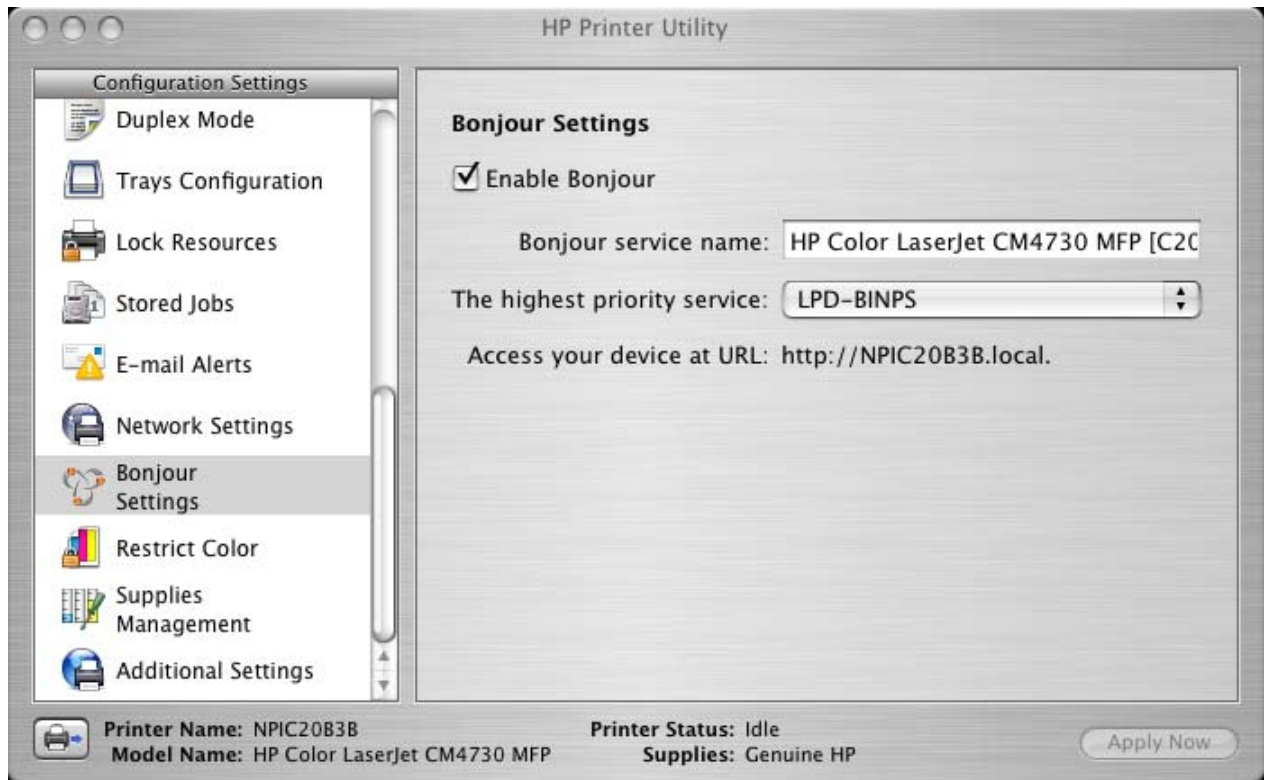
The HP EWS opens to the **Network Settings** screen. For information about this screen, see [Networking tab on page 51](#).

Bonjour Settings

The **Bonjour Settings** screen is available if the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP is installed over a network connection. It is not available when the MFP is installed over a USB connection.

Choose **Bonjour Settings** to open the **Bonjour Settings** screen. Bonjour is enabled by default.

Figure 5-42 Bonjour Settings screen



To disable Bonjour, click to clear the **Enable Bonjour** check box and then click **Apply Now**.

The following options are available in the **The highest priority service** drop-down menu:

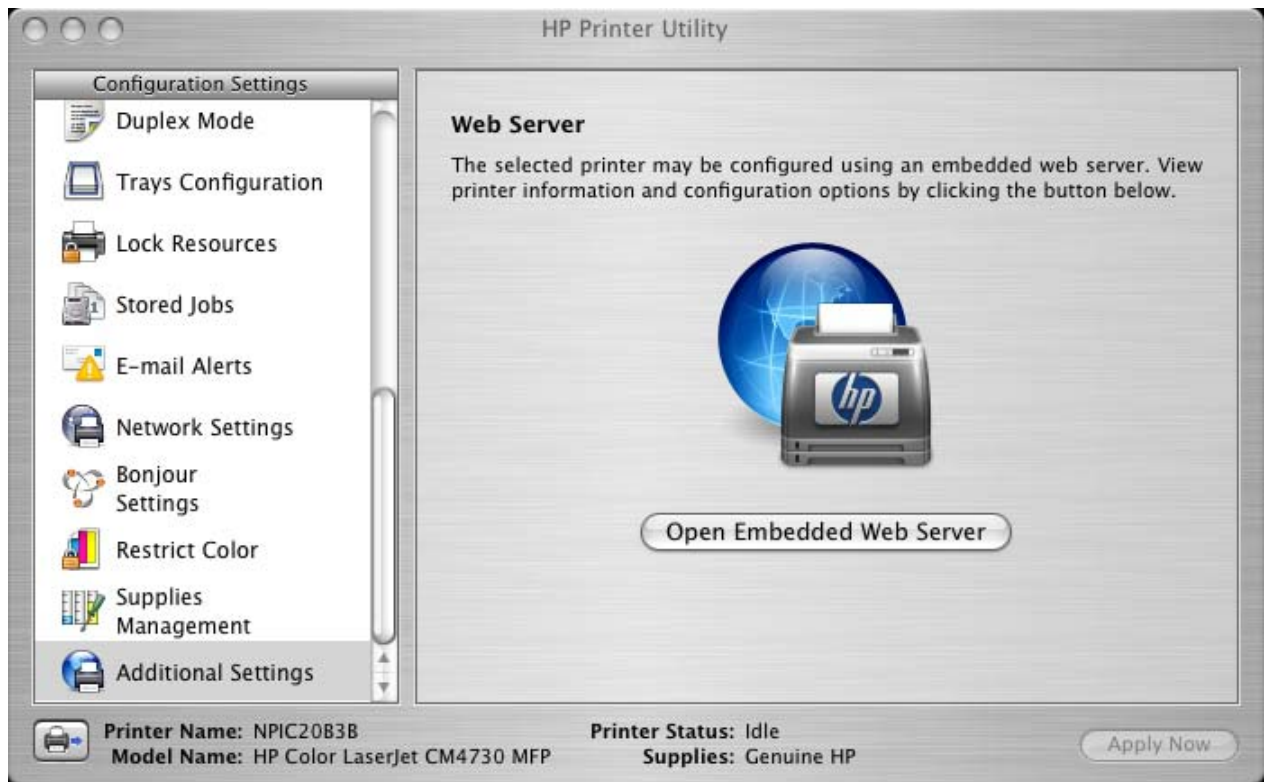
- **Port 9100**
- **IPP**
- **LPD-RAW**
- **LPD-TEXT**
- **LPD-AUTO**
- **LPD-BINPS (default)**

After you select a new setting, click **Apply Now** to save settings.

Additional Settings

Choose **Additional Settings** to gain access to the HP EWS.

Figure 5-43 Additional Settings screen



To open the HP EWS, click **Open Embedded Web Server**.

For information about HP EWS settings, see [HP embedded Web server on page 41](#) or consult the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

HP Embedded Web Server (EWS)

HP EWS is embedded in the MFP firmware. It is a series of Web pages that provide access to additional MFP status and configuration options.

Topics:

- [Access to the HP EWS](#)
- [Information tab](#)
- [Settings tab](#)
- [Networking tab](#)

Access to the HP EWS

Use any one of the following methods to gain access to the HP EWS:

Using the Mac OS Print Center, Printer Setup Utility, or Print & Fax screen:

1. In the **Applications** folder, open the **Utilities** folder, and then run the **Printer Setup Utility** or the **Print Center** utility. You can also access the HP EWS using the **Print & Fax** pane of **System Preferences** (from the Apple menu, choose **System Preferences...**, then choose **Print & Fax**).
2. Select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, and then click **Utility** (Mac OS X V10.3 or later). The Web browser opens and the **Device Status** screen appears. In the **Print & Fax** screen, select the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP, click the **Print Queue...** button, then click **Utility**.

Using a Web browser:

 **NOTE:** This method can only be used if the MFP is using a network connection.

1. On the MFP control panel, print a configuration page.
To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.
 - a. Touch **Administration**.
 - b. Touch **Information**.
 - c. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
 - d. Touch **Configuration Page**.
 - e. Touch **Print** to print the configuration page.The MFP prints the configuration page.
2. On the first configuration page, under **Product Settings**, find the IP Address. Type this address into a Web browser such as Safari. The **Device Status** screen appears.

Using the HP Device Configuration application:

1. In the Applications folder, open the HP EWS Device Configuration folder. Run the HP Device Configuration application.
2. Choose the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP from the list of devices. The Web browser opens and the **Device Status** screen appears.

Figure 5-44 Device Status screen

Information Settings Digital Sending Networking

Device Status

Configuration Page
Supplies Status
Event Log
Usage Page
Diagnostics Page
Device Information
Control Panel
Color Usage Job Log
Print

Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)

Device Status

Sleep mode on

Pause/Resume Continue

Supplies

Black Cartridge 41% Cyan Cartridge 43% Magenta Cartridge 50% Yellow Cartridge 53%

Image Transfer Kit 93% Image Fuser Kit 95% Document Feeder Kit 100%

[Supplies Details](#)

Media

Input/Output	Status	Capacity	Size	Type
Tray 1	Empty	100 Sheets	Any Size	Any Type
Tray 2	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 3	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 4	OK	500 Sheets	Legal	Plain
Left output bin	OK	N/A	N/A	

[Change Settings](#)

Click the **Supplies Status** link to open the **Supplies Status** screen.

Click the **Change Settings** link to open the **Configure Device** screen on the **Settings** tab.

The following sections describe the screens and features that are available in the HP EWS.

Information tab

The **Information** tab allows you to access and print out detailed information regarding MFP and supply status, MFP configuration, network configuration, and usage.

The **Status** tab contains the following pages:

- [Device Status](#)
- [Configuration page](#)
- [Supplies Status page](#)
- [Event Log](#)
- [Usage Page](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [Control Panel](#)
- [Print](#)

Device Status

The **Device Status** page shows MFP status messages from the MFP. The **Device Status** page also displays some pertinent MFP information and MFP settings.

Figure 5-45 HP EWS – **Device Status** page

Device Status

Sleep mode on

Pause/Resume Continue

Supplies

Black Cartridge 41% Cyan Cartridge 43% Magenta Cartridge 50% Yellow Cartridge 53%

Image Transfer Kit 93% Image Fuser Kit 95% Document Feeder Kit 100%

[Supplies Details](#)

Media

Input/Output	Status	Capacity	Size	Type
Tray 1	Empty	100 Sheets	Any Size	Any Type
Tray 2	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 3	OK	500 Sheets	Letter	Plain
Tray 4	OK	500 Sheets	Legal	Plain
Left output bin	OK	N/A	N/A	

[Change Settings](#)

Configuration page

The **Configuration Page** displays the values of all of the settings available to be set in the MFP. The contents of this screen are consistent with the configuration page generated by the firmware.

Figure 5-46 HP EWS – **Configuration Page** screen

Information Settings Digital Sending Networking

Device Status
Configuration Page
Supplies Status
Event Log
Usage Page
Diagnostics Page
Device Information
Control Panel
Color Usage Job Log
Print

Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)

Configuration Page

Device Information

Product Name:	HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP
Device Name:	HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP
Model Number:	CXXXXA
Device Serial Number:	XXXXXXXXXX
Formatter Number:	G7000LZ
DC Controller:	\$D
CPB:	1.031 (2.0)
SCB:	CMNPSL 23
Firmware:	20070203 20070208
Duplex Unit Version:	8
Output Accessory Bridge Version:	8
Optional Trays Version:	8
Service ID:	00000
PS Wait Time-out:	300 seconds
Engine Cycles:	3256
Color Cycle Count:	2767
Document Feeder Kit Interval:	90000
Pages Since Last Doc Feeder Maintenance:	34

Options

PCL:	(20010402)
PCLXL:	(20010402)
POSTSCRIPT:	(20010402)
PDF:	(20080131)
DIMM Slot 1:	256 MB DDR
DIMM Slot 2:	128 MB DDR
Card Slot 1:	SMART ATA FLASH DISK: 2 MB
Card Slot 2:	Empty
Card Slot 3:	Empty
EIO 1:	Empty
EIO 2:	HP Scanner Processor Card
Embedded Jetdirect:	HP JetDirect J7991E 10.10.48.56
Internal Disk:	ST340014AS: 37 GB
Internal Fax:	
Disk Storage:	37910 MB Capacity
Card Slot Storage:	2 MB Capacity
LDAP Gateway:	Not Configured
SMTP Gateway:	Not Configured
hp MFP Digital Sending Server:	Not Configured

Memory

Installed DIMM Memory:	384 MB
On Board Memory:	
System:	0 MB
Imaging:	64 MB
Total RAM:	448 MB
DWS:	70.00

Automatic resource saving enabled

Security

Control Panel Lock:	None
Control Panel Password:	Disabled
Device Type: Disk:	Write Protect: Disabled
Device Type: Card Slot:	Write Protect: Disabled
File System Access:	
P.LL:	Enabled
P.W.L:	Enabled
NFS:	Enabled
PostScript:	Enabled
Secure Disk Erase Mode:	Non-secure fast erase
Direct Ports (USB/Ether 1284):	Enabled

Paper Trays and Options

Default Paper Size:	Letter
Tray 1 Size:	Any Size
Tray 1 Type:	Any Type
Tray 2 Size:	Letter
Tray 2 Type:	Plain
Tray 3 Size:	Letter
Tray 3 Type:	Plain
Tray 4 Size:	Legal
Tray 4 Type:	Plain

Internal

Input Trays:

- TRAY 1, 100 Sheets
- TRAY 2, 500 Sheets
- TRAY 3, 500 Sheets
- TRAY 4, 500 Sheets

Device 1:
HEWLETT-PACKARD
HP 800 SHEET STAPLER/STACKER [MP04.24]Q5691A
Output Bins:

- Left output bin, 500 Sheets, Face Down, Stapler

Calibration Information

Last CPR (Engine Cycles): 2884
Last CPR: 29 Mar 2007/14:41
Last DMaxDHalf (Engine Cycles): 3242
Last DMaxDHalf: 5 Apr 2007/11:30 @

Color Density

	C	M	Y	K
Highlights	0	0	0	0
Midtones	0	0	0	0
Shadows	0	0	0	0

Supplies Status page

The **Supplies Status** page displays the status of all of the supplies used by the MFP, including the black, cyan, magenta, and yellow print cartridges.

Figure 5-47 HP EWS – **Supplies Status** page

Device Status

Configuration Page

Supplies Status

Event Log

Usage Page

Diagnostics Page

Device Information

Control Panel

Color Usage Job Log

Print

Other Links

[hp instant support](#)


[Shop for Supplies](#)

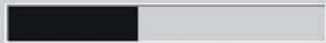
[Product Support](#)

Supplies Status

Ordering Information

Hewlett-Packard supplies can be ordered on the Internet, on-line through your device software, or by calling an authorized reseller. Refer to your User Guide for instructions.


 **Black Cartridge**
Order HP Part: Q8480A 41%

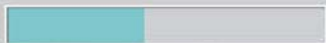


Approximate Pages Remaining: 3683
(Will vary depending on types of documents printed.)
Low Reached: No
Serial Number: 33694881
Pages printed with this supply: 5301
First Install Date: 20050906
Last Used Date: 20070409

 **Image Transfer Kit**
Order HP Part: Q7504A 93%




 **Cyan Cartridge**
Order HP Part: Q8481A 43%




Approximate Pages Remaining: 6179
(Will vary depending on types of documents printed.)
Low Reached: No
Serial Number: 33695324
Pages printed with this supply: 8191
First Install Date: 20050811
Last Used Date: 20070409

 **Image Fuser Kit**
Order HP Part: 110V-Q7502A, 220V-Q7503A 95%




 **Magenta Cartridge**
Order HP Part: Q8483A 50%




Approximate Pages Remaining: 8191
(Will vary depending on types of documents printed.)
Low Reached: No
Serial Number: 33695282
Pages printed with this supply: 8191
First Install Date: 20050811
Last Used Date: 20070409

 **Document Feeder Kit**
Order HP Part: Q5997A 100%



 **Yellow Cartridge**
Order HP Part: Q8482A 53%



Approximate Pages Remaining: 9236
(Will vary depending on types of documents printed.)
Low Reached: No
Serial Number: 33694469
Pages printed with this supply: 8191
First Install Date: 20050811
Last Used Date: 20070409

Return & Recycling

Please return your genuine HP supplies for recycling to Hewlett-Packard. For more information, please visit us at <http://www.hp.com/go/recycle>

Event Log

Use the **Event Log** screen to track the events that occur on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Figure 5-48 HP EWS – **Event Log** screen

- Device Status
- Configuration Page
- Supplies Status
- Event Log**
- Usage Page
- Diagnostics Page
- Device Information
- Control Panel
- Color Usage Job Log
- Print

- Other Links**
- [hp instant support](#)
 - [Shop for Supplies](#)
 - [Product Support](#)

Event Log

Current Engine Cycles: 3256
 Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXXXX
 Number of Entries in Use: 36
 Maximum Number of Entries: 50

Number	Date and Time	Engine Cycles	Event	Firmware Description or Personality
36	2007-Mar-29 05:43 PM	3068	68.0305	
35	2007-Mar-29 05:25 PM	3067	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
34	2007-Mar-29 05:21 PM	3064	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
33	2007-Mar-29 03:44 PM	2904	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
32	2007-Mar-28 11:07 PM	2724	13.20.00	PRINTER COULD NOT AUTOMATICALLY EJECT PAPER
31	2007-Mar-28 11:06 PM	2724	13.05.00	FUSER OUTPUT, PAPER LATE JAM
30	2007-Mar-28 09:31 PM	2694	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
29	2007-Mar-28 09:20 PM	2691	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
28	2007-Mar-28 09:00 PM	2661	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
27	2007-Mar-28 08:54 PM	2654	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
26	2007-Mar-28 08:48 PM	2652	13.01.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
25	2007-Mar-28 08:10 PM	2555	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
24	2007-Mar-28 08:06 PM	2554	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
23	2007-Mar-28 08:04 PM	2553	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
22	2007-Mar-28 08:01 PM	2550	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
21	2007-Mar-28 07:59 PM	2549	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
20	2007-Mar-19 09:05 AM	2339	13.20.00	PRINTER COULD NOT AUTOMATICALLY EJECT PAPER
19	2007-Mar-19 09:03 AM	2339	13.30.00	Paper feed 1, paper late jam
18	2007-Feb-09 01:51 PM	1935	99.00.25	Upgrade skipped, matching versions
17	2007-Feb-09 01:41 PM	1930	68.3D0B	
16	2007-Feb-09 01:17 PM	1936	99.00.25	Upgrade skipped, matching versions
15	2007-Jan-25 08:44 AM	1930	10.40.00	Genuine HP supplies installed
14	2007-Jan-23 01:06 PM	1930	10.32.00	Unauthorized supply in use
13	2007-Jan-22 09:22 AM	1930	10.00.00	Memory error on supply
12	2007-Jan-22 08:58 AM	1930	10.10.00	Missing memory on supply
11	2007-Jan-17 08:26 AM	1930	68.3D0A	
10	2007-Jan-17 08:26 AM	1930	68.3D10	
9	2007-Jan-17 08:26 AM	1930	68.3D09	
8	2006-Dec-11 01:16 PM	954	13.20.00	PRINTER COULD NOT AUTOMATICALLY EJECT PAPER
7	2006-Dec-11 01:15 PM	954	13.31.00	FUSER OUTPUT, PAPER LATE JAM
6	2006-Dec-08 01:01 PM	950	10.50.10	
5	2006-Dec-05 01:05 PM	40	10.50.10	
4	2006-Dec-05 01:02 PM	45	55.00.00	
3	2006-Nov-17 09:37 AM	4	13.12.00	DUPLEX PATH, PAPER LATE JAM
2	2006-Nov-16 03:28 AM	9	55.00.00	



Usage Page

The **Usage Page** screen gives a page count for each size of media that has passed through the product, as well as the number of duplexed pages. The total is calculated by multiplying the sum of the print count values by the Units value.

The information on this screen can be used to determine how much toner or paper to keep on hand. The **Usage Page** is shown in the following figures.

Figure 5-49 Usage Page screen (1 of 2)

- Device Status
- Configuration Page
- Supplies Status
- Event Log
- Usage Page**
- Diagnostics Page
- Device Information
- Control Panel
- Color Usage Job Log
- Print

- Other Links**
- [hp instant support](#)
 - [Shop for Supplies](#)
 - [Product Support](#)

Usage Page

Device Information
 Printer Serial Number: XXXXXXXXXXXX
 Device Name: HP Color LaserJet CM4730 MFP

Usage Totals (equivalent)

Printer Page Size	Simplex		Duplex		Duplex		Total		Duplex		Duplex	
	Mono	Color	Units	Mono	Color	Units	Mono	Color	Total	1 Image Mono	1 Image Color	
Letter	65	740	1.0	190	1,015	2.0	465.0	2770.0	3235.0	1	2	
Legal	0	21	1.3	0	0	2.6	0.0	27.3	27.3	0	0	
A4	0	0	1.0	0	0	2.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0	
Executive	0	0	0.8	0	0	1.6	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0	
Envelope #10	0	0	0.4	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Envelope Monarch	0	0	0.3	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Envelope C5	0	0	0.6	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Envelope DL	0	0	0.4	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
B5(JIS)	0	0	0.7	0	0	1.4	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0	
Envelope B5	0	0	0.7	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Custom	0	0	1.0	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Dpostcard(JIS)	0	0	0.5	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
A5	0	0	0.5	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
16K	0	0	0.8	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
8.5x13	0	0	1.1	0	0	2.2	0.0	0.0	0.0	0	0	
Statement	0	0	0.5	**	**	**	0.0	0.0	0.0	**	**	
Total Printer Usage	465.0 2797.3 3262.3											

Total Copy Pages Printed: 328
 Total Fax Pages Printed: 0

Scanned (Copy, Send, & Fax) Page Size	Simplex Count	Simplex Units	Duplex Count	Duplex Units	Total
Letter	28	1.0	3	2.0	34.0
Legal	0	1.3	0	2.6	0.0
A4	0	1.0	0	2.0	0.0
Executive	0	0.8	0	1.6	0.0
B5(JIS)	0	0.7	0	1.4	0.0
A5	0	0.5	0	1.0	0.0
8.5x13	0	1.1	0	2.2	0.0
Statement	0	0.5	0	1.0	0.0
Total Scanner Usage					34.0

Copy Job Scan Count: 26
 Send Job Scan Count: 2
 ADF Simplex Pages: 28
 ADF Duplex Pages: 0
 ADF Total Pages: 28
 Flatbed Scan Count: 0

Print Modes & Paper Path Usage (actual)

Print Mode	Mono	Color	Total
Auto sense mode	465	2791	3256
Normal mode	0	0	0
Light mode	0	0	0
Heavy mode	0	0	0
Cardstock mode	0	0	0
Transparency mode	0	0	0
Envelope mode	0	0	0
Label mode	0	0	0
Tough paper mode	0	0	0
X-resistive mode	0	0	0
Extra heavy mode	0	0	0
Humid trns mode	0	0	0
Humid tough mode	0	0	0
Glossy mode	0	0	0
Heavyglossy mode	0	0	0
Intermediate mode	0	0	0
Rough mode	0	0	0
X-hvyglossy mode	0	0	0
4m m trns mode	0	0	0
L1 rough mode 1	0	0	0
L1 rough mode 2	0	0	0
Total			3256

Paper Path Usage Source	Count	Destination	Count
Envelope Feeder	0	Face Up	0
Manual Feed Tray	116	Face Down	0
Tray 1	256	External Bin	3256
Tray 2	1629	Other	0
Tray 3	1234	Total	3256
External Tray	0		
Other	21		
Total	3256		

Historical Device Coverage

Black 7.9%
 Cyan 4.9%
 Magenta 4.2%
 Yellow 3.3%



Device Information

The **Device Information** screen shows the following information:

- Device name
- Device location
- Asset number
- Company name
- Contact person
- Product name
- Device model
- Device serial number

The product name, MFP model, and MFP serial number are generated automatically. You can configure the other information on this screen from the **Device Information** screen on the **Settings** tab.

Figure 5-50 HP EWS – Device Information screen

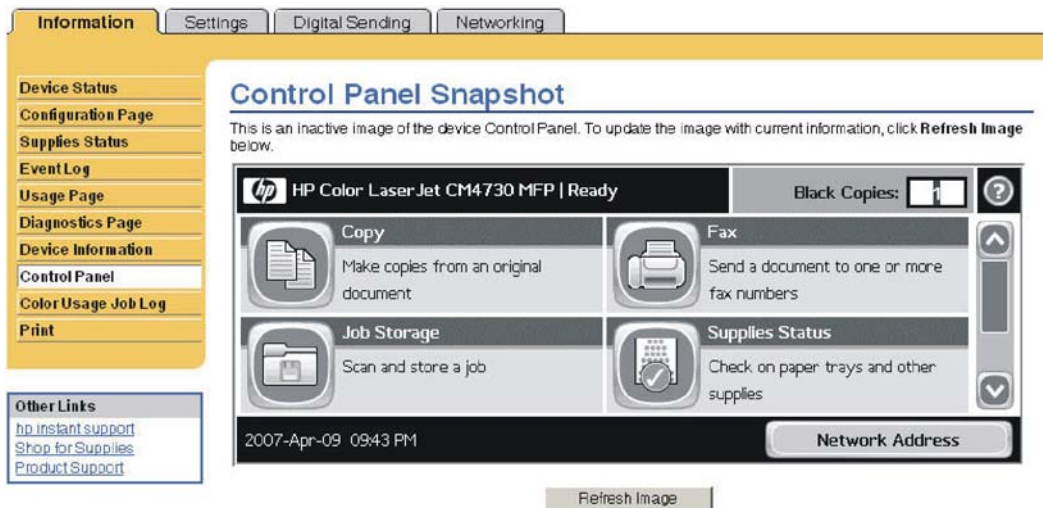


Control Panel


The **Control Panel** screen shows the product control-panel display as if you were standing at the product. Because this view shows the product status, it can help you troubleshoot problems with the product.

 **NOTE:** The appearance of the screen might vary, depending on your product.

Figure 5-51 HP EWS – Control Panel Screen



Print

 **NOTE:** The **Print** screen (and the **Print** menu on the left) is available only if it has been configured to appear on the **Security** screen under the **Settings** tab. Use the **Security** screen to disable the **Print** screen if you do not want it to appear for security reasons. For more information, see [Security on page 250](#).

Use the **Print** screen to print print-ready files or to update your product firmware remotely.

You can use the **Print** screen to print one file at a time from a product that supports the HP EWS. This feature is especially useful if you are a mobile user, because you do not have to install the product's print driver in order to print; you can print anywhere at any time.

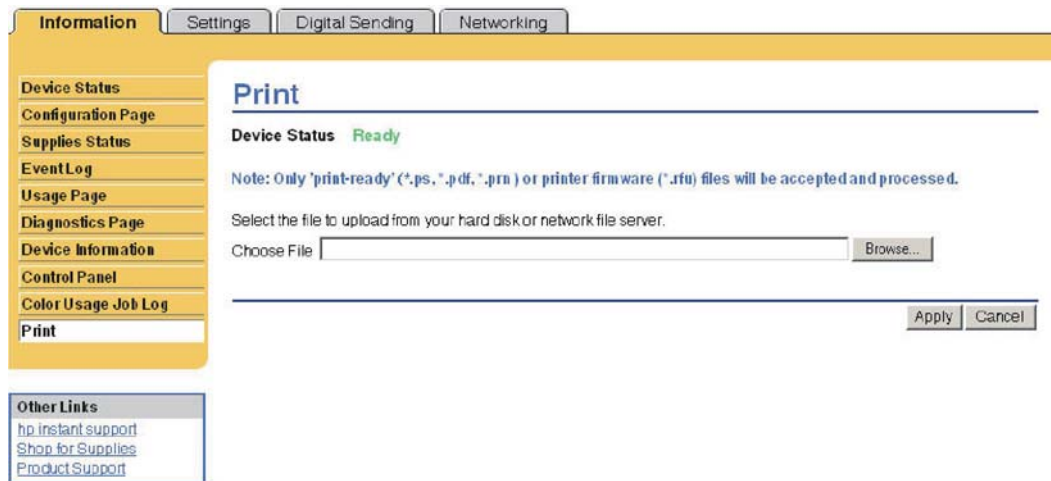
You can print print-ready files, such as documents that have been generated by using a "print to file" driver option. Print-ready files commonly have file name extensions such as .PS (postscript), .PDF (Adobe Portable Document Format), and .PRN (Windows print-ready File).

You can also use the **Print** screen to update your product firmware. This feature is especially useful because you do not have to install additional software in order to update the product firmware. When updated firmware files are available for your product, you can download them your product support Web site:

www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

The Print screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-52 HP EWS – **Print** screen



Printing a file or updating firmware from the Print screen

Use the following procedure to print a file or update product firmware from the **Print** screen.

1. Select a file that resides on your machine or on your network by clicking **Browse** to browse to a file that you want to print.
2. Click **Apply**.

Settings tab

The **Settings** tab allows you to view and change settings for the following features:

- [Configure Device](#)
- [E-mail Server](#)
- [Alerts](#)
- [AutoSend](#)
- [Security](#)
- [Edit Other Links](#)
- [Device Information](#)
- [Language](#)
- [Date & Time](#)
- [Wake Time](#)
- [Restrict Colors](#)

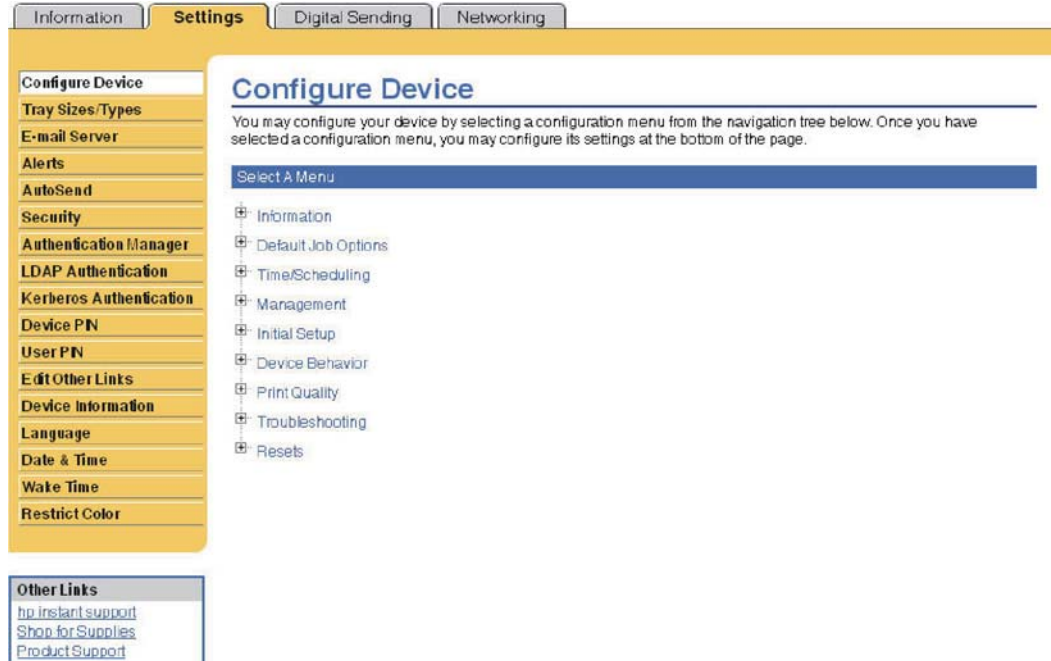
Configure Device

You can use the **Configure Device** screen to print device information pages and configure the MFP remotely.

The menus on this screen are similar to the menus that are available at your MFP control panel. Some of the MFP control-panel menus are not available from the HP EWS. See the documentation that came with your MFP for more information about the different menus that your MFP supports.

The **Configure Device** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-53 HP EWS – **Configure Device** screen



Using the menus on the **Configure Device** screen

The following procedure is provided *only* as an example. Similar procedures can be used to set other menu items.

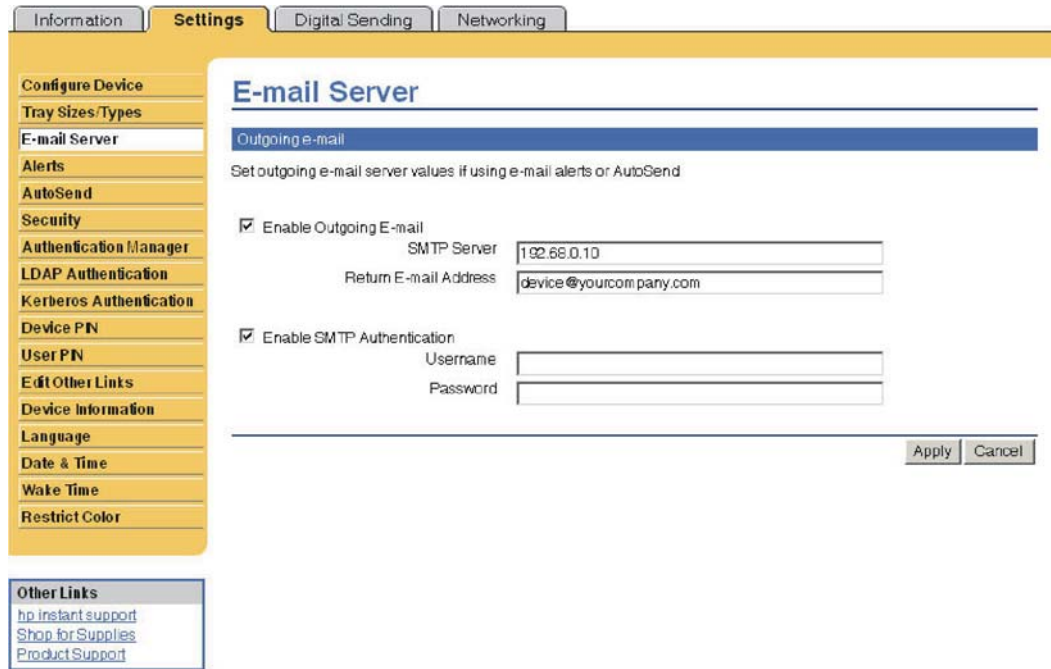
Follow these steps to print a configuration page (example procedure).

1. Click **INFORMATION**.
2. Select the check box for the information page that you want to view or print, and then click **Apply**.

E-mail Server

Use the **E-mail Server** screen to configure e-mail settings for outgoing e-mail. Use the settings on this screen to send and receive e-mail messages, including product alerts. The **E-mail Server** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-54 HP EWS – **E-mail Server** screen



Configuring outgoing e-mail

You must configure outgoing e-mail if you intend to use the Alerts or AutoSend features.

1. Gather the following information. (Your organization's network or e-mail administrator typically provides the information that is required to configure outgoing mail.)
 - The TCP/IP address of the simple mail transfer protocol (SMTP) mail server on your network. The EWS uses the SMTP server TCP/IP address to relay e-mail messages to other computers.
 - The e-mail domain name suffix that is used to address e-mail messages within your organization.
2. Select the **Enable Outgoing E-mail** check box.
3. Type the SMTP server TCP/IP address in the **SMTP Server** text box.
4. Type the domain name in the **Domain Name** text box.
5. Click **Apply** to save the changes.

Configuring the return e-mail address

When you configure the return e-mail address on the **E-mail Server** page, you are configuring the identity of the product. For example, if you type *anyone* in the **Username** field and *your . company . com* in the **Domain Name** field, all e-mails sent out by the product will come from *anyone@your . company . com*. In this example, *anyone@your . company . com* is the identity of the product.

Alerts

From the **Alerts** screen, IT administrators can set up the product to send problem and status alerts to anyone through e-mail messages. When this function is configured, alerts are automatically triggered

about supplies, paper-path status, and other service and advisory information. More than one individual can receive alerts, with each person receiving only specific alerts. For example, an administrative assistant might be responsible for ordering print cartridges or fixing jams, and could receive advanced warning when toner is low or a jam occurs. Similarly, the long-life supplies might be handled by an external service provider, who could receive alerts about performing product maintenance, loading the front or rear stapler, and similar needs.

 **NOTE:** A user can create up to four different destination lists, with up to 20 recipients on each list.

By selecting the **Remove Control Panel Supplies Status Messages** option (available on the **Alerts - setup** screen that appears when you press the **New Destination List** button), you can suppress the **Cartridge low** or **Cartridge out** supplies status messages on the control panel. The message is suppressed at the control panel only if one or both of these alerts has first been selected to be received.

The **Alerts** screen is shown in the following figure.


 **NOTE:** In order for alerts to function, outgoing e-mail must be enabled. To enable outgoing mail, see [Configuring outgoing e-mail on page 246](#).

Figure 5-55 HP EWS – **Alerts** screen

- Configure Device
- Tray Sizes/Types
- E-mail Server
- Alerts**
- AutoSend
- Security
- Authentication Manager
- LDAP Authentication
- Kerberos Authentication
- Device PIN
- User PIN
- Edit Other Links
- Device Information
- Language
- Date & Time
- Wake Time
- Restrict Color

- Other Links**
- [hp instant support](#)
 - [Shop for Supplies](#)
 - [Product Support](#)

Alerts - setup

Step 1: Type the list name

Type a name for your destination list.

ListName:

Step 2: Type the alert destinations

Type a maximum of 20 alert destinations in any of the following forms:

- An e-mail address (e.g., your-name@your-company.com)
- A mobile device (e.g., 208-555-5555@mobile-company.net)
- A posting to a website (e.g., <http://www.your-server.com >)

Separate alert destinations using a semi-colon (;) or a comma (,).

AlertDestinations:

Step 3: Select Alerts

Select the alerts that you would like the alert destinations to receive. The most common alerts are listed here.

Alert Name	Selected	Threshold*
Order Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="10"/> (0-100) percent
Order Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Replace Staple Cartridge	<input type="checkbox"/>	
Non-HP Supply Installed	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	
Remove Paper Jam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Close Drawers, Doors And Covers	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Empty (Load)	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
Tray Open	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed
ADF Paper Jam	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/>	<input type="text" value="2"/> minutes elapsed

* Changes to threshold values apply to all destinations for this device.

Additional Alerts

To view all of the alerts for this product, click the **Show All Alerts** button.

Note: Clicking this button saves your current changes and opens the page that lists all of the alerts options.

Step 4: Select Control Panel Messages to Suppress

Select the message(s) below that you do not want to show on the device control panel. The option is available only if the corresponding e-mail alert has been selected in the previous step.

Order and Replace Cartridge

Step 5: Select e-mail attachments (optional)

Select the attachments that you want to include with each e-mail alert message in this destination list. Go to the **Information** tab to see examples of these pages.

- Supplies Status Page
- Usage Page
- Configuration Page
- Event Log Page

Select this option if one of the alert destinations you have chosen to receive alerts is an automated computer system.

XML Data

For information about using the **Alerts** screen, see the *HP Embedded Web Server User Guide*.

AutoSend

Use the **AutoSend** screen to send product-configuration and supplies-usage information periodically to e-mail destinations of your choice, such as service providers. This feature establishes a relationship with Hewlett-Packard Company or another service provider to provide you with services that include, but are not limited to, print-cartridge replacement, pay-per-page contracts, support agreements, and usage tracking. A user can add up to twenty AutoSend destinations. The **AutoSend** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-56 HP EWS – AutoSend screen

Information Settings Digital Sending Networking

Configure Device
Tray Sizes/Types
E-mail Server
Alerts
AutoSend
Security
Authentication Manager
LDAP Authentication
Kerberos Authentication
Device PN
User PN
Edit Other Links
Device Information
Language
Date & Time
Wake Time
Restrict Color

Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)

AutoSend

Enable AutoSend

The AutoSend feature enables your product to periodically send configuration and supplies usage information to a list of destinations. Enable the 'Send to HP' feature if you have a relationship with Hewlett-Packard that provides you services such as proactive cartridge replacement, pay per page contracts, support agreements, or usage tracking.

Note: To use AutoSend, you must first [configure your E-mail Server](#)

Enable AutoSend

Send every days (1-28)
 weeks (1-4)
 months (1-6)
 pages printed (50-30000)

Type a maximum of 20 e-mail destinations (e.g., your-name@your-company.com) below:
Separate e-mail destinations using a semi-colon (;) or a comma (,).

E-Mail destinations

Send to HP ([Hewlett-Packard Online Privacy Statement](#))

Turn on the AutoSend feature

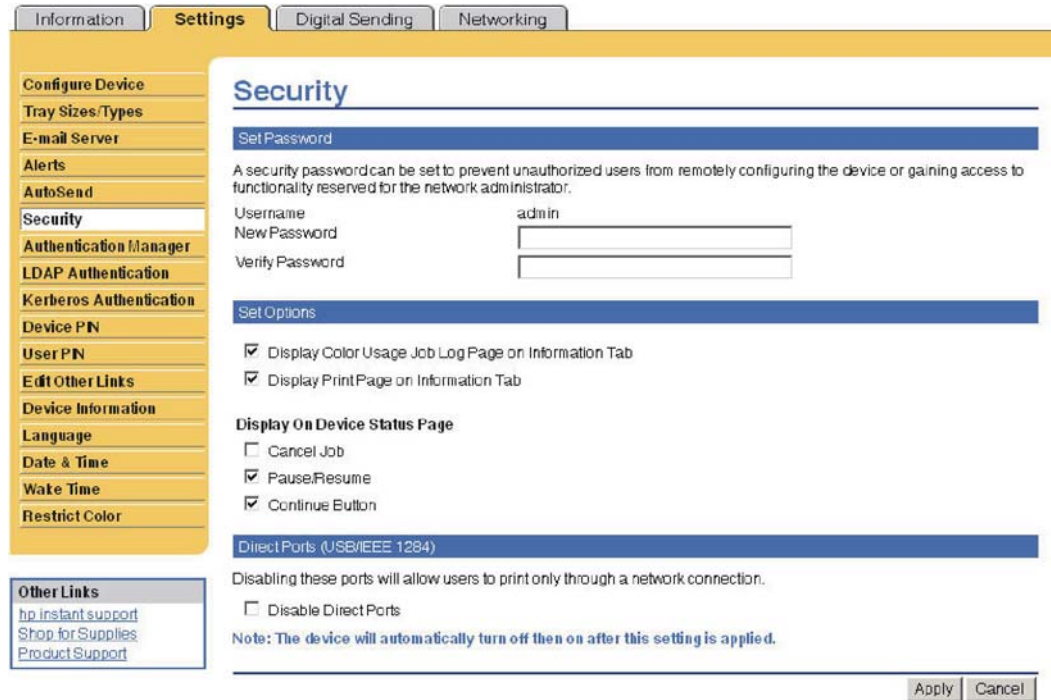
Use the following procedure to make the AutoSend feature available.

1. Make outgoing e-mail functions available by following the instructions that are listed in this chapter. (For more information, see [E-mail Server on page 245](#).)
2. Select the **Enable AutoSend** check box.
3. Click an option to specify the interval at which you want the product to send the product-configuration and supplies-usage information to the e-mail recipients (determined in the next step), and then type the number of days, weeks, months, or pages printed.
4. Configure up to 20 destinations using the format that appears on the screen.
5. To send MFP configuration and supplies status information to HP, select the **Send to HP** check box.
6. Click **Apply**.

Security

The Security screen is shown in the following figure.

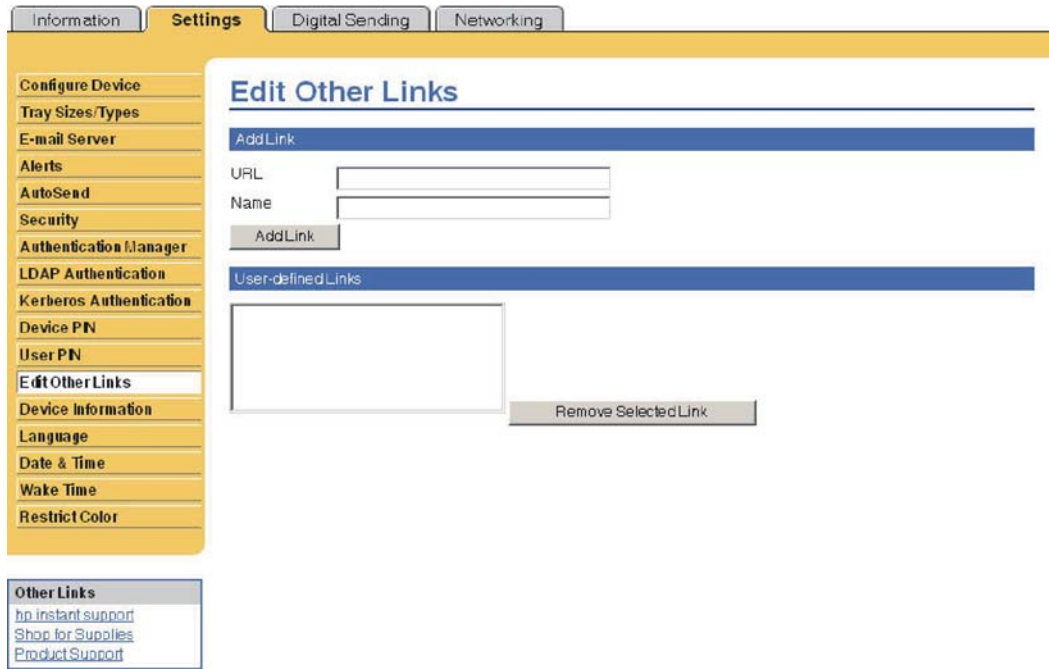
Figure 5-57 HP EWS – Security screen



Edit Other Links

Use the **Edit Other Links** screen to add or customize up to five links to the Web sites of your choice (see the following note). These links appear throughout the HP EWS screens in the **Other Links** box beneath the left navigational bar. Three permanent links (**hp instant support**, **Shop for Supplies**, and **Product Support**) have already been established. The **Edit Other Links** screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-58 HP EWS – Edit Other Links screen



Adding a link

Use this procedure to add a link.

1. Under **Add Link**, type the URL and the name of the link as you would like it to appear in the HP EWS.
2. Click **Add Link**.

Removing a link

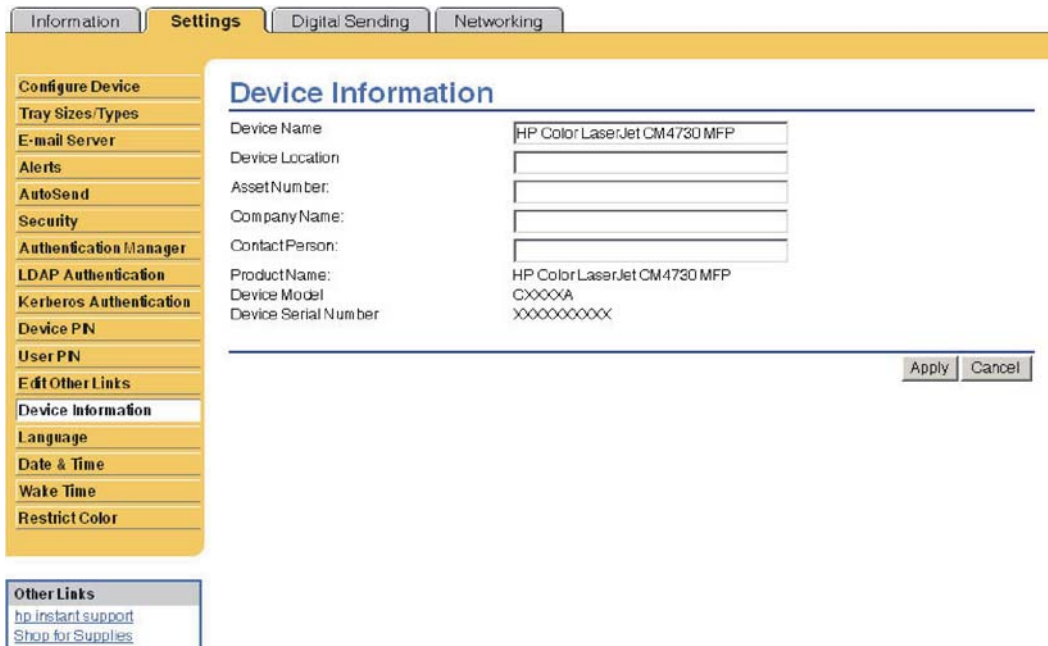
Use this procedure to remove a link.

1. Under **User-defined Links**, select the link or links that you would like to remove.
2. Click **Remove Selected Link**.

Device Information

Use the **Device Information** screen to provide a name of your choice for the MFP, assign an asset number, and configure the company name, the person to contact about the MFP, and the physical location of the MFP. The MFP TCP/IP address, MFP name, MFP model, and serial number are also available on this screen.

Figure 5-59 HP EWS – **Device Information** screen



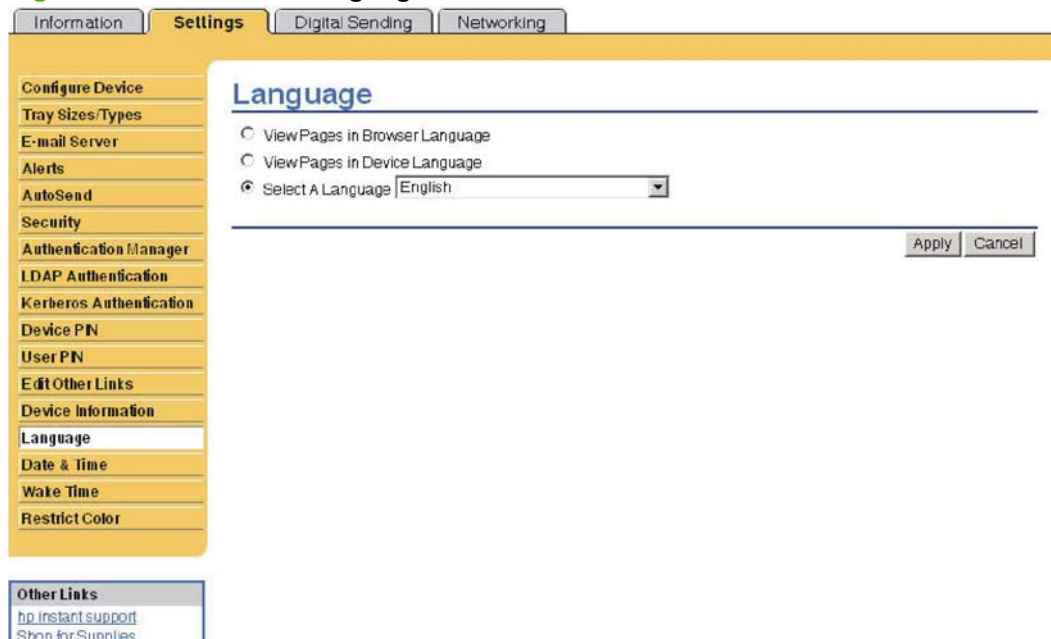
If you make any changes on the Device Information screen, click **Apply** to save the changes.

The information that is typed here appears on the Device Information screen that can be opened from the **Information** tab. It also appears in e-mail messages that are sent from the product. This might be useful if you need to locate the product to replace supplies or fix a problem.

Language

Use the **Language** screen to select the language in which the HP EWS screens appear. The Language screen is shown in the following figure.

Figure 5-60 HP EWS – **Language** screen



- △ **CAUTION:** Selecting **View Pages in Device Language** or **Select A Language** changes the language for everyone who uses the HP EWS.

The default language is the language that the Web browser is currently using. If your browser and control panel both use a language that is not available for the HP EWS, English is selected as the default. If you make any changes on the Language screen, click **Apply** to save your changes.

Date & Time

Use the **Date & Time** screen to update the product time. The **Date & Time** screen is shown in the following figure.

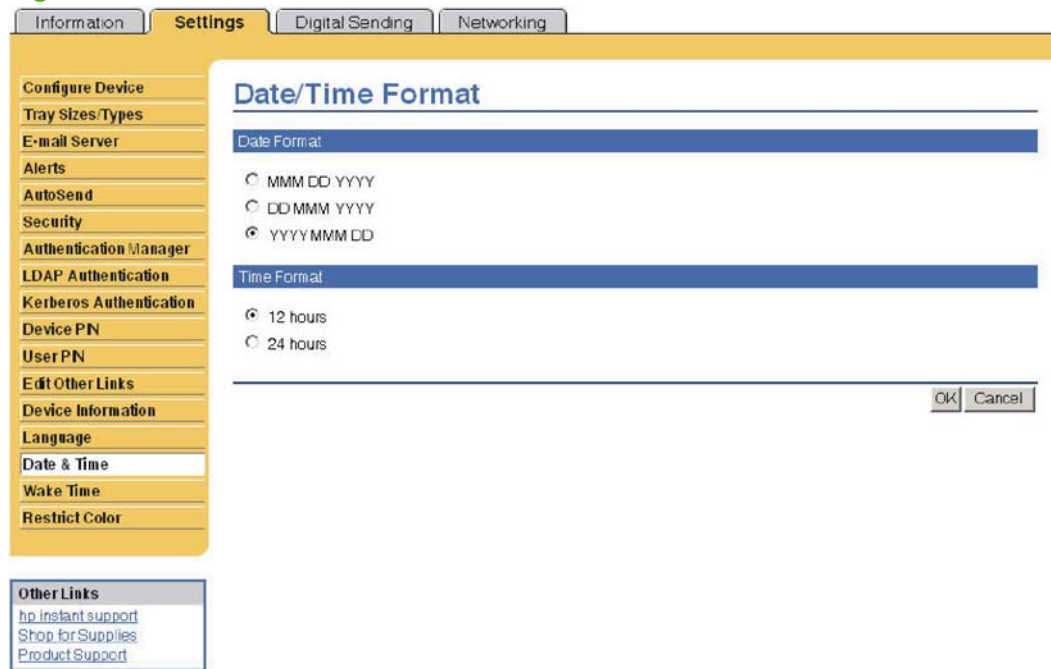
Figure 5-61 HP EWS – **Date & Time** screen

The screenshot shows the HP EWS interface with the 'Settings' tab selected. The left sidebar contains a list of settings categories: Configure Device, Tray Sizes/Types, E-mail Server, Alerts, AutoSend, Security, Authentication Manager, LDAP Authentication, Kerberos Authentication, Device PIN, User PIN, Edit Other Links, Device Information, Language, Date & Time (highlighted), Wake Time, and Restrict Color. Below this list is an 'Other Links' section with links to 'hp.instant.support', 'Shop for Supplies', and 'ProductSupport'. The main content area is titled 'Date & Time' and contains the following elements: 'Current Date' (2007 / APR / 09), 'Current Time' (10 : 11 PM), a 'Refresh' button, 'Date/Time Format' and 'Clock Drift Correction' buttons, and 'Apply' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom right.

Date/Time Format

Use the **Date/Time Format** screen to select the formats you prefer for displaying the date (under **Date Format**) and time (under **Time Format**). The following figure shows the **Date/Time Format** screen.

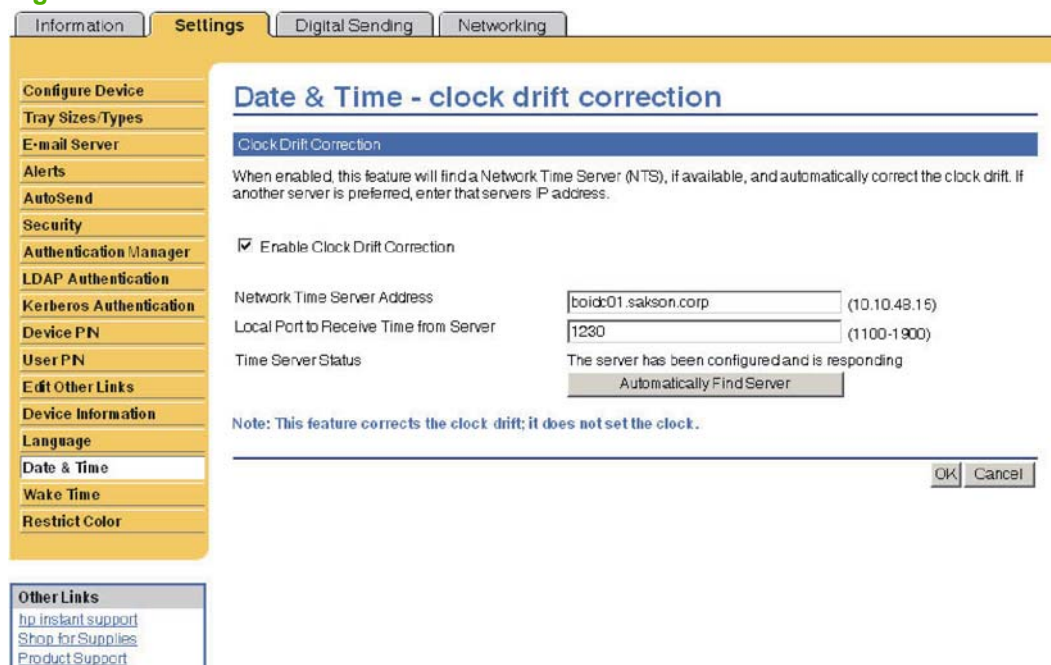
Figure 5-62 HP EWS – **Date/Time Format** screen



Clock Drift Correction

Use the **Date & Time - clock drift correction** screen to enable clock drift correction. The following figure shows the screen.


Figure 5-63 HP EWS – **Date & Time - clock drift correction** screen




To configure a network time server to correct the product clock drift, use the following procedure.

 **NOTE:** This process keeps the clock from drifting (losing or gaining time), but does **not** synchronize the clock with the network time server clock.

1. Select the **Enable Clock Drift Correction** check box.
2. In the **Network Time Server Address** field, type the TCP/IP address of the clock which you want to use for correction of the product clock drift.

 **NOTE:** Alternatively, you can click the **Automatically Find Server** button to find a time server on your network and automatically fill in this field.

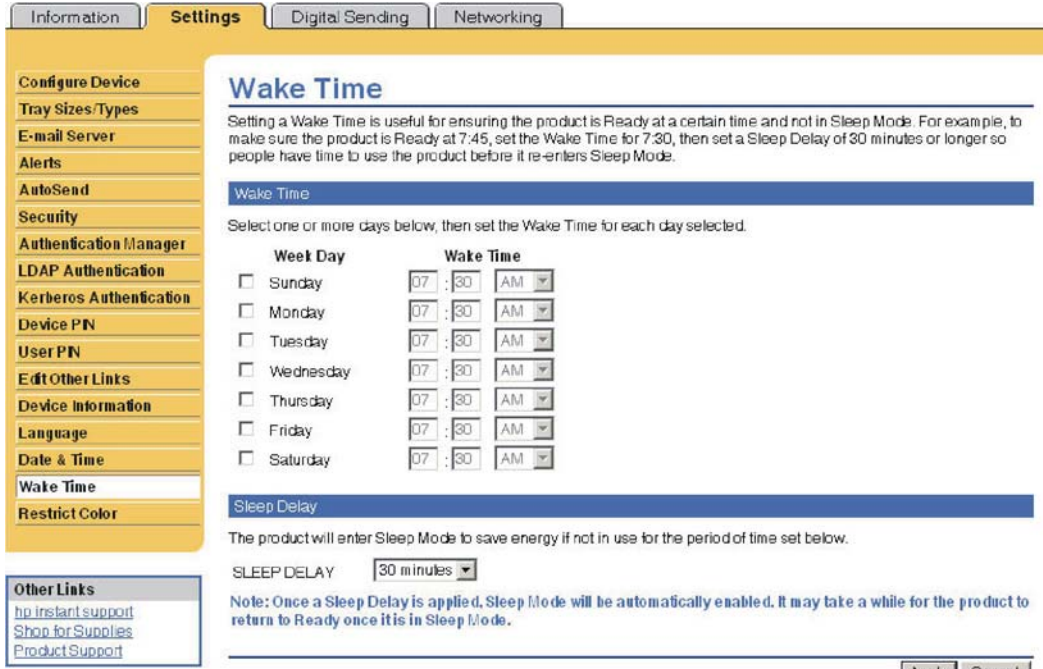
3. In the **Local Port to Receive Time from Server** field, type the number of the appropriate port.
4. Click **OK**.

 **NOTE:** Use this screen only to configure the time server for clock drift correction, not to set the clock. To set the clock, use the main **Date & Time** screen. For further information, see [Date & Time on page 253](#).

Wake Time

An IT administrator can use the **Wake Time** screen to schedule product wakeups on a daily basis. For example, the product can be set to wake up at 07:30, so the product has finished initializing and calibrating and is ready to use by 08:00. The administrator sets only one wakeup setting per day; however, each day can have a different wakeup setting. Additionally, to save energy, the sleep delay can be set to turn the product off after a specific period of inactivity.

Figure 5-64 HP EWS – **Wake Time** screen



Information Settings Digital Sending Networking

Configure Device
Tray Sizes/Types
E-mail Server
Alerts
AutoSend
Security
Authentication Manager
LDAP Authentication
Kerberos Authentication
Device PIN
User PIN
Edit Other Links
Device Information
Language
Date & Time
Wake Time
Restrict Color

Wake Time

Setting a Wake Time is useful for ensuring the product is Ready at a certain time and not in Sleep Mode. For example, to make sure the product is Ready at 7:45, set the Wake Time for 7:30, then set a Sleep Delay of 30 minutes or longer so people have time to use the product before it re-enters Sleep Mode.

Wake Time

Select one or more days below, then set the Wake Time for each day selected.

Week Day	Wake Time
<input type="checkbox"/> Sunday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Monday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Tuesday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Wednesday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Thursday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Friday	07 : 30 AM
<input type="checkbox"/> Saturday	07 : 30 AM

Sleep Delay

The product will enter Sleep Mode to save energy if not in use for the period of time set below.

SLEEP DELAY 30 minutes

Note: Once a Sleep Delay is applied, Sleep Mode will be automatically enabled. It may take a while for the product to return to Ready once it is in Sleep Mode.

Apply Cancel

Other Links
[hp instant support](#)
[Shop for Supplies](#)
[Product Support](#)

Restrict Colors

Figure 5-65 HP EWS Settings tab — Restrict Color screen

Information **Settings** Digital Sending Networking

Restrict Color

This feature is used to restrict color printing for all users, or for specific users and/or applications. For example, to print all e-mail messages without color, select "COLOR IF ALLOWED", then set the e-mail application's permission to "black only".

Note: This page requires JavaScript

Color Copying Access

Set the color job printing behavior.

- Enable color
(All color jobs will be printed in color.)
- Color if allowed
(The permissions defined below will determine whether each job will be printed in color or not. If either the user or the application has a "black only" permission, then the job will be printed without color.)
- Disable color
(All color jobs will be printed in black.)

Note: The rest of the settings on this page will not take effect unless "COLOR IF ALLOWED" is selected.

User Permission

Default User Permission (for users not in the User Permission list)
Color

The User Permission list stores up to 50 users and their associated permissions.

System User Name	Permission	System User Name ^:

>> << Delete

Permission: Color

^ Consult the [Color Usage Job Log](#) for System User Names and Technical Application Names that have printed to this device.

Application Permission

Default Application Permission (for applications not in the Application Permission list)
Color

The Application Permission list stores up to 10 applications and their associated permissions.

Technical Application Name	Permission	Technical Application Name ^:

>> << Delete

Permission: Color

^ Consult the [Color Usage Job Log](#) for System User Names and Technical Application Names that have printed to this device.

OK

Networking tab

The HP EWS **Networking** tab is shown in the following figure.


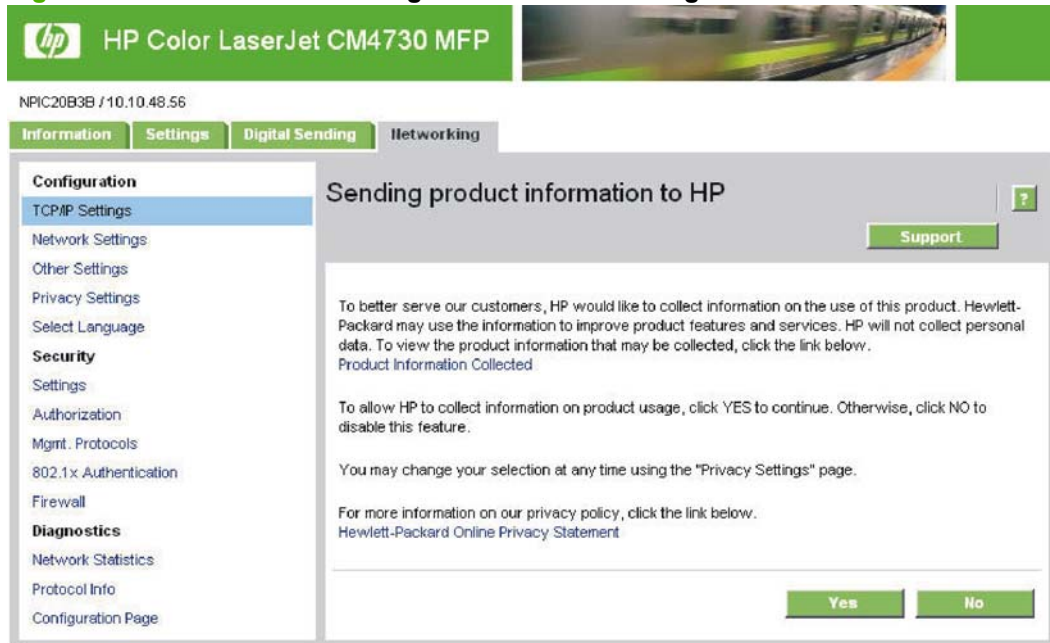
 **NOTE:** Not all of the screens on the tab are shown in this document. For more information, see the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide*.

Figure 5-66 HP EWS **Networking** tab – **Network Settings** screen



The menu on the left side of the screen contains other networking options under three categories:

- [Configuration](#)
- [Security section](#)
- [Diagnostics section](#)

Configuration

- **Network Setting.** From the **Networking** screen, enable and configure the following network protocols:
 - TCP/IP settings
 - Network settings:
 - Internetwork packet exchange/Sequenced packet exchange (IPX/SPX)
 - AppleTalk
 - Data link control/logical link control (DLC/LLC)
 - Simple network management protocol (SNMP)
- **Other Settings**
- **Privacy Settings**
- **Select Language**

Security section

- Settings
- Authorization
- Mgmt. Protocols
- 802.1x authentication
- Firewall

Diagnostics section

- Network Statistics
- Protocol Info
- Configuration Page

Refer to the *HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide* on the printing-system CD for more information.

6 Engineering Details

Introduction

Topics:

- [Remote firmware updates](#)
- [Printing print-ready documents](#)
- [Status Notification Popup \(SNP\)](#)
- [Media attributes](#)
- [Uninstall](#)

Remote firmware updates

The HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP features remote firmware update (RFU) capability. The method for downloading remote firmware updates from the Web site is similar to that used to download the latest printing-system software and print drivers.

The process for remotely upgrading firmware involves three steps:

1. Print a configuration page to see what version of firmware is currently installed on the MFP. (Also, print a menu map to see what user settings have been configured.)
2. Go to the HP Web site and download the latest firmware to the computer.
3. Download the new firmware to the MFP. (Print a new menu map to compare user settings between the previous firmware and upgraded firmware.)

Table 6-1 Version Checking

Primary/Location	Version Checking
JetDirect inside (JDI)	<p>Does version checking.</p> <p>Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older.</p> <p>This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.</p> <p>To update corrupt firmware with the same RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.</p>
Fax Modem	<p>Does version checking.</p> <p>The firmware updates if the RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version.</p> <p>Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same. The same version does not rewrite because of speed.</p> <p>This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.</p>
Formatter	<p>No version checking.</p> <p>The formatter firmware updates if there is a formatter bundle on the RFU, and is not dependant on what version of firmware the formatter is currently using.</p>
Copy control board (CPB)	<p>No version checking.</p>
Scan control board (SCB)	<p>Does version checking.</p> <p>Upgrades if the firmware version is newer; this means it will not rewrite or upgrade if the firmware is the same or older.</p> <p>This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though</p>

Table 6-1 Version Checking (continued)

	<p>it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.</p> <p>To update corrupt firmware with the same RFU version, use the nodebug bundle of firmware, then update using the correct firmware bundle.</p>
<p>Jetlink protocol (interface used to hook up output devices; external to MFP)</p>	No version checking.
<p>DC controller (internal to MFP)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • duplexer • input external trays • output external bins 	<p>Does version checking.</p> <p>The firmware updates if the RFU is different from what is currently on the component. The firmware can be updated if the RFU is older or newer than the current firmware version.</p> <p>Will not upgrade if firmware version is the same.</p> <p>This becomes an issue if the current firmware is corrupt. Because the firmware version may be the same even though it may be corrupt, the firmware will not rewrite because it is the same version.</p>

Topics:

- [Print the configuration page](#)
- [Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site](#)
- [Downloading the new firmware to the MFP](#)
- [Printer messages during the firmware update](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using an executable RFU files](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection](#)
- [Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port](#)
- [Remote firmware update through a Windows network](#)
- [Remote firmware update through a USB connection](#)
- [Remote firmware update for UNIX systems](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility](#)
- [Remote firmware update by using the LPR command](#)
- [Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin](#)
- [Remote firmware update through the HP Embedded Web Server](#)

Print the configuration page

To determine the current level of firmware, view the configuration page.

To print a configuration page, follow these instructions.

1. Touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Configuration Page**.
5. Touch **Print** to print a configuration page.

Print a menu map

Print a menu map before updating the firmware to see what user settings have been configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed after the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.

To print a menu map from the MFP control panel:

1. Touch **Administration**.
2. Touch **Information**.
3. Touch **Configuration/Status Pages**.
4. Touch **Administration Menu Map**.
5. Touch **Print** to print a menu map.

Downloading the new firmware from the HP Web site

The remote firmware update (.RFU) file and an associated readme file are packaged together as a self-extracting .EXE file. For detailed instructions about how to download the .EXE file, go to the following URL:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware

The .EXE file consists of a readme file and the .RFU file.

For UNIX systems, the remote firmware update file is a .TAR file.


For firmware upgrades on Macintosh systems, see [Update Firmware on page 222](#).

Downloading the new firmware to the MFP

For support information about downloading new firmware from the Web, go to the following URL:

www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware

The MFP can receive an RFU update when in the **READY** state. The MFP waits for all of the I/O channels to become idle before performing the update.

 **NOTE:** If the firmware update involves a change in the format of nonvolatile random-access memory (NVRAM), any menu settings that are changed from the default settings will return to default settings. The settings must be changed again if you want them to be different from the defaults. Examples of settings that are affected in this way are tray types, default symbol sets, and Web-access alerts.

The elapsed time for an update depends on the I/O transfer time, as well as the time that it takes for the MFP to reinitialize. The I/O transfer time depends on a number of things, including the speed of the host computer that is sending the update and the I/O method (network). The reinitialization time depends on the specific hardware configuration of the MFP, such as the number of EIO devices installed, the presence of external paper-handling devices, and the amount of memory that is installed.

Finally, any print jobs that are ahead of the RFU job in the queue are printed before the update is processed.

Use one of the methods described in this manual to update the MFP firmware.

Printer messages during the firmware update

The following table lists the causes and results of possible interruptions to the firmware update.

Table 6-2 Troubleshooting a firmware update

Cause	Result
The job was cancelled from the control panel.	No update has occurred.
A break in the I/O stream occurred during send (for example, the network cable was removed).	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the RECEIVING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred.
A power cycle occurred during the PERFORMING UPGRADE process.	No update has occurred. Resend the update through a USB port.
A power cycle occurred during the INITIALIZING process.	The update has been completed.

Print jobs that are sent to the MFP while an update is in process do not interrupt the update.

All HP LaserJet MFPs leave the factory with the most recent firmware version installed. If a remote firmware update fails for the component, the .RFU file must be resent. The only component exception is the formatter. See [Table 6-3 Update messages on page 263](#) for information regarding a formatter update error.

Because a firmware update cannot be resent over a USB for Mac, contact an HP Customer Care Center if a remote update fails in a Macintosh operating system.


Three messages appear during a normal update process; others appear only if the update process does not succeed.

Table 6-3 Update messages

Device message	Explanation
RECEIVING UPGRADE	This message appears from the time the MFP recognizes the beginning of an .RFU update until the time the MFP has verified the validity and integrity of the .RFU update. NOTE: If the remote firmware update process is interrupted before the firmware is downloaded (while RECEIVING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the firmware file must be sent again. No message appears on the MFP control panel to indicate that the update was interrupted.
PERFORMING UPGRADE	This message appears while the MFP is actually reprogramming the firmware.

Table 6-3 Update messages (continued)

Device message	Explanation
	NOTE: If power is lost during the flash DIMM update (while PERFORMING UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display), the update is interrupted and the message RESEND UPGRADE appears on the control-panel display.
INITIALIZING	This message appears from the time the MFP has finished reprogramming the flash until the MFP reinitializes.
RESEND UPGRADE	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update fails because the RFU process is interrupted. It can also occur if firmware for accessories (such as the duplex unit becomes corrupted). Perform another update by any means that is supported by the MFP, regardless of the connection (network or USB).
RFU LOAD ERROR	This message appears (in English only) if the firmware update of the formatter fails because the print-engine firmware is corrupted.
SEND RFU UPGRADE	
ON USB PORT	If this message appears, the update must now be sent only by a computer that is attached to the USB port of the MFP.

 **NOTE:** To verify that the firmware update succeeded, print a new configuration page from the control panel and verify that the firmware date code on the configuration page has changed.

The following table lists possible reasons for the failure of a remote firmware update and the corrective action required for each situation.

Table 6-4 Troubleshooting a firmware update failure

Reason for firmware update failure	Corrective action
The .RFU file is corrupted.	The MFP recognizes that the file is corrupted and rejects the update. Download the file again and send the new file to the MFP. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware .
The wrong MFP firmware is contained in the .RFU file.	The MFP recognizes the MFP mismatch and rejects the update. Download the correct file and send it to the MFP. Download the file from www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware .
The upgrade was interrupted.	See Table 6-3 Update messages on page 263 .
A flash hardware failure occurred.	Although it is extremely unlikely, the MFP might have a hardware failure. Call technical support to address the problem (see the flyer that came with the MFP for a local telephone support list). Or see the following: www.hp.com/support/cljcm4730mfp

Remote firmware update by using an executable RFU files

Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using an executable RFU downloaded from the Web.

 **NOTE:** Use this process to update the firmware on network or USB connected devices.

1. Download the executable RFU file from the following Web site: www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware
2. Run the executable on the PC to extract the RFU file and Readme document.
3. Run the RFU file.


4. Select the device to update in the pull-down list on the screen.
5. Click **Start** to begin the RFU process and wait for completion.

Remote firmware update by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to update the product firmware by using file transfer protocol (FTP) through a browser.

 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#)
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`, where <IPADDRESS> is the TCP/IP address of your product. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP://192.168.0.90`
4. Locate the downloaded .RFU file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the .RFU file onto the **PORT1** icon or onto any open space in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT1** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

- a. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
 - b. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
 - c. Click **OK** to save the setting.
6. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.


 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


7. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to update the firmware. Complete the following steps for your operating system.

Windows operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#)
-
-  **NOTE:** Before connecting to the product, make sure that the product is not in Powersave mode. Also make sure that any error messages are cleared from the control-panel display.
-
2. Open a command window on your computer.
 3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `ftp 192.168.0.90`.
 4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
 5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
 6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
 7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
 8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Type set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
 9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the .RFU file that was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put C:\CLJ\CM4730FW.RFU`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\CLJ\CM4730fw.rfu"`.

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful


150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

226 Transfer complete


After these messages appear, a message containing transfer-speed information appears.

10. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.
-
-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
-
11. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.


12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

1. Make a note of the TCP/IP address on the EIO-Jetdirect page. The EIO-Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal program on the computer hard drive in the Applications/Utilities folder.
3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>` For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type `FTP 192.168.0.90`
4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
6. Type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the .RFU file was downloaded from the Web, including the path. For example, type `put /username/desktop/CM4730fw.rfu`, and then press **Enter**.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/CM4730FW.RFU"` .

To ensure that the entire path to the .RFU file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then drag and drop the .RFU file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command .

7. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.
-
-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
-
8. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through an optional parallel port

If the product is connected through a local port (parallel), then you can send the .RFU file directly to the product by using a `COPY` command from a command prompt or an MS-DOS window. At the command prompt, perform the following steps for your operating system.


Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista

The .RFU file can be sent directly to the product by typing a **copy** command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.


Windows NT 4.0 does not support the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printer *drivers*, but it is possible to update the printer firmware with a PC using Windows NT 4.0.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path) and <PORTNAME> is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CM4730fw.rfu lpt1
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CM4730fw.rfu" lpt1`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Remote firmware update through a Windows network


If the product is shared on a Windows network, follow these instructions.

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\CM4730fw.rfu \\your_server\your_computer
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\CM4730fw.rfu" \\your_server\your_computer`

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.

-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
- Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update through a USB connection

Use this procedure when the MFP is directly connected to the computer by a USB connection.

When using a USB connection, be advised that the host PC must be connected to the local network and able to authenticate in order for Windows to resolve the computername. A PC not connected to a network cannot use the share method to send an RFU upgrade to the print device. When using a USB connection where the computer is not on a network for authentication, see [Remote firmware update by using an executable RFU files on page 264](#).


- From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type the following:

```
copy /b <FILENAME> \\<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>
```

where <FILENAME> is the name of the .RFU file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name.


For example, type the following:

```
c:\>copy /b c:\CM4730fw.rfu \\your_server\your_computer
```

-  **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks.

For example, type the following:


```
c:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents \CM4730fw.rfu" \\your_server\your_computer
```

- Press **ENTER**. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.
See [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) for information about the messages that appear on the control panel.
 - The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer.
See [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) for information about the messages that appear on the control panel.
-  **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do not turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.
- Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update for UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the .TAR file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

1. At the command prompt, type `cp /home/yourmachine/FILENAME /dev/parallel>`, where `</home/yourmachine/FILENAME>` is the location of the .TAR file.
2. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

3. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using the HP Printer Utility


Make sure that you have the tools and files that are necessary for the update. You will need the HP Printer Utility and the CM4730FW.RFU file, which is the firmware file for the product. The HP Printer Utility is a software program that is available only for Mac OS X V10.2 or later.

The HP Printer Utility can be found on the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP printing-system software CD-ROM that came with the product. If you do not have the CD-ROM, you can obtain the HP Printer Utility by downloading the latest product installer from www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_software.


The firmware file (CM4730FW.RFU) can be downloaded from the following Web site: www.hp.com/go/cljcm4730mfp_firmware

After you have the firmware file and the HP Printer Utility, you are ready to begin the update process. Complete the following steps:

1. Open the HP Printer Utility.
2. Select **Update Firmware**, click **Choose** and browse to firmware upgrade file, and click **Open**.
3. On the **Update Firmware** screen, click **Update**.


 **NOTE:** You may receive an error message on the screen indicating that the printer is offline. Verify that the printer is turned on. If it is, ignore the message. The **Updating** screen appears and the update proceeds as expected.

4. The update process can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.


5. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

Remote firmware update by using the LPR command


 **NOTE:** This remote firmware update method is for use in Windows NT 4.0, Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.

Complete the following steps to update the firmware by using the LPR command.

1. From a command window, type `lpr -P <IPADDRESS> -S <IPADDRESS> -o l <FILENAME>` -OR- `lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins <FILENAME>`, where `<IPADDRESS>` can be either the TCP/IP address or the hostname of the product, and where `<FILENAME>` is the filename of the .RFU file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.
3. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.

 **NOTE:** The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

4. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.
5. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Remote firmware update through HP Web Jetadmin

This procedure requires that you install HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 or later on your computer. Complete the following steps to update a single product through HP Web Jetadmin after downloading the .RFU file from the HP Web site.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Type the TCP/IP address or IP host name of the product in the **Quick Device Find** field, and then click **Go**. The product Status window opens.
3. Open the **Device Management** folder in the drop-down list in the Navigation panel. Navigate to the **Device Lists** folder.
4. Expand the **Device Lists** folder and select **All Devices**. Locate the product that you want to update in the list of products, and click to select it.
5. Locate the drop-down box for **Device Tools** in the upper-right corner of the window. Select **Update Printer Firmware** from the **choose action** list.
6. If the name of the .RFU file is not listed in the **All Available Images** dialog box, click **Browse** in the **Upload New Firmware Image** dialog box and navigate to the location of the .RFU file that you downloaded from the Web at the start of this procedure. If the filename is listed, select it.
7. Click **Upload** to move the .RFU file from your hard drive to the HP Web Jetadmin server.

8. Refresh the browser.
9. Select the .RFU file from the **Printer Firmware Update** drop-down menu.
10. Click **Update Firmware**. HP Web Jetadmin sends the selected .RFU file to the product.
11. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take several minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or the computer. The messages described in the section [Printer messages during the firmware update on page 263](#) appear on the control panel.



NOTE: The product automatically turns off and then on again to activate the update; this can happen more than once. At the end of the update process, the **READY** message appears on the control panel. Do *not* turn off the product or interfere with the update until you see this message.

12. Print a configuration page and verify that the firmware revision number matches the revision of the current update.

HP Web Jetadmin V7.8 and later can also be used to perform multiple or unattended installations. Complete the following steps for multiple or unattended installations.

1. Start HP Web Jetadmin.
2. Create a MFP group. A simple way to do this is to follow these steps:
 - a. Click **Device Management**, and then click **All Devices**.
 - or-
 - b. Shift-click to select products that you want to be included in the group, and then click **OK**.
 - or-
 - c. When prompted, type a name for the new MFP group, and then click **OK**.
3. To modify several products in a group, click the group name, and then click **Open**.
4. The drop-down menu for **Device Group Tools** appears on the right side of the window. Scroll if necessary to view it.
5. In the **Device Group Tools** drop-down box, select an action. Type the appropriate information. Click **Return to Device Group** when finished.


Remote firmware update through the HP Embedded Web Server

△ **CAUTION:** Use extreme caution when using this method. Only use this method as a last resort.

CAUTION: When trying to install or update firmware, do NOT use any buttons, browse to another site, close or touch the browser page in any way until the device has reset and displays **Ready**.

1. Open the HP Embedded Web Server (HP EWS).
2. In the **Information** tab, click the **Print** menu item.
3. Click **Browse** and navigate to the RFU file.
4. Click **Apply**.

5. After the device automatically reboots, the device may ask you to reboot the device manually. Turn the device off, then on.
6. Wait until the device reboots and displays **Ready**.

 **NOTE:** Print a menu map to see what user settings are configured in the current firmware. This menu map can be compared with a menu map printed before the firmware update to determine what user settings have been added or changed in the new firmware.


To print a menu map from the device control panel, see [Print a menu map on page 262](#).

Printing print-ready documents

Several methods are available for printing documents independently of the original software program that was used to create the document. Normally, the document is printed by opening the original application and printing it to a file, or is printed by means of a distribution method such as Internet downloading. The following print-ready file formats can be sent directly to the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP without first opening the original software program:

- HP LaserJet Printer Control Language (.PCL)
- Portable Document Format (.PDF)
- Postscript (.PS)
- Text (.TXT)
- Print file (.PRN)

Use one of the following methods to send print-ready files to your product.

 **NOTE:** The examples that are used in this section are for printing .PDF documents. However, any print-ready file type can be substituted.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP through a browser


Complete the following steps to print print-ready files directly by using FTP through a browser.

 **NOTE:** The following instructions can be used on Windows or Macintosh operating systems.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open a browser window.
3. In the address line of the browser, type `ftp://<IPADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address of your product is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
FTP:// 192.168.0.90
```

4. Locate the print-ready file for the product.
5. Drag and drop the print-ready file onto the **PORT** icon in the browser window.

 **NOTE:** If the **PORT** icon does not appear as a folder name, you might have to enable folder viewing for FTP sites in your Web browser. In Microsoft Internet Explorer, use the following procedure to enable the folder view.

1. Select **Tools**, then select **Internet Options**, and then select the **Advanced** tab.
2. Select the **Enable folder view for FTP sites**.
3. Click **OK** to save the setting.

Print-ready file printing by using FTP on a direct network connection

If the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP uses a direct network connection, use file transfer protocol (FTP) to print a print-ready file. Complete the following steps for the operating system:


Windows operating systems

1. Take note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the Configuration page printout. To print a Configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open a command prompt window on your computer.
3. Type `ftp <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
ftp 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for the user name, press **Enter**.
6. When prompted for the password, press **Enter**.
7. Type `bin` at the command prompt.
8. Press **Enter**. The message **200 Types set to I, Using binary mode to transfer files** appears in the command window.
9. Type `put <FILENAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file to be printed, including the path. For example, type the following:

```
put C:\LJ\GUIDE.PDF
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "c:\My Documents\LJ\GUIDE.PDF"`

The following series of messages appears in the command window:

200 PORT command successful

150 Opening BINARY mode data connection

226 Ready

226 Processing Job

10. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
11. The print-ready file prints.
12. At the command prompt, type `bye` to exit the FTP command.
13. At the command prompt, type `exit` to return to the Windows interface.

Macintosh operating systems

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. Open a Terminal window on your Macintosh. You can find the Terminal program on the computer hard drive in the following folder:


System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal

3. Type `FTP <TCP/IP printer ADDRESS>`. For example, if the TCP/IP address is 192.168.0.90, type the following:

```
FTP 192.168.0.90
```

4. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.
5. When prompted for a user name and password, press **Enter**.
6. You can drag and drop the firmware file into the Terminal folder (System/Applications/Utilities/Terminal). Alternatively, you can type `put <path>`, where `<path>` is the location where the print-ready file was downloaded from the Web. For example, type the following:

```
put /username/desktop/GUIDE.PDF
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `put "/user name/desktop/GUIDE.PDF"`

To ensure that the entire path to the print-ready file is placed in the `put` command, type `put` and a space, and then click and drag the print-ready file onto the terminal window. The complete path to the file is automatically placed after the `put` command .

7. Press **Enter**.
8. The download process begins and the firmware is updated on the product. This can take about five minutes. Let the process finish without further interaction with the product or computer.
9. The product automatically turns off and on again to activate the update.

Print-ready printing by using a local Windows port

To print directly by using a local Windows port, follow the instructions in this section for your operating system.


Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, Windows Vista

The print-ready file can be sent directly to the product by typing a `copy` command at a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window.

1. At a command prompt, type `copy /b <FILENAME> <PORTNAME>`, where `<FILENAME>` is the name of the print-ready file (including the path) and `<PORTNAME>` is the name of the appropriate printer port (such as LPT1). For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\GUIDE.PDF lpt1
```

2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard.

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\GUIDE.PDF"`. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints.


3. At the command prompt, type `exit` to close the command window.

Print-ready file printing in a Windows network

If the product is shared on a Windows network, complete the following steps.

1. From a command prompt or in an MS-DOS window, type `copy /b <FILENAME> \<COMPUTERNAME>\<SHARENAME>`, where <FILENAME> is the name of the print-ready file (including the path), <COMPUTERNAME> is the name of the computer from which the product is being shared, and <SHARENAME> is the product share name. For example, type the following:

```
C:\>copy /b c:\GUIDE.PDF \\your_server\sharename
```

 **NOTE:** If the file name or path includes a space, you must enclose the file name or path in quotation marks. For example, type `C:\>copy /b "c:\My Documents\GUIDE.PDF" \\your_server\sharename`


2. Press **Enter** on the keyboard. The message **PROCESSING JOB** appears on the control panel, and the job prints. The message **1 file(s) copied** appears on the computer screen.

Print-ready file printing in UNIX systems

For UNIX systems, any command method that delivers the print-ready file to the product is acceptable, including the following:

At the command prompt, type `cp </home/yourmachine/FILENAME/ dev/parallel>`, where </home/yourmachine/FILENAME> is the location of the print-ready file.

Print-ready file printing by using the LPR command


 **NOTE:** This direct printing method is for use in Windows 2000, Windows XP, Windows Server 2003, and Windows Vista.

Complete the following steps to print a print-ready file by using the LPR command.

1. Make note of the TCP/IP address on the Embedded Jetdirect page. The HP Embedded Jetdirect page is the second page of the configuration page printout. To print a configuration page, see [Print the configuration page on page 261](#).
2. From a command window, type the following:

```
lpr -P IPADDRESS -S IPADDRESS -o l FILENAME lpr -S <IPADDRESS> -Pbins  
<FILENAME>
```

where IPADDRESS can be either the TCP/IP address or the host name of the product, and where FILENAME is the file name of the print-ready file.

 **NOTE:** The parameter (-o l) consists of a lowercase "O", not a zero, and a lowercase "L", not the numeral 1. This parameter sets the transport protocol to binary mode.

3. The file prints, but no messages appear in the command prompt window.
4. Type `exit` at the command prompt to close the command window.

Status Notification Popup (SNP)

The status notification pop-up (SNP) feature provides immediate job and printer status information to the client computer.

- Printer status and error messages.

Provides users with printer status information so they can respond to and resolve many minor printer problems such as an open cover or paper jams reducing the number of Help Desk calls.

- Dashboard view of supply levels.

This allows users to plan ahead and ensure that there are sufficient supplies in the printer prior to printing large print jobs. It also provides current information about printer consumables such as toner and paper levels.

- Links to the HP SureSupply ordering system.

This makes it convenient to order genuine HP supplies. Click on the SNP Windows option “Shop for Supplies” to access the HP SureSupply ordering system.

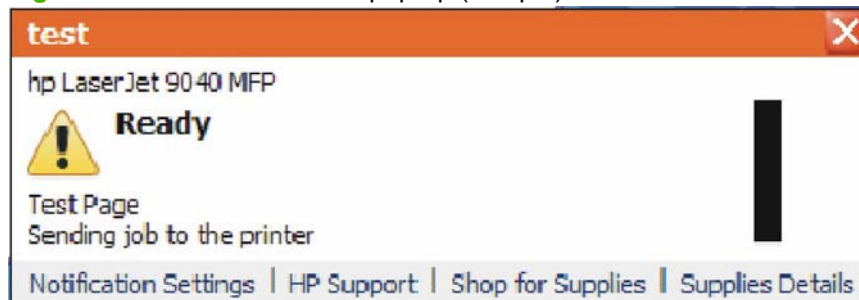
- Links to HP Support pages.

Get instant support for many printer problems by clicking on “HP Support” to get detailed information on printer status and error messages.

The Status Notification Pop-ups (SNP) feature, which appears during the submittal of a print job, can be configured through several tools that are available to administrators.

When the driver is selected for printing, it attempts to communicate directly with the printer to gather status and job information during printing. By querying the printer through SNMP get commands, network traffic is kept to a minimum because it occurs only during printing. If the driver is unable to communicate with the printer, possibly because of security settings or because of the SNMP community names that are set on the printing devices, then the pop-ups will not appear on the client machines. Normal printing will not be affected. The following figure shows a sample SNP.


Figure 6-1 Status notification pop-up (sample)



The following links appear at the bottom of the pop-up:

- **Notification Settings**

Click this link to open the **Notification Settings** dialog box. The following settings are available:

 **NOTE:** The **Notification Settings** link appears in the pop-up only in environments where no managed print policies have been configured for the network. For more information, see your administrator.

- **Enabled.** When this option is selected, you must select one of the following settings: **Whenever I print to the printer**; **When there is a warning or error**; and **When there is an error (printer has stopped)**.
- **Disabled.** Select this option to disable pop-up messages for any printer condition.



 **NOTE:** When disabled, the pop-ups cannot easily be re-enabled. It will be necessary to reinstall the device or change the Windows registry.

Figure 6-2 Notification Settings dialog box



- **HP Support**
- **Shop for Supplies**
- **Supplies Details**

 **NOTE:** In enterprise environments where the domain name does not end in .local, the driver will programmatically disable the **HP Support** and **Shop for Supplies** links. In most of these environments, the ordering of supplies is handled by internal centralized ordering personnel, and internal Help Desks exist to assist end users with day to day problem resolution.

Configure SNPs

SNPs can be configured and managed in several ways, depending on your environment and deployment strategy. If you wish to configure the driver prior to deployment, HP recommends the following methods:

HP Driver Preconfiguration

The HP Driver Pre-configuration utility is a software application that Information Technology (IT) administrators can use to pre-configure the driver before deploying and installing it in an operating environment. It is most beneficial when configuring the driver for multiple workstations or print servers for print queues that share the same configuration.

Follow these steps to pre-configure the SNP behavior of the driver.

1. Download and launch the DMC driver Pre-configuration utility (www.hp.com/go/hpdriverpreconfig). You will see a message indicating that depending on how the driver driver is installed, changes made to the driver may invalidate the digital signature and Microsoft may display a warning message. This is normal behavior. Click **OK** to continue.
2. Click **File**, then **Open** and browse to the directory where the driver resides.
3. Select the driver's .inf file and click the **Open** button. The following screen will appear.
4. Click **Device settings** and expand the **SSNP_Level** listing by clicking the **Plus sign (+)**. Select the SNP characteristics you desire.
5. When finished, click **File** and **Save** to complete.

A file will be created in the same folder as the driver file. This configuration file will follow all installations of the driver and control the SNP behavior for each installation. For additional information on the HP Driver Pre-configuration utility, please refer to the PDF manual that is included in the download image of the HP Pre-configuration utility.

The HP Driver Pre-configuration utility is also available as a plug-in for HP's Web Jetadmin application. Refer to the WJA documentation for instructions on using the Driver Preconfiguration within WJA. Download the HP Driver Pre-configuration plug-ins via: http://www.hp.com/go/wja_components

Registry settings

All of the previous methods for changing the behavior of SNP make changes to the specific registry settings. It is also possible to directly change the SNP settings by editing the registry directly. Editing the registry to modify SNP behavior is beyond the scope of this document.

The registry location below contains the entries that modify the SNP behavior for each installed printer on the client PC or server. Modify the SNP behavior by making changes to each of the installed printers.

```
HKEY_LOCAL_MACHINE\SYSTEM\CurrentControlSet\Control\Print\Printers
\\PrinterDriverData
```

Where **<PrinterName>** represents the names of each of your installed printers.

Table 6-5 SNP settings

Setting	Type	Value
SSNPDeviceUpdateInterval	REG_DWORD	0x00000000 (0) 0 = Normal, 1 = Minimize
SSNPNotifyEventSetting	REG_DWORD	0x00000001 (1) 0 = Disabled, 1 = When Printing, 2 = On Warnings or Errors 3 = On Errors only
SSNPShowAlertLink	REG_DWORD	0x00000001 (1) 0 = Hide, 1 = Show
SSNPShowShopLink	REG_DWORD	0x00000000 (0) 0 = Hide, 1 = Show
SSNPShowSSNSettings	REG_DWORD	0x00000000 (0)

Table 6-5 SNP settings (continued)

Setting	Type	Value
		0 = Hide, 1 = Show
SSNPShowSupportLink	REG_DWORD	0x00000000 (0)
		0 = Hide, 1 = Show

Media attributes

Topics:

- [Media sources and destinations](#)
- [Media-source commands](#)
- [Driver-supported media sizes](#)
- [Driver-supported media types](#)
- [Custom paper sizes](#)
- [Media-type commands](#)

Media sources and destinations

The following table indicates the standard and optional media sources and destinations for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Table 6-6 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media sources and destinations

Media sources	100-sheet multipurpose tray (tray 1)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 2)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 3)	standard
	500-sheet paper tray (tray 4)	standard
Media destinations	standard left bin	standard (not available when accessory output MFP is attached)
	stapler/stacker, with 500-sheet output	optional
	3-bin mailbox	optional

Media-source commands

The media source commands can be used when control of media sources (i.e., paper trays) is desired when printing to the MFP via an application or operating system in which the HP-supplied Windows or Mac driver is not used.

The PCL 6 attribute for paper source is `ubyte # MediaSource` or `ubyte_array "string" MediaSource`. See the following table for values of #. For example, `"ubyte 4 MediaSource"` is the command for tray 2.

The PCL 5 escape sequence for media source is `Esc&l#H` (the "l" is a lowercase "L" rather than the numeral "1"). See the following table for values of #. For example, `Esc&l1H` is the command for tray 2.

Table 6-7 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media-source commands

Media source	PCL 6	PCL 5	PostScript
	ubyte # MediaSource OR ubyte_array "string" MediaSource ¹	Esc&l#H	/MediaPosition # / ManualFeed true false or null
Manual feed in tray 1	2	2	3 true
Tray 1 (100-sheet)	3	4	3 false
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	4	1	0 false
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	5	5	1 false
Printer Auto Select (HP unidrivers)	7	1	null false

¹ For the string value, you must use include the quotation marks around the variable. For example, ubyte_array "TRAY2" MediaSource is the PCL 6 command for tray 2.

Driver-supported media sizes

The following table lists the features and attributes of various media listed under the **Size Is:** drop-down menu on the **Paper** tab. The list order can vary, depending on the device and operating system. The list contains all of the following sizes, and might contain sizes from other drivers.

Table 6-8 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Supported media sizes and attributes

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
Letter	216 mm (8.5 inches)	279 mm (11.0 inches)	"LETTER"
Statement	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)	139.7 mm (5.5 inches)	"STATEMENT"
8K	273 mm (10.75 inches)	394 mm (15.5 inches)	"ROC8K"
16K	197 mm (7.75 inches)	273 mm (10.75 inches)	"ROC16K"
8.5 x 13	216 mm (8.5 inches)	330 mm (13 inches)	"8.5x13"
11x17	279 mm (11 inches)	432 mm (17 inches)	"LEDGER"
A3	297 mm (11.7 inches)	419 mm (16.5 inches)	"A3"
A4	210 mm (8.27 inches)	297 mm (11.69 inches)	"A4"
A5	148 mm	210 mm	"A5"

Table 6-8 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Supported media sizes and attributes (continued)

Paper sizes ¹	Width	Height	PCL 6 ²
	(5.83 inches)	(8.27 inches)	
B5 (JIS)	182 mm	257 mm	"JIS B5"
	(7.17 inches)	(10.12 inches)	
Double Japan Postcard Rotated	148 mm	200 mm	"Double Postcard (JIS)"
	(5.83 inches)	(7.87 inches)	
Envelope #10	105 mm	241 mm	"COM10"
	(4.13 inches)	(9.5 inches)	
Envelope B5	176 mm	250 mm	"B5 ENV"
	(6.93 inches)	(9.84 inches)	
Envelope C5	162 mm	229 mm	"C5"
	(6.38 inches)	(9.02 inches)	
Envelope DL	110 mm	220 mm	"DL"
	(4.33 inches)	(8.66 inches)	
Envelope Monarch	99 mm	190 mm	"MONARCH"
	(3.88 inches)	(7.5 inches)	
Executive	185 mm	266 mm	"EXEC"
	(7.25 inches)	(10.5 inches)	
Legal	216 mm	355 mm	"LEGAL"
	(8.5 inches)	(14.0 inches)	
Custom	Minimum:	Minimum:	³
	76.3 mm	127 mm	
	(3 inches)	(5 inches)	
	Maximum:	Maximum:	
	296.9 mm	431.8 mm	
	(11.69 inches)	(17 inches)	

¹ For all paper sizes, the PCL 6 margins are 100 dots, at 600 dots per inch.

² The PCL 6 command for paper size is `ubyte_array "String" MediaSize`. The values in this column are the values for "String."

³ For custom sizes, the PCL 6 Driver specifies actual dimensions, for example, for 8 by 9 inch custom size, `real32_xy 8.0 9.0 CustomMediaSize ubyte eInch CustomMediaSizeUnits`."

Driver-supported media types

The following table shows the media types that the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP print-drivers support.

Table 6-9 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Supported input media types

Media types (command string)	Tray 1	Trays 2, 3 (500-sheet)	Duplexing unit	Manual duplexing
Unspecified	Y	Y	Y	Y
Plain	Y	Y	Y	Y
Preprinted	Y	Y	Y	Y
Letterhead	Y	Y	Y	Y
Transparency	Y	Y	N	N
Prepunched	Y	Y	Y	Y
Labels	Y	Y	N	N
Bond	Y	Y	Y	Y
Recycled	Y	Y	Y	Y
Color	Y	Y	Y	Y
Light (60–75 g/m ² , or 16.4 - 20.5 lb.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Intermediate (90 - 104 g/m ² , or 24.7 - 28.5 lb.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy (105 - 120 g/m ² , or 28.8 - 32.9 lb.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Extra Heavy (120 - 163 g/m ² , or 32.9 - 44.7 lb.)	Y	N	N	N
Cardstock (164 - 220 g/m ² , or 45 - 60.3 lb.)	Y	N	N	Y
Rough (90 - 105 g/m ² , or 24.7 - 28.8 lb.)	Y	Y	Y	Y
Glossy (75 - 120 g/m ² , or 20.5 - 32.9 lb.) ²	Y	Y	Y	Y
Heavy Glossy (120 - 160 g/m ² , or 32.9 - 43.9 lb.) ²	Y	N	N	Y
Extra Heavy Glossy (160 - 220 g/m ² , or 43.9 - 58 lb.) ²	Y	N	N	Y
Tough Paper ²	Y	Y	N	N
Envelope	Y	N	N	N

¹ Staples a maximum of 30 pages weighing from 60 g/m² to 220 g/m² (16 lb to 58 lb) except where listed as N (no) or Y (other number).

² Use *only* HP *LaserJet* glossy media. Using HP *Inkjet* glossy media can cause permanent damage to your printer.

Custom paper sizes

The following table shows custom paper sizes that are available for the HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP.

Table 6-10 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — PCL 6 custom media sizes

Tray	Dimensions	Minimum	Maximum
Tray 1 (100-sheet multipurpose)	Width	76.2 mm (3.0 inches)	215 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	127.0 mm (5.0 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 2 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 3 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Tray 4 (500-sheet)	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)
Duplexing unit	Width	148.0 mm (5.83 inches)	215.9 mm (8.5 inches)
	Height	210.0 mm (8.26 inches)	355.6 mm (14.0 inches)

Media-type commands

The HP PCL 5 driver escape sequence for paper type is "Esc&n#Wdpapertype", where "n#" is the number of characters in the paper type plus 1. For example, in the sequence "Esc&n6WdPlain", "Plain" has 5 letters plus 1, for a total of 6.

Table 6-11 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media-type commands

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	6	Wd	Plain
Esc&	11	Wd	Preprinted
Esc&	11	Wd	Letterhead
Esc&	13	Wd	Transparency ¹
Esc&	11	Wd	Prepunched
Esc&	7	Wd	Labels
Esc&	5	Wd	Bond
Esc&	9	Wd	Recycled
Esc&	6	Wd	Color
Esc&	6	Wd	Light
Esc&	13	Wd	Intermediate
Esc&	6	Wd	Heavy
Esc&	12	Wd	Extra Heavy
Esc&	11	Wd	Cardstock ²
Esc&	6	Wd	Rough
Esc&	7	Wd	Glossy

Table 6-11 HP Color LaserJet CM4730MFP — Media-type commands (continued)

Esc&	n#	Wd	Paper type
Esc&	13	Wd	Heavy Glossy
Esc&	19	Wd	Extra Heavy Glossy
Esc&	12	Wd	Tough Paper
Esc&	9	Wd	Envelope

¹ You must spell out the word "Transparency" in the string, although it is abbreviated as TRNSPRNCY on the control panel.

² The correct command for cardstock is "Esc&n11WdCard Stock", with a space between the "d" and the "S", and with an uppercase "S".

Uninstall

In the following topics, the .INF file of the print driver is edited. The .INF files is located under the \DRIVERS directory on the printing-system software CD, and is located in subdirectories by operating system and driver type as follows:

Operating system	Driver	.INF Filename
Windows, 32-bit	PCL 5	hpcm473b.inf
	PCL 6	hpcm47c.inf
	PCL 6 - black	hpcm473bc.inf
	PS	hpcm473d.inf
Windows, 64-bit	PCL 5	hpcm473t.inf
	PCL 6	hpcm47u.inf
	PCL 6 - black	hpcm47bu.inf
	PS	hpcm473v.inf

Topics:

Index

Symbols/Numerics

% of Normal Size setting 138

A

About tab

print driver 181

accessibility, documentation 19

accessories, automatic

configuration 33

ADA (Americans with Disabilities Act) compliance 19

Add Printer installation 88

Additional Software Details dialog box, Customization Wizard 100

Adobe Acrobat Reader

installing 26

printing PDF files without 274

viewing documentation 17

Adobe RGB

unidrivers 164

Advanced Printing Features setting, drivers 117

Advanced tab

print drivers 114

Agree dialog box, Macintosh 194

alerts

HP Embedded Web Server (Windows) 47, 49

Macintosh 227, 246

Alternative Letterhead Mode 119

Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) compliance 19

application settings 107

ASCII output protocol, PS

Emulation driver 178

asset number 242

Authenticate dialog box,

Macintosh 192

autoconfiguration, driver 33, 174

autoconfiguration, Enterprise

about 34

operating-system support 9

Automatic color settings

unidrivers 162

autorun CD-ROM, Windows 25

AutoSend 249

B

Back button, Windows installation

dialog boxes 63

Back to Front printing,

drivers 120

Basic Installation

choosing 25

dialog boxes, Windows 64

bidirectional communication

about 33

Enterprise

Autoconfiguration 34

binary output protocol, PS

Emulation driver 178

binding settings 146

bins

custom paper sizes 129

included 282

black, printing all text as 119

Bonjour Settings, Macintosh 230

booklet printing settings 147

both sides, printing on 144

Browse for Printer dialog box, Customization Wizard 93

C

Cancel button, Windows installation

dialog boxes 63

cardstock, paper type

commands 287

cartridges

AutoSend feature 249

features 5

usage information (Macintosh) 240

CD-ROM

directory structure,

Macintosh 187

directory structure,

Windows 10

documentation 17, 25

installer, Windows printing-

system software 24

installing Macintosh printing-

system software 191

installing Windows printing-

system software 62

languages, Macintosh 188

languages, Windows 11

Change TCP/IP Settings dialog

box, Windows 73

Check Printer Connection dialog

box, Windows 74

CHM files, viewing 18

Citrix Terminal Server support 8

collation settings

print driver 176

print drivers 116

Color printing

ICC profiles 38

Image Color Management

(ICM) 117

PANTONE® Matching System

colors 39

Color Themes

unidrivers 164

command-line printing,

Windows 274

command-line silent install for

Windows 105

- commands, paper
 - size 284
 - source 282
 - type 286
- common installer, features 28
- components
 - Macintosh 190
- components, software
 - Macintosh 186
 - Windows 9
- Configuration Page, HP Embedded Web Server 45
- Configuration Page, HP EWS (Macintosh) 234
- Configuration tab, HP EWS (Macintosh) 257
- Configure Device page, HP Embedded Web Server (Windows) 48
- Configure Device page, HP EWS (Windows) 47
- Configure Device screen, HP EWS (Macintosh) 244
- Confirm Network Settings dialog box, Windows 71
- connectivity
 - bidirectional communication support 33
 - features 5
- constraint messages 112
- context-sensitive help
 - print drivers 112
- continuous export 36
- control panel
 - language 252
 - settings 107
 - viewing with HP EWS (Macintosh) 242
 - viewing with HP EWS (Windows) 43
- Copy Count settings
 - print driver 176
 - print drivers 116
- Ctrl-D settings 178
- Custom Install dialog box, Macintosh 195
- Custom Installation
 - choosing 25
 - dialog boxes, Windows 64
- Custom Installer Location dialog box, Customization Wizard 101
- custom paper sizes
 - driver settings 128
 - supported 285
- customer support 44, 218
- Customization Wizard
 - dialog boxes 89
 - documentation 22
 - languages, Windows 11
 - operating-system support 9

D

- Date & Time screen, HP EWS (Macintosh) 253
- Date & Time, HP EWS (Windows) 48
- default printer, setting 106
- deleting job-storage jobs 159, 227
- Details dialog box 80
- Device Information page, HP EWS (Macintosh) 251
- Device Information page, HP EWS (Windows) 43, 48
- Device Information screen (Macintosh) 242
- Device Services, drivers 167
- Device Settings dialog box, Customization Wizard 99
- Device Settings tab
 - print drivers 168
- Device Status page, HP EWS (Macintosh) 234
- Device Status page, HP EWS (Windows) 44
- diagnostics 37, 166
- Diagnostics section, HP EWS (Macintosh) 258
- dialog boxes, printing-system software installation
 - Mac OS X 192
 - Windows 64
 - Windows Customization Wizard 89
- DIMMs, fonts
 - driver settings 173
- direct printing
 - FTP, Windows 274
 - local port, Windows 276
- LPR 277
- networks, Windows 277
- UNIX 277
- direct-connect installation 63
- directory structure, CD-ROM
 - Macintosh 187
 - Windows 10
- disabling
 - driver features 36
- disk space requirements
 - Macintosh 186
 - Windows 6
- Document Options
 - print drivers 117, 144
- document preview image
 - print drivers 133, 138, 149, 165
- documentation
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 22
 - HP Embedded Web Server User Guide 20
 - HP Installer Customization Wizard Readme 22
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 20
 - install notes 19
 - languages, Windows 11
 - User Guide 18
 - viewing 17, 25
- double-sided printing 144
- downloading
 - firmware 262
 - printing-system software 9
- Driver Configuration dialog box, Customization Wizard 97
- Driver Details dialog box, Customization Wizard 96
- drivers
 - % of Normal Size 138
 - About tab 181
 - accessing 109
 - accessory configuration 33
 - Add Printer installation 88
 - Advanced Printing
 - Features 117
 - Advanced tab 114
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 119
 - Automatic Configuration 174

- automatic configuration 34
- availability by operating
 - system 9
- booklets 147
- constraint messages 112
- continuous export feature 36
- Copy Count settings 116
- custom paper sizes 285
- Device Services 167
- Device Settings tab 168
- diagnostics 37
- Document Options 117, 144
- document preview
 - image 133, 138, 149, 165
- duplexing 144
- Effects tab 136
- Enterprise
 - Autoconfiguration 34
- features 107
- Finishing tab 143
- Flip Pages Up 146
- Font DIMM Installer 173
- font settings 172
- Font Substitution table 172
- Form to Tray Assignment 171
- Graphic setting 116
- Help system 112
- included 29
- Installable Options
 - settings 174
- Internet Services 167
- Job-storage settings 154
- JPEG Passthrough 180
- languages, Windows 11
- Layout Options 120
- lockable features 36, 224
- Macintosh 186
- media supported 282
- Mopier settings 175
- Orientation settings 150
- Pages per Sheet 148
- Paper Options 127
- paper sizes supported 283
- paper source commands 282
- paper type commands 286
- Paper/Output settings 115
- Paper/Quality tab 126
- Point and Print
 - installation 106
- PostScript Options 118

- PostScript Passthrough 179
- preconfiguration 9, 34
- preconfiguration support 22
- Printer Features 119
- Printing Preferences tabs 109
- Properties tabs 110
- Resizing Options settings 137
- Scale to Fit 137
- Services tab 166
- settings 107
- standalone 8
- TrueType font settings 117
- Update Now 34
- version numbers 31
- Watermarks settings 138
- See also* fax driver
- Drivers dialog box, Customization Wizard 95
- Duplex mode, HP Printer Utility, Macintosh 222
- duplexing unit
 - custom paper sizes 129
 - driver configuration 175
 - driver settings 144
 - media supported 285
 - testing Macintosh 222

E

- e-mail
 - alerts, HP EWS (Windows) 47, 49
 - alerts, Macintosh 227, 246
 - AutoSend 249
 - return address, configuring 246
 - server settings 245
- E-mail Server page, HP EWS (Macintosh) 245
- E-mail Server page, HP EWS (Windows) 47
- Easy Install dialog box, Macintosh 195
- Easy Printer Care 9, 40
- Edge Control settings
 - unidrivers 163
- Edit Other Links page, HP EWS (Windows) 48
- Edit Other Links screen 250
- Effects tab 136
- Energy Star compliance 4

- Enterprise Autoconfiguration
 - about 34
 - operating-system support 9
- envelopes, paper type
 - commands 287
- escape sequences
 - paper source 282
 - paper type 286
- Euro symbol 179
- event log 43
- Event Log screen, HP EWS (Macintosh) 238
- EWS (Macintosh)
 - about 191, 231
 - accessing 231
 - AutoSend 249
 - Configuration 257
 - Configure Device 244
 - Control Panel screen 242
 - Date & Time 253
 - Device configuration
 - page 234
 - Device Information 242
 - Device Information screen 251
 - Device Status page 234
 - Diagnostics 258
 - documentation 20
 - E-mail Server 245
 - Edit Other Links 250
 - Event Log 238
 - HP Printer Utility, accessing
 - from 230
 - Information tab 233
 - Language 252
 - Network Settings 257
 - Networking tab 256
 - Print screen 243
 - Security 250, 258
 - Settings 244
 - Supplies Status page 236
 - Usage Page 240
 - Wake Time 255
- EWS (Windows)
 - about 41
 - accessing 41
 - Alerts page 49
 - AutoSend page 47
 - Configuration Page 45

- Configure Device page 47, 48
 - Date & Time settings 48
 - Device Information page 43, 48
 - Device Status page 44
 - documentation 20
 - E-mail Server page 47
 - Edit Other Links page 48
 - HP Web Jetadmin 41
 - Information tab 42
 - language, setting 48
 - links 44
 - navigation 42
 - Networking tab 51
 - Security page 48, 51
 - Settings tab 47
 - user guide 41
 - exporting driver parameters 36
 - External Fonts settings, PCL drivers 172
- F**
- fax driver
 - languages, Windows 11
 - operating systems supported 31
 - Feature Selection dialog box, Windows 79
 - features 4
 - File Upload, Macintosh 220
 - Finish dialog box, Customization Wizard 105
 - Finish dialog box, Windows 84
 - Finish Up dialog box, Macintosh 196
 - Finishing tab 143
 - Firewall Detected dialog box, Windows 67
 - firmware
 - about updating remotely 260
 - determining current level 261
 - downloading 262
 - FTP updates, Windows 265
 - HP Web Jetadmin updates 271
 - LPR command updates 271
 - Macintosh updates 222, 267, 270
 - messages during update 263
 - troubleshooting updates 263
 - UNIX updates 270
 - verifying installation 264
 - Windows network updates 268
 - Windows, local port update 267
 - Flip Pages Up 146
 - Font Substitution Table, PS Emulation driver 172
 - fonts
 - DIMM settings, drivers 173
 - driver settings 117
 - Euro symbol 179
 - External, PCL drivers 172
 - languages, Windows 11
 - PS Emulation driver 179
 - Windows 56, 58
 - Form to Tray Assignment, drivers 171
 - FTP
 - direct printing, Windows 274
 - Windows firmware updates 265
 - Full Installation
 - choosing 25
 - dialog boxes, Windows 64
- G**
- Graphic settings 116
 - grayscale settings, PS Emulation driver 178
- H**
- Halftone settings
 - unidrivers 164
 - heavy paper, paper type commands 287
 - help
 - Macintosh 191
 - print drivers 112
 - Help button, Windows installation dialog boxes 63
 - HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 37
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 34
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 22
 - HP Easy Printer Care 9, 40
 - HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) Supplies Status page 236
 - HP Embedded Web Server (Macintosh)
 - about 191, 231
 - accessing 231
 - AutoSend 249
 - Configuration 257
 - configuration page 234
 - Configure Device 244
 - Control Panel screen 242
 - Date & Time 253
 - Device Information 242
 - Device Information screen 251
 - Device Status page 234
 - Diagnostics section 258
 - documentation 20
 - E-mail Server 245
 - Edit Other Links 250
 - Event Log screen 238
 - HP Printer Utility, accessing from 230
 - Information tab 233
 - Language 252
 - Network Settings 257
 - Networking tab 256
 - Print screen 243
 - Security 250, 258
 - Settings 244
 - Usage Page 240
 - Wake Time 255
 - HP Embedded Web Server (Windows)
 - about 41
 - accessing 41
 - Alerts page 49
 - alerts page 47
 - AutoSend page 47
 - Configuration Page 45
 - Configure Device page 47, 48
 - Device Information page 43, 48
 - Device Status page 44
 - documentation 20
 - E-mail Server page 47
 - HP Web Jetadmin 41
 - Information tab 42
 - language, setting 48

- links 44, 48
- navigation 42
- Networking tab 51
- Security page 48, 51
- Settings tab 47
- time settings 48
- user guide 41
- HP Instant Support 44
- HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 20
- HP LaserJet Macintosh installer
 - startup screen 193
- HP OpenVMS 8
- HP PCL drivers. *See* PCL drivers
- HP Printer Utility, Macintosh
 - about 209
 - accessing 209
 - Bonjour Settings 230
 - Device Information 217
 - Duplex mode 222
 - E-mail Alerts 227
 - Embedded Web Server
 - access 230
 - File Upload 220
 - HP Support 218
 - Lock Resources 224
 - Network Settings 228
 - Supplies Status 214
 - Tray Configuration 223
 - Update Firmware 222
- HP PS 3 Emulation driver. *See* PS Emulation driver
- HP Registration dialog box, Windows 86
- HP Web Jetadmin
 - downloading 53
 - Driver Preconfiguration Plugin 34, 35
 - firmware updates 271
 - HP Embedded Web Server 41
- HTML files, viewing 18

I

- ICC color profiles 38
- Image Color Management (ICM) 117
- Incompatible Print Settings messages 112

- Information tab, HP EWS (Macintosh) 233
- Information tab, HP EWS (Windows) 42
- input trays. *See* trays
- Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 9
- install notes 19
- Installable Options
 - PS Emulation driver 174
- installation
 - Add Printer 88
 - Adobe Acrobat Reader 26
 - command-line silent 105
 - Customization Wizard for Windows 89
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X 192
 - Mac OS X V10.2.8 setup 206
 - Mac OS X V10.3 setup 202
 - Mac OS X V10.4 or later setup 197
 - Macintosh printing-system software 191
 - Point and Print 106
 - pre-existing, modifying 87
 - system requirements for Macintosh 186
 - system requirements for Windows 6
 - troubleshooting
 - Macintosh 208
 - Unsupported Operating System dialog box 63
 - Windows printing-system software 62
- Installation Status dialog box, Windows 83
- Installation Type dialog box, Windows 78
- installers
 - availability by operating system 9
 - common, features 28
 - customizing 89
 - Windows 24
- Installing dialog box, Customization Wizard 104
- Installing dialog box, Macintosh 196
- Instant Support 44, 218

- Internet Services 167
- Invalid Selection dialog box, Customization Wizard 100

J

- Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
- Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 20
- Job storage
 - driver settings 175
- job storage
 - deleting jobs 159, 227
 - driver settings 154
 - features 4
 - Macintosh 225
 - modes 155
 - notification options 157
 - printing 159
 - Private Job 156
 - Proof and Hold 156
 - Quick Copy 157
 - releasing jobs 159, 226
 - status 155
- Job Timeout settings 179
- JPEG Passthrough 180

L

- landscape orientation
 - print drivers 146, 150
- Language dialog box, Customization Wizard 91
- Language screen, HP EWS (Macintosh) 252
- Language Selection dialog box, Windows 64
- languages
 - HP Embedded Web Server (Windows) 48
 - Macintosh CD-ROMs 188
 - Windows CD-ROMs 11
- Layout Options 120
- letterhead, alternative mode 119
- License Agreement, Customization Wizard 91
- License dialog box, Macintosh 194
- links, HP EWS (Macintosh) 250
- links, HP EWS (Windows) 44, 48

- Linux operating systems
 - drivers 30
 - support for 7
 - local port command line printing, Windows 276
 - localized CD-ROMs
 - Macintosh 188
 - Windows 11
 - Location dialog box, Customization Wizard 101
 - lockable features, drivers 36, 224
 - LPR commands
 - firmware updates 271
 - printing PDF files 277
- M**
- Macintosh operating systems
 - Bonjour Settings 230
 - components, software 190
 - Device Information 217
 - dialog boxes, Mac OS X printing-system software
 - installation 192
 - direct printing 274
 - directory structure, CD-ROM 187
 - documentation 17
 - drivers supported 31
 - e-mail alerts 227
 - File Upload command 220
 - firmware upgrades 267, 270
 - hardware requirements 186
 - HP Embedded Web Server (EWS) 231
 - HP Printer Utility 209
 - install notes 191
 - installing printing-system software 191
 - localized software CDs 188
 - locking driver features 224
 - network settings 228
 - online help 191
 - PDEs 190
 - PPDs 190
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.2.8 206
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.3 202
 - setting up with Mac OS X V10.4 or later 197
 - software components 186
 - stored jobs 225
 - supplies status 214
 - support 7
 - supported 186
 - tray configuration 223
 - troubleshooting setup 208
 - uninstalling printing-system software 208
 - Update Firmware 222
 - Manual color settings
 - unidrivers 162
 - manuals. See documentation
 - margins
 - PCL 6 driver 284
 - media. See paper
 - memory
 - base 4
 - driver settings 175
 - Macintosh requirements 186
 - PS Emulation driver settings 177
 - Windows requirements 6
 - messages, constraint 112
 - Microsoft Windows. See Windows
 - model number 242
 - models, features 4
 - Mopier settings
 - driver 175
 - MS Windows Cluster Server 8
 - support 8
- N**
- Network Path dialog box, Customization Wizard 93
 - Network Settings, HP EWS (Macintosh) 257
 - Networking tab, HP EWS (Macintosh) 256
 - Networking tab, HP EWS (Windows) 51
 - networks
 - Confirm Network Settings dialog box 71
 - Customization Wizard settings 94
 - direct printing 277
 - firewalls 67
 - firmware updates 268
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration 34
 - HP Driver Preconfiguration Support Guide 22
 - HP Jetdirect Administrator's Guide 20
 - HP Web Jetadmin, downloading 53
 - Install Network Printer Wizard (INPW) 9
 - Macintosh settings 228
 - Point and Print
 - installation 106
 - Windows printing-system software installation 62
 - Neutral Grays settings
 - unidrivers 164
 - Next Steps — Congratulations dialog box, Windows 85
 - number of copies, setting
 - print driver 176
 - print drivers 116
- O**
- operating systems
 - availability of software components 9
 - standalone drivers 8
 - supported 7
 - Optimizations option, PCL drivers 118
 - ordering supplies 27
 - orientation
 - print drivers 146, 150
 - Other Links area 250
 - output bins
 - custom paper sizes 129
 - included 282
 - Output Protocol settings, PS Emulation driver 178
- P**
- page counts 240
 - Page Order settings 120, 149
 - page orientation
 - print drivers 146, 150
 - Pages per Sheet settings 148
 - paper
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 119

- custom sizes 128, 285
- margins 284
- Pages per Sheet settings, drivers 148
- Print Document On settings, drivers 137
- Print on Both Sides settings, drivers 144
- size commands 284
- Size is settings, drivers 127
- sizes supported 283
- source commands 282
- Source is settings, drivers 129
- sources and destinations 282
- type commands 286
- Type is: settings, drivers 130
- types and sizes supported 282
- types supported 285
- Usage Page (Macintosh) 240
- Paper Options drivers 127
- Paper/Output settings print drivers 115
- Paper/Quality tab print drivers 126
- PCL documents, printing 43
- PCL drivers
 - % of Normal Size 138
 - about 30
 - About tab 181
 - accessing 109
 - Advanced Printing Features 117
 - Advanced tab 114
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 119
 - Automatic Configuration 174
 - booklets 147
 - constraint messages 112
 - Copy Count settings 116
 - custom paper sizes 285
 - Device Services 167
 - Device Settings tab 168
 - diagnostics 37
 - Document Options 117, 144
 - document preview image 133, 138, 149, 165
 - duplexing 144
 - Effects tab 136
 - External Fonts settings 172
 - features 107
 - Finishing tab 143
 - Flip Pages Up 146
 - Font DIMM Installer 173
 - Font Substitution table 172
 - Form to Tray Assignment 171
 - Graphic setting 116
 - Help system 112
 - included 31
 - Installable Options settings 174
 - Internet Services 167
 - Job-storage settings 154
 - languages, Windows 11
 - Layout Options 120
 - media supported 282
 - Mopier settings 175
 - operating-system support 9
 - Orientation settings 150
 - Pages per Sheet 148
 - Paper Options 127
 - paper sizes supported 283
 - paper source commands 282
 - paper type commands 286
 - Paper/Output settings 115
 - Paper/Quality tab 126
 - Print Optimizations option 118
 - Printer Features 119
 - Printing Preferences tab 109
 - Properties tab 110
 - Resizing Options settings 137
 - Scale to Fit 137
 - Services tab 166
 - TrueType font settings 117
 - Update Now 34
 - version numbers 31
 - Watermarks settings 138
- PCL files, command-line printing 274
- PCL traditional drivers margins 284
- paper size commands 284
- PCL unidrivers
 - Color Themes 164
 - Edge Control 163
 - Halftone settings 164
 - Image Color Management (ICM) 117
 - Neutral Grays 164
 - paper size commands 284
 - raster compression 119
- PDEs (Printer Dialog Extensions) 190
- PDF files
 - command-line printing 274
 - installing Adobe Acrobat Reader 26
 - LPR commands, printing 277
 - Macintosh, File Upload command 220
 - printing from HP EWS (Macintosh) 243
 - printing using HP Embedded Web Server 43
 - viewing 18
- Percentage of Normal Size setting 138
- PINs, private jobs 156, 157
- Please enter a hardware address dialog box, Customization Wizard 95
- Point and Print installation, Windows printing-system software 106
- Port Creation Options dialog box, Customization Wizard 95
- Port Name dialog box 77
- portrait orientation print drivers 146, 150
- ports, included 5
- PostScript Device settings, PS Emulation driver 177
- PostScript Options, drivers 118
- PostScript Passthrough 179
- PPDs, Macintosh
 - installation 190
 - troubleshooting 208
 - uninstallation 208
- pre-existing installation, modifying 87
- preconfiguration, driver 9, 22, 34
- Print All Text as Black 119
- print cartridges
 - AutoSend feature 249
 - features 5
 - usage information (Macintosh) 240
- Print Document On settings 137

print drivers. *See* drivers
 Print on Both Sides 144
 Print Optimizations option, PCL drivers 118
 Print Page Borders settings 149
 Print screen, HP EWS (Macintosh) 243
 print-ready files
 command-line printing 274
 printing using HP Embedded Web Server 43
 Printer Connection dialog box, Windows 65
 Printer Dialog Extensions (PDEs) 190
 Printer Driver Test Page dialog box, Windows 85
 Printer Features, drivers 119
 Printer Not Found dialog box 68
 Printer Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 92
 Printer Properties dialog box, Customization Wizard 103
 Printer Properties dialog box, Windows 82
 Printer Settings dialog box, Windows 76
 printer, setting default 106
 Printers Found dialog box, Windows 69
 printing
 files using HP Embedded Web Server 43
 stored jobs 159, 226
 User Guide 19
 Printing Preferences
 print drivers 109
 Printing Preferences dialog box, Customization Wizard 98
 Private job settings 156
 product support 44
 Proof and Hold job settings 156
 Properties tabs
 print drivers 110
 protocols 178
 PS Emulation driver
 % of Normal Size 138
 about 30
 About tab 181
 accessing 109
 Advanced Printing Features 117
 Advanced tab 114
 Alternative Letterhead Mode 119
 Automatic Configuration 174
 booklets 147
 constraint messages 112
 Copy Count settings 116
 Ctrl-D settings 178
 custom paper sizes 285
 Device Services 167
 Device Settings tab 168
 diagnostics 37
 Document Options 117, 144
 document preview
 image 133, 138, 149, 165
 duplexing 144
 Effects tab 136
 features 107
 Finishing tab 143
 Flip Pages Up 146
 Font DIMM Installer 173
 font settings 179
 Font Substitution Table 172
 Form to Tray Assignment 171
 Graphic setting 116
 Help system 112
 included 31
 Installable Options settings 174
 Internet Services 167
 Job-storage settings 154
 JPEG Passthrough 180
 languages, Windows 11
 Layout Options 120
 media supported 282
 Mopier settings 175
 operating-system support 9
 Orientation settings 150
 Output Protocol settings 178
 Pages per Sheet 148
 Paper Options 127
 paper sizes supported 283
 paper source commands 282
 Paper/Output settings 115
 Paper/Quality tab 126
 PostScript Device settings 177
 PostScript Memory settings 177
 PostScript Options 118
 PostScript Passthrough 179
 Printer Features 119
 Printing Preferences tabs 109
 Properties tabs 110
 Resizing Options settings 137
 Scale to Fit 137
 Services tab 166
 timeout settings 179
 TrueType font settings 117
 Update Now 34
 version number 31
 Watermarks settings 138
 PS emulation fonts 58
 PS Emulation Unidriver
 Color Themes 164
 Edge Control 163
 Halftone settings 164
 Image Color Management (ICM) 117
 Neutral Grays 164
 raster compression 119
 PS files, command-line printing 274
 PS files, printing 43, 243

Q

Quick Copy jobs 157

R

raster compression
 PCL unidrivers 119
 PS Emulation Unidriver 119
 Read Me dialog box, Macintosh 193
 Ready to Create Installer dialog box, Customization Wizard 102
 Ready to Install dialog box, Windows 81
 regional versions, CD-ROMs
 Macintosh 188
 Windows 11
 Registration dialog box, Windows 86
 releasing job-storage jobs 159, 226
 remote firmware updates
 about 260

- determining current firmware level 261
- downloading 262
- FTP, Windows 265
- HP Web Jetadmin 271
- LPR commands 271
- Macintosh 222, 267, 270
- messages 263
- troubleshooting 263
- UNIX 270
- verifying installation 264
- Windows network 268
- Windows, using local port 267
- removing
 - Macintosh printing system 208
- Resizing Options
 - driver settings 137
- return e-mail address 246
- RFU. *See* remote firmware updates
- RGB settings
 - unidrivers 164

S

- SAP printing 8
- Scale to Fit setting 137
- screen-readable
 - documentation 19
- Searching dialog box 67
- Security page, HP EWS (Macintosh) 250, 258
- Security page, HP EWS (Windows) 48, 51
- Send Ctrl-D settings 178
- send fax driver
 - languages, Windows 11
 - operating systems supported 31
- serial number 43, 242
- Services tab
 - print drivers 166
- Set Port Name dialog box 77
- settings
 - continuous export 36
 - locking 36
 - overriding 107
- Settings tab, HP EWS (Macintosh) 244

- Settings tab, HP EWS (Windows) 47
- Settings tab, HP EWS Device Configuration utility 244
- Setup Maintenance dialog box 87
- silent installation
 - command-line 105
 - Customization Wizard 89
- sizes, paper
 - commands 284
 - custom 285
 - driver settings 127
 - margins 284
 - Print on Both Sides settings, drivers 144
 - supported 282, 283
- Software License Agreement, Customization Wizard 91
- Software License dialog box, Macintosh 194
- Source is settings 129
- sources, paper. *See* trays
- Specify Printer dialog box 75
- Specify TCP/IP Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 94
- sRGB settings
 - unidrivers 164
- standalone drivers 8
- status
 - Device, HP EWS (Macintosh) 234
 - Device, HP EWS (Windows) 44
 - job storage 155
 - supplies, HP EWS (Windows) 43
 - supplies, Macintosh 214, 236
- Status notification pop-ups (SNPs)
 - HP Driver
 - Preconfiguration 279
 - Registry settings 280
- storage, job
 - deleting jobs 159, 227
 - driver settings 154, 175
 - features 4
 - Macintosh 225
 - modes 155
 - notification options 157
 - printing 159

- Private Job 156
- Proof and Hold 156
- Quick Copy 157
- releasing jobs 159, 226
- status 155
- supplies
 - AutoSend feature 249
 - features 5
 - Macintosh status 214
 - ordering 27
 - status, HP EWS (Windows) 43
 - usage AutoSend page 47
 - usage information (Macintosh) 240
- Supplies Status page, HP EWS 236
- Support tab, HP Printer Utility 218
- support, product 44
- system requirements
 - Windows 6

T

- TBCP output protocol, PS Emulation driver 178
- TCP/IP address
 - locating 242
- TCP/IP Port dialog box, Customization Wizard 94
- TCP/IP Settings dialog box 73
- Test Page dialog box, Windows 85
- text files, command-line printing 274
- text files, printing 243
- text, printing all as black 119
- time settings
 - HP EWS (Macintosh) 253
 - HP EWS (Windows) 48
- timeout settings 179
- transparencies, paper type
 - commands 287
- trays
 - Alternative Letterhead Mode 119
 - autoconfiguration 33
 - custom paper sizes 129, 285
 - driver Form to Tray Assignment 171

- included 5, 282
 - Macintosh configuration 223
 - media supported 285
 - paper source commands 282
 - paper type commands 286
 - Source is settings, drivers 129
 - Usage Page (Macintosh) 240
 - troubleshooting
 - Diagnostics, HP EWS (Macintosh) 258
 - duplexing unit, Macintosh 222
 - firmware upgrades 263
 - HP driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 37
 - Macintosh setup 208
 - Services tab, drivers 166
 - Unsupported Operating System dialog box 63
 - Tru64 UNIX printing 8
 - TrueType font settings 117, 179
 - two-sided printing 144
 - TXT files, command-line printing 274
 - Type is settings 130
 - types, paper
 - driver settings 130
 - Print on Both Sides settings, drivers 144
 - supported 285
- U**
- unattended installation
 - command-line 105
 - Customization Wizard 89
 - unidrivers
 - Color Themes 164
 - Edge Control 163
 - Halftone settings 164
 - Image Color Management (ICM) 117
 - Neutral Grays 164
 - paper size commands 284
 - uninstallation
 - Macintosh printing system 208
 - UNIX operating systems
 - direct printing 277
 - drivers 30
 - print-ready printing 277
 - remote firmware update 270
 - Web site for 7
 - Unsupported Operating System dialog box 63
 - Update Now feature 34
 - updating firmware remotely. *See* remote firmware updates
 - usage information,
 - AutoSend 249
 - Usage Page (Macintosh) 240
 - Usage Page (Windows) 43
 - USB direct-connect installation 63
 - User Guide 18
 - User Name, stored jobs 158
- V**
- version numbers, drivers 31
- W**
- Wait Timeout settings 179
 - Wake Time, HP EWS (Macintosh) 255
 - Wake Time, HP EWS (Windows) 48
 - Watermarks settings 138
 - Web Jetadmin. *See* HP Web Jetadmin
 - Web sites
 - Citrix Terminal server support 8
 - downloading software 9
 - firmware download 262
 - firmware updates 243
 - HP Driver Diagnostic Printer Check Tool 37
 - HP Easy Printer Care 40
 - HP Embedded Web Server links 44, 48
 - HP Embedded Web Server user guide 41
 - HP OpenVMS 8
 - HP Web Jetadmin, downloading 53
 - Linux product support 7
 - Macintosh software 187
 - SAP printing 8
 - support links 26
 - Tru64 UNIX printing 8
 - UNIX support 7
 - Welcome dialog box, Customization Wizard 90
 - Welcome dialog box, Windows 65
 - What's this? Help
 - print drivers 112
 - Windows operating systems
 - Add Printer installation 88
 - availability of software components 9
 - CD-ROM, print system 24
 - default printer, setting 106
 - dialog boxes 64
 - direct printing 274
 - direct printing, local port 276
 - direct printing, networks 277
 - directory structure, CD-ROM 10
 - documentation 17
 - driver features 107
 - driver versions 31
 - drivers supported 31
 - fonts supported 56
 - Installer Customization Wizard 89
 - installers 9
 - installing printing software 62
 - LPR commands 277
 - Point and Print installation 106
 - PS emulation fonts supported 58
 - remote firmware update 267
 - support 7
 - system requirements 6

© 2007 Hewlett-Packard Development Company, L.P.

www.hp.com

